



418.2

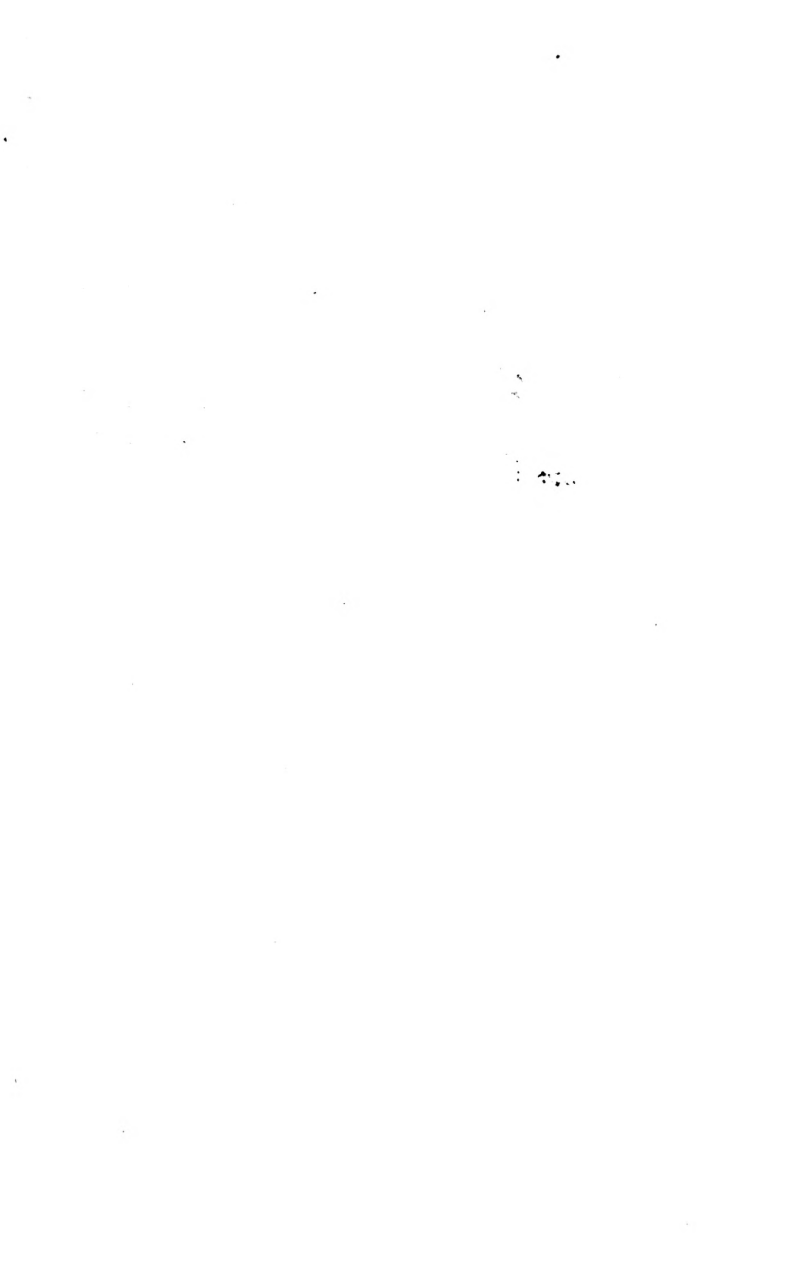
B28

copy 1



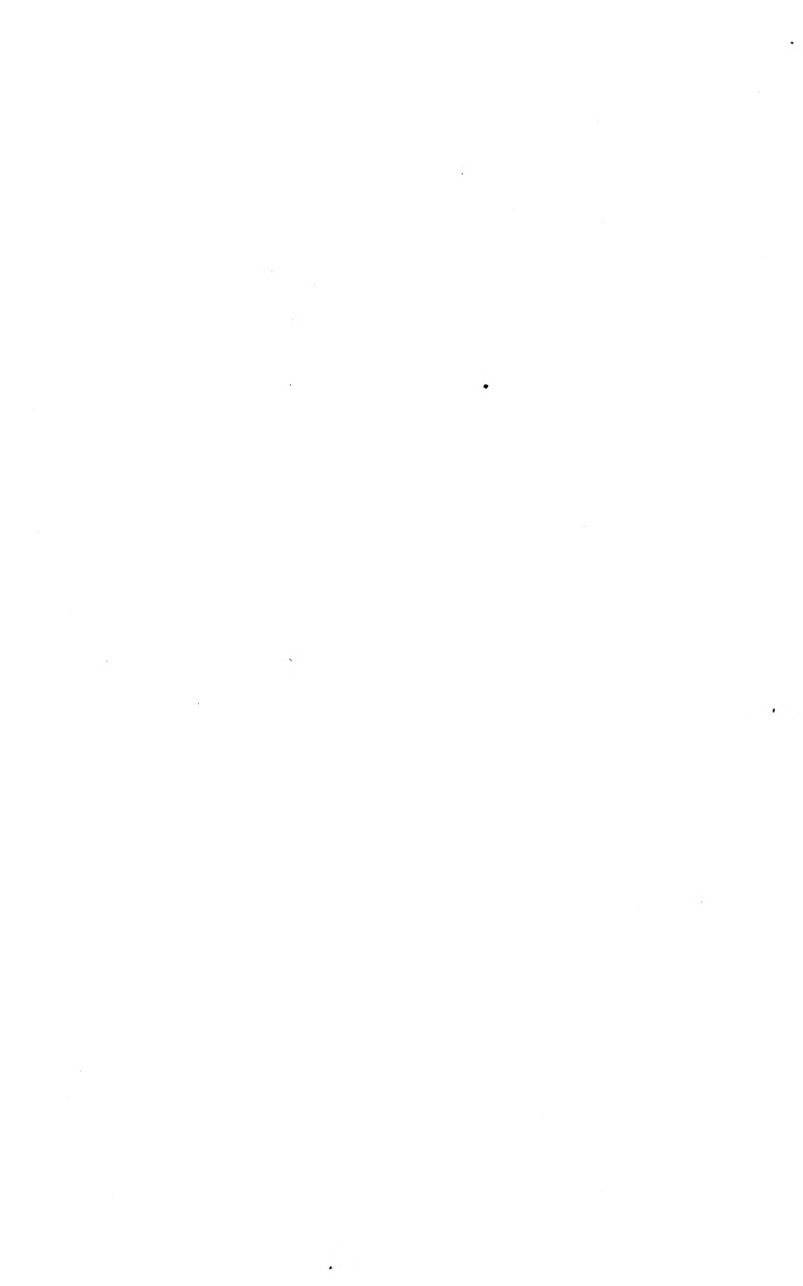
*Library*  
*College of Liberal Arts.*  
*From Bostonia*  
*The Epistola Chapter Fund.*  
*Received Jan 1911*

3954









# BEGINNING LATIN

BY

JOHN EDMUND BARSS

LATIN MASTER IN THE HOTCHKISS SCHOOL



UNIVERSITY PUBLISHING COMPANY  
NEW YORK      BOSTON      NEW ORLEANS

3-11-11  
1-20-11  
Jan. 1911

COPYRIGHT, 1906, BY  
UNIVERSITY PUBLISHING COMPANY

\*\* 2924



PA  
2027  
F061

## PREFACE

This book is dedicated to teachers of Latin who realize the importance of first-year work. Its aim is definitely to secure three things: first, mastery of forms; second, the nucleus of a working vocabulary; third, a grasp of the broad principles of the Latin sentence.

The **method** of the book has been guided by the modern belief that the acquisition of facts should be accompanied by immediate use of the knowledge gained. Accordingly, numerous short exercises arrest the attention of the pupil and demand his activity at every point of advance.

The detailed application of this principle of **expression** is most fully exemplified in the treatment of **forms**. The uses of the various elements are explained, and very many simple exercises in the **building of paradigms** introduced. This method is found to give a conscious mastery of inflections in much less time than under the old system of memorizing paradigms. In the case of the verb, the person-endings are first attacked, interlinear exercises being given in which all of the verb except the ending is supplied. Next, the present tenses of the four conjugations are exhibited together, and exercises are devised which focus the attention on the stem-vowel. The treatment of the other tenses is similar, an incidental result being that the pupil is prevented from acquiring a feeling that only the first conjugation is normal, and that the other conjugations are relatively more difficult

and less important. In order to render this method practicable, the tables of forms at the end have been for the most part given by termination only.

In the translation exercises, **English-Latin sentences** have been unhesitatingly and freely introduced from the first. Here, as elsewhere, experience has been the guide, but a word of explanation may not be amiss. In the first place, the assumption that English-Latin exercises are inherently more difficult than Latin-English would seem to involve a fallacy. An English-Latin exercise which is primarily an exercise on the practical use of forms, and which does not contain difficult and complicated syntax, presents to the pupil the same problems as a Latin-English exercise—the problem of terminations. But it has, for the young pupil, a distinct advantage over the Latin-English exercise—it is an exercise to be written; and written work for the study hour secures the best concentration and the surest results.

Following the Lessons intended to be assigned for preparation are supplementary **Exercises for Class Drill**. These involve the same principles and vocabulary as the Lessons which correspond to them in number. While it is not intended that their preparation should be required in advance, those members of a class whose study time permits may well look them over, and test their preparation by means of the questions which are in many cases appended. Here the ratio of Latin to English exercises is much increased, in order that in his translation work the pupil may benefit by the teacher's instant correction of bad English and his suggestions regarding methods of attacking the Latin.

Furthermore, every fifth Lesson is a **Latin Reading Lesson**. The simple narratives contained in the first twelve of these

are taken, with the kind permission of their author and his publishers, Messrs. Wiegandt & Grieben, of Berlin, from the "Lateinische Fibel" of Professor Dr. Ludwig Gurlitt, of the Gymnasium at Steglitz, Germany.

The **vocabularies** of the lessons proper are almost entirely confined to about five hundred of the commonest words in Caesar, given in both special and general vocabularies, and also collected in lists for purposes of review. The vocabularies of the Reading Lessons are less restricted in their range, and are given only in the General Vocabulary; and, while the interest of their content makes them easy to remember, provision for a vocabulary drill has been purposely confined to the five hundred words already mentioned.

The Reading Lessons after Lesson XL, together with Lessons XCII-XCV, are designed as an **introduction to Caesar**.

By means of the Drill Exercises, and of the Reading Lessons, all or part of which might be omitted in reviews, or with classes whose ability admitted of rapid advance, much **elasticity** has been secured. It will also be feasible, in many cases, to substitute oral for written work in the Exercises in paradigm building. It is hoped that by this means the method of the book will be rendered acceptable to schools differing widely in the time allotted to the elementary stage.

Through the wise liberality of the publishers, an experimental edition of **BEGINNING LATIN** has already been tried in the Horace Mann and the Berkeley Schools, New York, in Horton Academy, Nova Scotia, and in the Hotchkiss School. I am deeply indebted to the candid criticism of the teachers who were good enough to test my unfinished work. More than formal acknowledgment is also due to

Messrs. O. A. Beverstock, of the Hotchkiss School, and I. Crombie, of Bridgewater, N. S., who have read the proof-sheets of the present edition and made material contribution to its accuracy of form and statement. Most of all, Professor Lodge has my sincere thanks for encouragement, criticism, and wise counsel throughout the progress of the work.

J. EDMUND BARSS.

LAKEVILLE, CONN., *April 9, 1906.*

# CONTENTS

LESSON	PAGE
I. Pronunciation . . . . .	1
II. Subject and Object . . . . .	5
III. Interrogative Sentences. Adjectives . . . . .	8
IV. The Genitive . . . . .	10
V. Reading Lesson: <i>Mīnerva</i> . . . . .	12
VI. The Dative . . . . .	13
VII. The Ablative . . . . .	15
VIII. The Ablative, Continued . . . . .	16
IX. The Vocative. The Present Tense . . . . .	18
X. Reading Lesson: <i>Diāna</i> . . . . .	20
XI. The Present of Four Conjugations . . . . .	21
XII. The Present of <i>Sum</i> . Predicate Agreement . . . . .	23
XIII. The First and Second Declensions . . . . .	25
XIV. Attributive Agreement. The Imperfect Tense . . . . .	27
XV. Reading Lesson: <i>Pūgna Rōmānōrum et Germānōrum</i> . . . . .	29
XVI. The Future Tense . . . . .	30
XVII. The Future of <i>Sum</i> . Verb Review . . . . .	32
XVIII. The Third Declension: Consonant Stems in <i>p, b, c,</i> and <i>g</i> . . . . .	34
XIX. The Perfect Tense . . . . .	36
XX. Reading Lesson: <i>Agricola et Nautae</i> . . . . .	39
XXI. The Pluperfect Tense . . . . .	40
XXII. The Third Declension: Liquid and Nasal Stems . . . . .	41
XXIII. The Future Perfect Tense. Verb Review . . . . .	43
XXIV. Prepositions . . . . .	44
XXV. Reading Lesson: <i>Lūdus Graccōrum</i> . . . . .	46
XXVI. Prepositions, Continued . . . . .	48
XXVII. The Passive Voice: Present of Four Conjugations . . . . .	50

LESSON		PAGE
XXVIII.	The Passive Voice: Imperfect and Future Tenses . . . . .	52
XXIX.	The Third Declension: Neuter Nouns; Consonant Stems . . . . .	54
XXX.	Reading Lesson: <i>Castra Rōmāna</i> . . . . .	55
XXXI.	The Third Declension: <i>i</i> -Stems . . . . .	57
XXXII.	The Passive Voice: Perfect Tense . . . . .	59
XXXIII.	The Passive Voice: Pluperfect and Future Perfect. General Review of Verbs . . . . .	61
XXXIV.	The Third Conjugation: Verbs in <i>-iō</i> . The Third Declension: Mixed <i>i</i> -Stems . . . . .	63
XXXV.	Reading Lesson: <i>Germānī Antīquī</i> . . . . .	64
XXXVI.	The Third Declension: Neuters: <i>i</i> -Stems. Adjec- tives of the Third Declension . . . . .	66
XXXVII.	Comparison of Adjectives . . . . .	68
XXXVIII.	Adjectives. Irregular Comparison . . . . .	70
XXXIX.	Adjectives: Irregular Comparison, Continued . . . . .	72
XL.	Reading Lesson: <i>Templum Delphicum</i> . . . . .	74
XLI.	Comparison by the Aid of Adverbs. Ablative of the Degree of Difference . . . . .	75
XLII.	Personal Pronouns . . . . .	77
XLIII.	Demonstrative Pronouns . . . . .	79
XLIV.	Possessive Pronouns . . . . .	81
XLV.	Reading Lesson: <i>Mōrēs Germānōrum</i> . . . . .	83
XLVI.	The Relative Pronoun . . . . .	84
XLVII.	Interrogative and Indefinite Pronouns . . . . .	87
XLVIII.	Pronouns, Continued . . . . .	89
XLIX.	Pronouns, Continued. Irregular Adjectives . . . . .	91
L.	Reading Lesson: <i>Athēnae</i> . . . . .	93
LI.	<i>Alius</i> and <i>Alter</i> : Correlative Use . . . . .	95
LII.	The Fourth Declension . . . . .	96
LIII.	The Fifth Declension . . . . .	98
LIV.	Numerals . . . . .	100
LV.	Reading Lesson: <i>Iuppiter</i> . . . . .	103
LVI.	Numerals, Continued . . . . .	104
LVII.	Adverbs: Formation and Comparison . . . . .	105

LESSON		PAGE
LVIII.	The Locative Case . . . . .	108
LIX.	Some Irregular Nouns. Third Declension: Gender Rules . . . . .	109
LX.	Reading Lesson: <i>Aesculāpius</i> . . . . .	113
LXI.	Deponent Verbs. <i>Possūm</i> . . . . .	114
LXII.	The Subjunctive Mood: Present Tense. Hortatory Subjunctive and Subjunctive of Purpose . . . . .	116
LXIII.	The Subjunctive Mood. Imperfect Tense . . . . .	119
LXIV.	Indirect Questions . . . . .	121
LXV.	Reading Lesson: <i>Gallia Antiqua</i> . . . . .	123
LXVI.	The Subjunctive Mood: Perfect and Pluperfect Tenses . . . . .	124
LXVII.	Irregular Verbs: <i>Volō; Nōlō; Mālō</i> . The Complementary Infinitive . . . . .	126
LXVIII.	Irregular Verbs: <i>Fīō</i> . The Subjunctive of Result . . . . .	128
LXIX.	Irregular Verbs: <i>Ferō</i> . Questions with Num . . . . .	130
LXX.	Reading Lesson: <i>Helvētiorum Coniūratiō</i> . . . . .	132
LXXI.	Irregular Verbs: <i>Eō</i> . . . . .	133
LXXII.	The Imperative Mood . . . . .	134
LXXIII.	The Infinitive Mood . . . . .	136
LXXIV.	The Infinitive Mood, Continued . . . . .	139
LXXV.	Reading Lesson: <i>Mors Orgetorigis</i> . . . . .	141
LXXVI.	The Infinitive Mood, Concluded . . . . .	141
LXXVII.	The Gerund and Gerundive . . . . .	144
LXXVIII.	Participles . . . . .	146
LXXIX.	Participles, Continued . . . . .	148
LXXX.	Reading Lesson: <i>Helvētiorum Profectiō</i> . . . . .	150
LXXXI.	Participles, Concluded . . . . .	151
LXXXII.	Periphrastic Conjugations . . . . .	153
LXXXIII.	The Subjunctive in Commands and in Wishes . . . . .	157
LXXXIV.	The Supine. Various Expressions of Purpose . . . . .	159
LXXXV.	Reading Lesson: <i>Helvētī Rhodanum Flūmen Trāns- īre Prohibentur</i> . . . . .	162
LXXXVI.	Substantive Clauses of Purpose. The Subjunctive after Verbs of Fearing . . . . .	163

LESSON	PAGE
LXXXVII. The Dative with Special Verbs . . . . .	165
LXXXVIII. The Ablative with Certain Deponents. <i>Cum-</i> clauses. Adverbs of Place . . . . .	167
LXXXIX. Subordinate Clauses . . . . .	169
XC. Reading Lesson: <i>Via per Sēquanōs</i> . . . . .	173
XCI. Accusative. Genitive. Dative. Ablative . . . . .	174
XCII. Translation Exercise . . . . .	177
XCIII. Translation Exercise . . . . .	179
XCIV. Translation Exercise . . . . .	181
XCV. Analysis and Translation . . . . .	183
Exercises for Class Drill . . . . .	185
Forms . . . . .	237
Special Vocabularies . . . . .	261
Lists of Words for Review . . . . .	278
Latin-English Vocabulary . . . . .	287
English-Latin Vocabulary . . . . .	305
Index . . . . .	317





# BEGINNING LATIN

---

## LESSON I.

### PRONUNCIATION.

**1. The Alphabet.** The Latin Alphabet is the same as the English, without *j* or *w*.

**2. Letters Sounded as in English.** The following letters have the same sounds as in English :

**p, b, t, d, k, l, m, n, r, f, h, x, qu.**

**3. Long and Short Vowels.** The vowels are **a, e, i, o, u, y**. When plenty of time is taken to pronounce a vowel, the vowel is said to be long. When the pronunciation is hurried a little, the vowel is said to be short. Long

vowels are marked thus: *ā, ē, ī, ō, ū, ŷ*. Short vowels are marked thus: *ă, ě, ĭ, ǒ, ŭ, ȳ*, or left unmarked. The latter is the method regularly followed in this book.

**4. Sounds of the Vowels.** The sounds of the vowels are as follows:

*ā* like the second *a* in *aha'*.

*ă* like the first *a* in *aha'*.

*ē* like *ey* in *they*.

*ě* like *e* in *then*.

*ī* like *i* in *machine*.

*ĭ* like *i* in *pin*.

*ō* like *o* in *holy*.

*ǒ* like *o* in *obey*.

*ū* like *oo* in *pool*.

*ŭ* like *u* in *pull*.

*ȳ* and *ȳ* have a sound which may be uttered by shaping the lips as if to say *oo*, and then making the sound *ee*.

**5. Exercise.** Pronounce the following words according to the rules in §§ 2-4.

1. *Amā'bam*; *petē'bant*; *lī'ber*; *li'ber*. 2. *Ōrā'tor*; *quod*; *ūtēbā'minī*; *quō'rum*. 3. *Tyran'nī*; *mī'litem*; *rēx*; *īn'ferō*.

**6. Diphthongs.** The diphthongs and their sounds are as follows:

*ae* like *ai* in *aisle*.

*au* like *ou* in *house*.

*ei* like *ei* in *eight*.

*eu* like *eu* in *feud*.<sup>1</sup>

*oe* like *oi* in *oil*.

*ui* like *oo'ee* (or *we*).

---

<sup>1</sup> More exactly, like *ey'oo* pronounced rapidly, the *ey* being sounded as in *they*.

Other combinations of vowels, as *ai*, *eo*, etc., do not form diphthongs, each vowel being pronounced separately, as in *aulāi* (= *au-lā'-ī*)

**7. Exercise.** Pronounce the following.

1. *Hae*; *au'tem*; *dein'de*. 2. *Heu*; *poe'na*; *huīc*.

**8. Remaining Sounds.** Pronounce

**c** as in *cat*.

**g** as in *get*.

**i-consonant**<sup>1</sup> (usual sound between two vowels, or at the beginning of a word when followed by a vowel) like *y* in *you*.

**s** as in *so* (not as in *has*).

**v** like *w*.

**z** like *dz*.

**ch** like *k*.

**ph** like *f*.

**bs** like *ps*.

**bt** like *pt*.

Doubled consonants should both be sounded, contrary to the custom of English. Thus, *bellum* is pronounced distinctly, *bel'-lum* (not *bel'm*).

**9. Exercise.** Pronounce the following.

1. *Cethē'gī*; *iam*; *a'mās*; *hīc*; *sīc*. 2. *Gā'za*; *Zā'ma*; *cho'rus*; *urbs*. 3. *Philo'sophus*; *obti'neō*; *Cae'sarem*; *Ci'cerō*.

**10. Syllables.** A Latin word has as many syllables as it has vowels and diphthongs. Thus, *praesidium* has four syllables: *prae-si'-di-um*.

In dividing a word into syllables, a consonant between two vowels belongs to the second; as *rē-xe-rā'-mus*.

The last syllable of a word is called the *ULTIMA*.

The syllable before the last is called the *PENULT*.

---

<sup>1</sup> In some books *j* is written for *i-consonant*. This is merely a matter of convenience, as Latin had no letter *j*.

The syllable before the penult is called the ANTEPENULT.

**11. Accent.** A word of two syllables is accented on the penult, as *il'-lud*; *é'-rat*.

A word of more than two syllables is accented on the penult if the penult is long, as *a-mā'-bam*; *po-te-rā'-mus*. If the penult is short, the accent falls on the antepenult, as *a-mā'-vĕ-ram*; *po-tu'-ĕ-rant*.

**12. Rules of Quantity.** The quantity of a syllable, that is, its length, may often be known by means of simple rules called Rules of Quantity. Thus,

(a) A syllable is LONG—

when it contains a diphthong, as *Cae'sar*.

or when it contains a long vowel, as *rĕ-gĭ'na*; *an-tĭ'-quus*;

or when its vowel, even if short, is followed by two consonants, or a double consonant (**x**, **z**); as *ex-o-ri-un'-tur*; *Ca-tu'-lus*.

(b) A syllable is SHORT—

when it contains a short vowel<sup>1</sup> followed by a single consonant; as *āb'-ĕ-rant'*; *cōn'-fĭ-cĭ*;

or when its vowel is followed by **h**, or by another vowel with which it does not form a diphthong (see § 4); as *con'-trā'-hunt*; *sub'-ĕ-ō*.

**13. Exercise.** Copy the following passage, marking the accent of each word according to the principles given in §§ 11 and 12. Pronounce according to the rules in §§ 1–12.

Quō ūsque tandem abūtēre, Catilīna, patientiā nostrā? Quam diū etiam furor iste tuus nōs tēlūdet? Quem ad finem sēsē effrēnāta iactābit audācia? Nihilne nocturnum praesidium Palātī, nihil urbis vigiliae, nihil timor populī,

<sup>1</sup> **Aberant** is a compound (**ab-erant**) and does not follow the rule of § 10 in its division.

nihil concursus bonōrum omnium, nihil hīc mūnītissimus habendī senātūs locus, nihil hōrum ōra vultūsque mōvērunt?

NOTE.—Beginning on page 185 will be found additional exercises and questions on each Lesson (except the Reading Lessons). These are intended to furnish material for class-room drill. It is not necessary that they should be prepared in advance, although pupils who have the time will find them a means of testing and improving their preparation. On the other hand, it should not be forgotten that these drill exercises are an essential part of the method of this book, and that they cannot be omitted without impairing its efficiency.

## LESSON II.

### SUBJECT AND OBJECT.

**14. Subject and Object in English and in Latin.**  
In English, *Marius fears Sulla* has a very different meaning from *Sulla fears Marius*. In Latin, however, **Marius timet Sullam** and **Sullam timet Marius** both mean the same thing: *Marius fears Sulla*. But if we change **Marius** to **Mariam**, and **Sullam** to **Sulla**, the meaning will be *Sulla fears Marius*, no matter how we combine the words. Thus,

- |                              |   |                              |
|------------------------------|---|------------------------------|
| 1. <b>Sulla timet Mariam</b> | } | = <i>Sulla fears Marius.</i> |
| 2. <b>Mariam timet Sulla</b> |   |                              |
| 3. <b>Sulla Mariam timet</b> |   |                              |
| 4. <b>Mariam Sulla timet</b> |   |                              |
| 5. <b>Timet Sulla Mariam</b> |   |                              |
| 6. <b>Timet Mariam Sulla</b> |   |                              |

From the above it appears that while in English the subject may often be recognized by its position before the verb, and the object by its position after the verb, in Latin these things do not depend upon position, but on the *ending* of the word.

**15. Case.** When a word is used as subject, it is said to be in the Nominative Case; when used as object, in the Accusative Case. In English, the latter is generally called the Objective Case. There are other cases in Latin, the use of which will be explained later.

**16. Case Endings.** Besides showing the case of a noun, as already explained, the endings also show whether it is singular or plural; as *amicus*, *friend*; *amicī*, *friends*.

**17. Declensions.** There are five sets of these noun endings, called Declensions. Every Latin noun belongs to some one of these declensions, except a few which are called "indeclinable," and do not change their endings.

**18. Gender.** (*a*) Nouns which are names of males are said to be of the Masculine Gender; nouns which are names of females, of the Feminine Gender.

(*b*) Many nouns which are names of neither males nor females are called Masculine or Feminine in Latin, according to rules of gender which will be given later. These nouns are said to possess Grammatical Gender, while those in (*a*) are said to possess Natural Gender.

(*c*) Nouns which are neither masculine nor feminine are said to be of the Neuter Gender.

### 19. Endings for Subject and Object. Declension I.

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
Nominative.	-a	-ae
Accusative.	-am	-ās

Nouns of this declension are regularly feminine.

### 20. Endings for Subject and Object. Declension II.

	SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
	Masculine.	Neuter.	Masculine.	Neuter.
Nominative.	-us	-um	-ī	-a
Accusative.	-um	-um	-ōs	-a

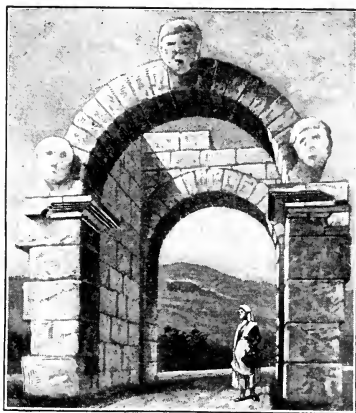
**21. Base.** The part of the noun to which the endings are added is called the Base. Thus,

	Base: <b>port-</b> , <i>gate</i> .			Base: <b>amic-</b> , <i>friend</i> .	
	SING.	PLUR.		SING.	PLUR.
Nom.	<b>port-a</b>	<b>port-ae</b>	Nom.	<b>amic-us</b>	<b>amic-i</b>
Acc.	<b>port-am</b>	<b>port-ās</b>	Acc.	<b>amic-um</b>	<b>amic-ōs</b>

**22. Exercise.** Write out the base, the meaning, and the nominative and accusative singular and plural of each noun in Vocabulary I (in the Special Vocabularies at the back of the book), according to the examples given in § 21.

**23. Exercise.** Learn Vocabulary I. Then write the following sentences in Latin. The verbs are not in the Vocabulary, but are given in parentheses in the Exercise, without endings. When the subject of the verb is singular, add **-t** to the form given; add **-nt** when the subject is plural. In Latin the verb generally stands at the *end* of the sentence.

1. The<sup>1</sup> lieutenant has (**habe-**) a<sup>1</sup> friend.
2. The friend sees (**vide-**) the walls.
3. Towns have gates.
4. The town has not<sup>2</sup> a gate.
5. The town has not a wall.
6. The lieutenants have friends.
7. The friends see the towns.
8. The girl sees the gates.
9. The girls see the gates.
10. The girls see the lieutenant.



ANCIENT ITALIAN CITY GATE

<sup>1</sup> Latin has no word for *a*, *an*, or *the*. Translate as though it were "lieutenant friend has."

<sup>2</sup> "Not has," in Latin.

**24. Rules of Syntax.**<sup>1</sup> The substance of the following Rules has been given in §§ 14–23. They should be learned, word for word, and reviewed until perfectly memorized. The same method will be followed with other principles of syntax as they shall occur.

**RULE I.** *The subject of a finite<sup>2</sup> verb is in the nominative case.*

**RULE II.** *The direct object of a transitive verb is in the accusative case.*

### LESSON III.

#### INTERROGATIVE SENTENCES. ADJECTIVES.

**25. Questions with -ne.** Declarative sentences in Latin may be made interrogative by adding the syllable **-ne** to the most emphatic word. Thus,

*Does Sulla fear Marius? Timetne Sulla Marium?*

A word so attached is called an Enclitic. Observe that the “does” of the English is not translated.

**26. Questions with Nōnne.** When the question contains a **nōn**, the **-ne** must be attached to that word. Thus,

*Does not Sulla fear Marius? Nonne Sulla Marium timet?*

The word to which the **-ne** is attached generally stands first.

**27. Exercise.** Write, using the principles explained in §§ 25 and 26.

1. Have the lieutenants friends? 2. Do the friends see the gate?
3. Does not the girl see the gate?
4. Has not the town a wall? 5. Has not the lieutenant a friend?

<sup>1</sup> Syntax is that part of grammar which treats of the construction of sentences. <sup>2</sup> All parts of the verb except the infinitive are called Finite.



**28. Adjectives.** Adjectives in Latin have endings which indicate their gender, number, and case. The gender, number, and case of an adjective must be the same as that of the noun which it modifies. Thus,

Nom. or Acc. Neut. Sing. **māgnum oppidum**, *a large town*;  
 Nom. Plur. **multae portae**, *many gates*.

**29. Adjectives of the First and Second Declension.** There are two classes of adjectives in Latin: Adjectives of the First and Second Declension, and Adjectives of the Third Declension. Adjectives of the first and second declension have endings as follows.

(a) The masculine endings are the same as those of masculine nouns of the second declension.

(b) The feminine endings are the same as those of nouns of the first declension.

(c) The neuter endings are the same as those of neuter nouns of the second declension.

Review these endings as given in §§ 19 and 20.

**30. Exercise.** Make a table like the following, putting in the blank spaces the proper forms of the adjective **māgnus**, *large, great*.

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____
Acc.	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____

**31. Exercise.** Copy the Latin of the following Exercise,

(a) adding to each noun its proper termination according as it is subject or object, singular or plural;

(b) adding to each adjective its proper termination, according to the rules given in § 29;

(c) adding to each verb the termination **-t** if its subject is singular, **-nt** if its subject is plural; and putting all verbs last in their sentences.

The numbers under the nouns indicate the declension; gender is indicated by the letters *m*, *f*, *n*, whenever it would not be clear from the rules given in §§ 18–20 whether the word is masculine, feminine, or neuter.

1. Has the large town many gates? 2. Many towns  
 habe- māgn- oppid- mult- port- mult- oppid-  
           2 n                   1                   2 n
- have deep ditches. 3. [He]<sup>1</sup> is-besieging<sup>2</sup> the small  
 habe- alt- foss- oppūgna- parv-  
           1
- town. 4. The lieutenants besiege few towns. 5. [They]<sup>3</sup>  
 oppid- lēgāt- oppūgna- pauc- oppid-  
       2 n           2 m                   2 n
- see the high and long walls.  
 vide- alt- et long- mūr-  
                   2 m

**32. Exercise.** First learn the Vocabulary.

1. Habetne Rōmānus gladium longum? 2. Māgna  
 oppida multās portās habent. 3. Puellae parvae fossam  
 altam vident. 4. Nōnne oppida altās et lātās portās  
 habent? 5. Parvum oppidum portās paucās [et] parvās  
 habet.

**33. RULE III.** *An adjective agrees in case, gender, and number with the word which it modifies.*

## LESSON IV.

### THE GENITIVE.

**34. Subject Omitted.** When the subject of a verb is a Personal Pronoun (*he, she, it, they*), the subject is generally omitted in Latin, unless for the sake of emphasis.

By reference to the foot-notes to § 31 it will be seen that

<sup>1</sup> Not expressed. Give verb termination for singular subject.

<sup>2</sup> The same as *besieges* in Latin.

<sup>3</sup> Not expressed. Give verb termination for plural subject.

the termination **-t** is equivalent to the singular pronoun *he, she, it*, and **-nt** to the plural *they*. Thus, **habet** means *he has, she has, or it has*, according to the rest of the sentence. Similarly, **habent** means *they have*.

**35. Review Exercise.** All the words of this exercise have been given in Vocabularies II and III.

1. He has many friends. 2. They have broad swords.  
3. She sees many Romans. 4. Few towns have many gates. 5. They have few gates and small ditches.

**36. Genitive.** This is the name given to that case in Latin which corresponds to the possessive case in English, and also to the objective with *of*. The endings are as follows:

Declension I.		Declension II. <sup>1</sup>	
SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
-ae	-ārum	-ī	-ōrum

**37. Exercise.** Write the nominative, genitive, and accusative, singular and plural, of *filia, daughter; numerus, number; telum, missile*.

**38. Exercise.** Copy and complete the Latin words in the following phrases. Words which have already occurred are not given, and must be supplied.

1. A small number of missiles. 2. A great supply of  
tel- cōpi-  
2 n 1

grain. 3. Lack of money. 4. Of a number of large  
frūment- inopi- pecūni-  
2 n 1 1

provinces. 5. The daughters of many friends.  
prōvinci-  
1

**39. Exercise.** Write in Latin, after memorizing Vocabulary IV.

<sup>1</sup> Masculine and neuter nouns of Declension II end alike in the genitive.

1. Is he not besieging<sup>1</sup> the walls of the town? 2. They see the lieutenant's supply of grain. 3. Have the towns a great number of gates? 4. They see the Romans' lack of missiles. 5. The Roman province has a large supply of money.

**40. RULE IV.** *A noun used to limit or modify another noun is in the genitive case when the two nouns do not denote the same thing.*

## LESSON V.

### READING LESSON: MINERVA.



MINERVA

Minerva est<sup>2</sup>  
 dea. Statua est  
 Minerva. Vic-  
 tōria est dea.  
 Minerva et Vic-  
 tōria sunt<sup>2</sup> deae.  
 Graecia est  
 terra. Attica  
 est terra.  
 Graecia et At-  
 tica sunt terrae.

Minerva habet  
 galeam. Miner-  
 va habet galeam  
 et hastam.  
 Minerva portat  
 Victōriam  
 Victōria habet  
 corōnam et ālās.  
 Statua terram

<sup>1</sup> See foot-note 2 to § 31.

<sup>2</sup> **Est, is, and sunt, are,** are followed by the nominative in Latin as in English. See Lesson XII if fuller treatment is desired at this stage.

ōrnat. Statuae et ārae terrām ōrnant. Puella deās laudat.

Puella pia rosās portat. Puellā āram marmoream ōrnat. Flamma splendida deam dēlectat. Corōnae marmoreae āram albam ōrnant. Minerva est dea māgna. Hasta longa et galea aurea deam māgnam ōrnant. Terra statuās albās et marmoreās ārās portat.

Unda est valida. Undae pūrae ōram altam pulsant. Herbae et olīvae terram ōrnant. Olīva est iūcunda. Statuae marmoreae sunt pretiōsae. Galeae aureae sunt splendidae. Attica nōn māgna terra est, sed clāra.

## LESSON VI.

### PRINCIPAL PARTS. THE DATIVE.

**41. How to Use the Principal Parts.** The principal parts of a verb (see foot-note to Vocabulary III) are used as a guide to the writing of the verb; for by cutting off the **-re** of the second of these parts (the infinitive) we can learn what vowel precedes the **-t** or **-nt** of the ending. Thus, **pūgnāre** becomes **pūgnā-**, giving **pūgna t** and **pūgnan t**; **habēre** becomes **habē-**, giving **habe t** and **haben t**.

This vowel is called the Stem-vowel, and is changed when the infinitive ends in **-ēre** or **-īre**. Thus,

**gerere** gives **gerit** and **gerunt** (not *geret* and *gerent*);  
**audire** gives **audiunt** (not *audint*).

Use these rules in writing the following exercise :

**42. Exercise.** Some of the verbs of this Exercise are new. See the Vocabulary. The other words have already been given.

1. Do the girl's friends hear the lieutenant? 2. The friends of the Romans are sending<sup>1</sup> money. 3. Does not the lieutenant's daughter send supplies of grain? 4. He is fortifying<sup>1</sup> the gates of the towns of the province. 5. They are fortifying<sup>1</sup> the walls of the Romans' little town.

**43. Dative.** This is the name given to that case in Latin which corresponds to the following uses in English:

(a) the objective with *to* or *for*.

(b) the indirect object; that is, a word in the objective case before which *to* may be put without changing the meaning. Thus, *Give me the book* = *Give the book to me*.

The endings of the dative are as follows:

Declension I.		Declension II. <sup>2</sup>	
SINGULAR.	PLURAL	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
-aē	-īs	-ō	-īs

**44. Exercise.** Write the dative, singular and plural, with English meanings, of *filius*, *son*, and *fēmina*, *woman*.

**45. Exercise.** 1. Does he give money to [his]<sup>3</sup> daughter? 2. They do not give a supply of grain to [their] nōn da-

enemies. 3. Does the ambassador's son owe [his] friend inimic- fili- dēbe-  
2 m 2 m 2 m

money? 4. Do they not give the money to [their] friends? 5. The lieutenant gives a supply of weapons to tēl-  
2 n

the provinces.

<sup>1</sup> See foot-note 2 to § 31.

<sup>2</sup> Masculine and neuter nouns of Declension II end alike in the dative.

<sup>3</sup> Words in square brackets are not to be translated.

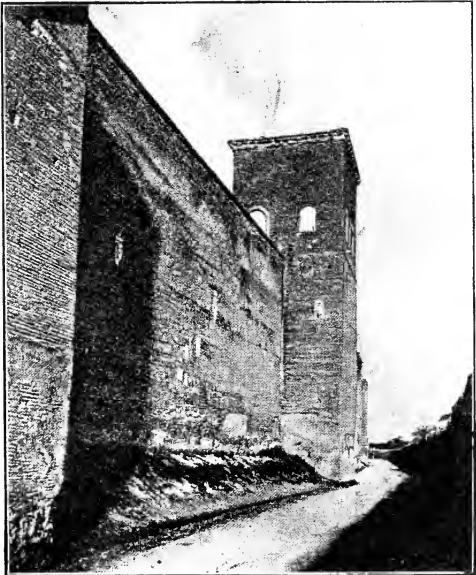
**46. Exercise.** 1. They owe money to their enemies. 2. Do they not give a reward to the Gaul? 3. The Gaul gives a weapon to the Roman. 4. The ambassadors do not give weapons to the provinces. 5. Does he owe money to many friends?

**47. RULE V.** *The indirect object is in the dative.*

## LESSON VII.

### THE ABLATIVE.

**48. Review Exercise.** 1. Many towns do not have gates, walls, [and] ditches. 2. Does he owe money to the ambassador? 3. They give the money to their friend's little daughter. 4. The ambassadors' friends give a small number of weapons to the Gauls. 5. The Gaul's friend owes money to the lieutenant.



ANCIENT CITY WALL

**49. Ablative.**  
This is the name





(a) When the ablative denotes the PLACE WHERE something occurs, it takes the preposition *in*. Thus,

**Rōmānōs in oppidō vident,** *They see the Romans in the town.*

(b) When the ablative denotes the TIME WHEN OR WITHIN WHICH something occurs, it is used WITHOUT a preposition, as in sentences 1, 6, and 10 of § 51.

(c) When the ablative denotes the MEANS OR INSTRUMENT with which someone performs any act, it is used WITHOUT a preposition, as in sentences 2, 3, 7, 8, 9, and 10 of § 51.

(d) *With*, besides denoting the means or instrument (as in the sentences just given), may also denote ACCOMPANIMENT. When such is the case, *with* is represented by the ablative with *cum*. Thus,

*We come with the lieutenant, Venimus cum lēgātō.*

**54. Caution about Cum.** *Cum* must never be used to express instrument or means. In case of doubt, substitute *together with* for the *with*. If this does not alter the sense, *cum* may be used. Thus, the last example might be changed to

*We come together with the lieutenant,*

a change which could not be made in the sentences referred to in (c) above.

**55. Exercise.** 1. Are the troops fighting in the town? 2. In a few hours they fortify the camp. 3. Why does he send a messenger with a letter?<sup>1</sup> 4. Does the messenger fight with a sword? 5. Do not the Romans take the Gauls' town with swords?

**56. Exercise.** After memorizing the Vocabulary, translate each of the following words and sentences in every possible way. Thus, if we had *hortō*, it might be dative, mean-

---

<sup>1</sup> Do not use *-ne* when there is any other interrogative word, as *why* in this sentence.

ing *to* or *for* a garden, or ablative, meaning *by*, *with*, or *from* a garden. It would not mean *in* a garden, as that would be in *hortō* (§ 53, a).

1. Annō; annī. 2. Quattuor annīs. 3. Periculō.  
4. Periculō populum liberat. 5. Inimicīs. 6. Inimicīs  
lēgātus pecūniam dēbet. 7. Cōpiae. 8. Cōpiae mūrōs  
oppidī vident. 9. Cōpīam pīlōrum nōn habent. 10. Cūr  
cōpiae pīlīs pūgnant?

**57. RULE VI.** *The place where is expressed by the ablative with the preposition in.*

**RULE VII.** *The time when or within which is expressed by the ablative without a preposition.*

**RULE VIII.** *Means or instrument is expressed by the ablative without a preposition.*

**RULE IX.** *Accompaniment is expressed by the ablative with the preposition cum.*

## LESSON IX.

### THE VOCATIVE. THE PRESENT TENSE.

**58. Review Exercise.** 1. In four years he frees the people from want. 2. Do the Romans take the Gauls' town with the swords? 3. The troops are coming with the lieutenant. 4. They free the ambassador's son from many dangers. 5. The Romans take many towns in a few years.

**59. Vocative.** This is the name given to that form of a noun used in addressing some one, as

*Come, friend! Venī, amīce!*

In Latin, the vocative is like the nominative except in the singular of those nouns of Declension II which end in **-us**. In such nouns, the vocative ends in **-e**, as **amīce** above.

**60. Endings of the Verb.** These indicate the number and person of the subject.



**62. Exercise.** Tell the number and person of each of the following verbs, give the principal parts, and translate.

1. Audītis; audīmus; audiunt. 2. Dēbeō; dēbētis; dēbēmus. 3. Dās; dat; dō. 4. Expūgnant; expūgnās; expūgnat. 5. Habet; habeō; habēs. 6. Līberātisne? līberantne? liberāmusne? 7. Nōnne mittit? nōnne mittunt? nōnne mittō? 8. Mūnitis; mūnīs; mūnīmus. 9. Oppūgnō; oppūgnās; oppūgnant. 10. Prīvō; prīvātis; prīvant. 11. Pūgnās; pūgnāmus; pūgnant. 12. Videt; vidēmus; vidētis.

**63. RULE X.** *A verb agrees with its subject in number and person.*



DIANA

## LESSON X.

### READING LESSON: DIĀNA.

Diāna erat dea lūnae. Lūna splendida figūram Diānae deae ōrnat. Lūna et stellae viās terrārum illūstrant. Silvae Graeciae sunt tūtēla bēstiārum. Diāna cervās amat, ursās silvārum necat. Cervā parvā praeda ursae māgnae est.

Silva dēnsa et obscūrā cervae et ursae iūcunda est. Bēstiīs ferīs aqua et herbae silvārum grātae sunt. Cervīs timidīs Diāna

propitia est. Cervā servāta deae grāta est. Sagittae deae ursīs periculōsae sunt. Aqua lāta et alta ursae vulnerātae perniciosā est.

Diāna pharetrā et multīs sagittīs armāta est. Diāna lūnā et stellīs viās terrārum illūstrat. Bēstiae cautae silvā dēnsā tūtae sunt. Sed dea ursam incautam sagittā fatīgat. Ursa fugā fatīgāta est. Ursa in fossā nōn tūta est. Dea ursum in undīs fossae lātae necat.

## LESSON XI.

### THE PRESENT OF FOUR CONJUGATIONS.

**64. Exercise.** A table like the following, containing all the forms of a word, is called a Paradigm.

*fossa, a ditch, f.*

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
Nominative.	<b>fossa</b>	<b>fossae</b>
Vocative.	<b>fossa</b>	<b>fossae</b>
Genitive.	<b>fossae</b>	<b>fossārum</b>
Dative.	<b>fossae</b>	<b>fossīs</b>
Accusative.	<b>fossam</b>	<b>fossās</b>
Ablative.	<b>fossā</b>	<b>fossīs</b>

Write paradigms of the Latin words for *friend*; *rampart*.

**65. Four Conjugations.** In §§ 61 and 62 it will be noticed that the person-endings of the verbs are always preceded by some vowel (called the stem-vowel), except sometimes in the first person singular. The part of the verb which ends with the stem-vowel is called the Verb-stem. Verbs are divided into four classes, called Conjugations, according to the final vowel of the verb-stem. In the first conjugation this vowel is *ā*; in



**67. Exercise.**<sup>1</sup> Before doing this Exercise learn the Vocabulary to the lesson. Give the number and person and principal parts of each verb, and translate the whole.

1. Bellumne parant? 2. Lēgātum mittis. 3. Venītis. 4. Rēgnum tenet. 5. Bellum parāmus. 6. Nōne timētis numerum inimicōrum? 7. Castra māgna pōnunt. 8. Cōpiās paucās mittimus. 9. Audīs. 10. Nōne oppidum mūrō et fossā mūniō? 11. Rēgnum occupās. 12. Quid videō?

## LESSON XII.

### THE PRESENT OF *SUM*. PREDICATE AGREEMENT.

**68. Review Exercise.** Write paradigms (see § 64) of the present tense of **parō**, **teneō**, **pōnō**, and **veniō**.

**69. Present Tense of *Sum*.** The verb **sum**, *be*, is irregular, as shown in the paradigm below. The person-endings, however, can be recognized, as in other verbs. Notice that the first person singular has **-m** instead of the **-ō** of the present of regular verbs.

#### Paradigm.

SINGULAR.	1. <b>su</b> m, <i>I am</i>
	2. <b>e</b> s, <i>you (sing.) are</i>
	3. <b>es</b> t, <i>he, she, it, is</i>
PLURAL.	1. <b>su</b> mus, <i>we are</i>
	2. <b>es</b> tis, <i>you (plur.) are</i>
	3. <b>su</b> nt, <i>they are</i>

---

<sup>1</sup> At the discretion of the teacher, the vocabulary alone might be prepared in advance, and the translation done in class.

**70. Use of *Sum*.** The verb *sum*, *be*, is seldom used alone, but takes an adjective or noun to tell WHAT or WHO the person or thing named by the subject is. Thus,

**Labiēnus est lēgātus, Labienus is a lieutenant.**

**Lēgātus est dēfessus, the lieutenant is wearied.**

This adjective or noun agrees with the subject; the noun in case, and the adjective in case, gender and number. Such nouns and adjectives are called Predicate Nouns<sup>1</sup> and Predicate Adjectives.<sup>1</sup> These must be carefully distinguished from objects; the difference being that while the object names that which RECEIVES the action expressed by a TRANSITIVE verb, and is in the ACCUSATIVE case, the predicate noun or adjective is used with the INTRANSITIVE *sum*, it MODIFIES OR DEFINES the subject, and is in the SAME CASE AS THE SUBJECT.

From its use as a connective word, *sum* is called the Copula, that is, the "coupler."

**71. Exercise.** Copy and complete the Latin.

1. I am a Roman; you are not a slave; Tullia<sup>2</sup> is a  
serv-  
2 m  
 girl. 2. We are messengers; you are ambassadors; the  
nūnti-  
2 m  
 women are not poets. 3. We are few; the town is small;  
fēmin- 1                      poēt-  
1 m  
 [our] friends are many. 4. The sword is not long. 5. In  
 the town are many slaves.

<sup>1</sup> Called "Attribute Complements" by certain English grammars.

<sup>2</sup> Many proper nouns are the same in Latin as in English, and are declined like common nouns having the same terminations. These will not be given in the vocabularies.



**72. Exercise.** First learn the Vocabulary.

1. The troops are tired by the long battle. 2. The good slave is the woman's messenger. 3. You are a good poet. 4. You are good poets. 5. Am I not a poet? Are we poets? 6. The camp is (Latin "are") long and wide. 7. By many battles we shall take the town. 8. The women are good. 9. They see the good women. 10. The good woman sees the good<sup>1</sup> poet.

**73. RULE XI.** *A predicate noun agrees in case with the word which it modifies.*

### LESSON XIII.

#### FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS.

**74. Declension of Nouns and Adjectives.** To "decline" a noun or adjective is to give all its forms in order, according to § 64. In declining adjectives, the forms should be arranged in six columns, first the masculine, feminine, and neuter singular, then the same in the plural.

**75. Exercise.** Write out the complete declension (that is, a paradigm) of the adjective *māgnus*, *great*, according to the method described in § 74.

**76. Nouns in -er.** Some masculine nouns of Declension II have *-er* in the nominative singular. The endings for the other cases are added to the nominative form as base. The *e* is generally dropped before *r* in these cases, as in *ager* below; but sometimes it is retained, as in *puer*. In the Vocabularies, the form of the genitive singular of nouns, and the nominative feminine and neuter of adjectives, will show when the *e* is to be dropped.

---

<sup>1</sup> *Bonus*, not *bona*. Why? See §§ 29, (a) and 33.

## Paradigms.

ager, *field*, m.puer, *boy*, m.

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.		SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
N. V.	ager	agr ī		puer	puer ī
Gen.	agr ī	agr ōrum		puer ī	puer ōrum
Dat.	agr ō	agr īs		puer ō	puer īs
Acc.	agr um	agr ōs		puer um	puer ōs
Abl.	agr ō	agr īs		puer ō	puer īs

**Vir**, *man*, like **puer**, is declined by adding case-endings to the nominative form.

**77. Exercise.** Write complete paradigms of the adjectives meaning *free*; *frequent* (see Vocabulary to this lesson); and of the noun **vir**.

**78. Some Peculiar Case-forms.** **Dea**, *goddess*, and **filia**, *daughter*, have dative and ablative plural **deābus** and **filiābus**, respectively. Otherwise there would be confusion with the same cases of **deus**, *god*, and **filius**, *son*.

Nouns (but not adjectives) of Declension II, ending in **-ius** and **-ium** in the nominative, commonly end in **-ī** instead of **-iī** in the genitive singular.

Proper names in **-ius** have the vocative ending in **-ī** instead of **-ie**. The accent is the same as though this contraction, as it is called, had not taken place. Thus,

(from **cōnsilium**) **cōnsi'li** (not **cōn'silī**), *of a plan*;

(from **Vergilius**) **Vergi'li** (not **Ver'gilī**), *Vergil!* or *O Vergil!*

The vocative singular masculine of **meus**, *my*, is **mī**.

**79. Exercise.** First learn the Vocabulary.

1. Vergil, you are a great poet. 2. We are the sons of Gāius, the ambassador. 3. We give to our sons long swords, to our daughters much money. 4. We are free;

the town is free; are not our friends free? 5. The books, friend Gāius, are mine.

**80. Exercise.** Tell the case, gender, number, and meaning of each noun and adjective.

1. Librī; liberī; librum. 2. Liberum, liber, liber.  
3. Cōnsilī; cōnsiliō; cōnsilia. 4. Deābus; filiābus; Gāi.  
5. Mī; mei; nostrae. 6. Vir; virī; virō. 7. Puerum; puerōs; puer. 8. Crēber; crēbrā; crēbra. 9. Agrō; agrīs. 10. Dea; deae; deās.

#### LESSON XIV.

##### ATTRIBUTIVE AGREEMENT. THE IMPERFECT TENSE.

**81. Review Exercise.** 1. What are you giving to the goddesses, Romans? 2. [There]<sup>1</sup> are many ditches in my fields. 3. Is the good man weary? 4. Our boys are leaving the fields. 5. A free people has many books.

**82. Attributive Agreement. Apposition.** An adjective which is not connected by any verb with the noun with which it agrees is called an Attributive Adjective, as

**cōnsilium bonum, good advice.**

A noun may be used like an attributive adjective, to limit another noun *meaning the same thing*. Such a noun is called an Appositive, and is said to be in Apposition with the word which it limits.

Appositives, like predicate nouns, always *agree in case* with the nouns which they limit. Thus,

**Gāius tribūnus, Gaius the tribune.**

**Gāi tribūnī, Of Gaius the tribune.**

---

<sup>1</sup> The "expletive" *there*, in such expressions as *there is, there are, etc.*, is not to be translated.

**83. The Imperfect Tense.** Tense means time.

It has already been seen (§ 60) that the present tense of a verb represents an action as going on **AT** the time of speaking.

The imperfect tense represents an action as going on **BEFORE** the time of speaking. Thus,

Present. **laudant**, *they are praising, they praise*,<sup>1</sup> etc.

Imperfect. **laudāba nt**, *they were praising, or they praised*.

The syllable **-ba-** is called the Tense Sign of the Imperfect. The person-endings are the same as for the present, except that the first person singular has **-m** instead of **-ō**. (See §§ 60 and 69.) Thus,

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
1.	<b>-ba m</b>	<b>-bā mus</b>
2.	<b>-bā s</b>	<b>-bā tis</b>
3.	<b>-ba t</b>	<b>-ba nt</b>

In the first conjugation these terminations are preceded by the vowel **ā**; in the second and third by **ē**; in the fourth by **iē**. Thus,

Conj. I.	<b>-ā ba m</b> , etc., as <b>laudābās</b> .
Conj. II and III.	<b>-ē ba m</b> , etc., as <b>vidēbat, mittēbant</b> .
Conj. IV.	<b>-iē ba m</b> , etc., as <b>audiēbāmus</b> .

**84. Exercise.** Write out complete paradigms of the imperfect tense of **pūgnō**, *fight*; **teneō**, *hold*; **mittō**, *send*; **veniō**, *come*. Give English translations of the forms of **pūgnō**, according to § 83.

**85. Imperfect Tense of Sum.** This is irregular, as will appear from the following

<sup>1</sup> See foot-note to § 61.

## Paradigm.

SINGULAR.	1. <b>era</b> m, <i>I was</i>
	2. <b>erā</b> s, <i>you (sing.) were</i>
	3. <b>era</b> t, <i>he, she, it, was</i>
PLURAL.	1. <b>erā</b> mus, <i>we were</i>
	2. <b>erā</b> tis, <i>you (pl.) were</i>
	3. <b>era</b> nt, <i>they were</i>

**86. Exercise.** Learn the Vocabulary.

1. Then [there]<sup>1</sup> was great lack of grain in the town [of] Capua.<sup>2</sup> 2. I was not the friend of Cātullus the poet. 3. The altars of the goddess Vesta were beautiful. 4. Friends, why were you in the fields? 5. We were the friends of Gāius and Lūcius the tribunes. 6. Gāius the tribune was preparing-for the battle. 7. Were we not giving an altar to the beautiful goddess Minerva? 8. Why were you holding the altar? 9. I feared the danger of war. 10. Then you were staying in the town [of] Capua<sup>2</sup> and writing to Cinna the lieutenant.

**87. RULE XII.** *An appositive agrees in case with the word which it limits.*

## LESSON XV.

READING LESSON: PŪGNA RŌMĀNŌRUM ET GERMĀNŌRUM.

In campō lātō Rōmānī et Germānī pūgnant. Rōmānī hastās longās habent. Gladiī Rōmānōrum parvī, sed Germānīs perniciosī sunt. Rōmānī primum hastīs, tum gladiīs pūgnant. Clipeōs dūrōs, galeās ferreās, lōricās dūrās portant. Clipeīs, galeīs, lōricīs, multās plagās Germānōrum vītant. Clipeī Germānōrum nōn ferreī, sed līgneī

<sup>1</sup> See foot-note to § 81.

<sup>2</sup> Appositive, and therefore not genitive in Latin.



RETURN OF VICTORIOUS GERMANS FROM BATTLE

sunt. Lōricās et galeās ferreās nōn portant. Tamen patientiā māgnā pūgnant et gladiīs longīs multōs Rōmānōs necant.

Proelium Rōmānīs adversum, Germānīs secundum erat. Proelī secundī memoria sempiterna est. Imperiō Rōmānōrum proelium adversum perniciōsum erat. Proelium adversum Rōmānī dēplōrant. Bellō secundō Germānia tūta est. Commoda bellī secundī māgna sunt. Periculōrum memoria iūcunda est. Membriīs Germānōrum lōricae Rōmānōrum aptae nōn sunt. Scūta et galeās Rōmānōrum Germānī raptant. Scūtīs et galeīs aedificia ōrnant.

## LESSON XVI.

### THE FUTURE TENSE.

**88. Review Exercise.** 1. Why was the beautiful girl writing a letter? 2. Then messengers were coming with

their friends, Cinna and Gāius the tribunes. 3. There were many slaves in the kingdom of Alexander (declined like *ager*) the Great. 4. Our messages were frequent. 5. The people<sup>1</sup> did not fear the slaves, [their] enemies.

**89. The Future Tense.** This tense represents action as going on AFTER the moment of speaking. In English, the future is formed by the aid of the auxiliaries *shall* (in the first person) and *will* (in the second and third persons). Thus,

*We shall praise, laudā bi mus.*

*They will send, mitt e nt.*

There are two sets of terminations for the future tense. One of these is employed in the first and second conjugations, the other in the third and fourth. Thus,

CONJUGATION.	I and II.	III and IV.
SINGULAR.	1. -b ō	-a m
	2. -bi s	-ē s
	3. -bi t	-e t
PLURAL.	1. -bi mus	-ē mus
	2. -bi tis	-ē tis
	3. -bu nt	-e nt

The terminations of the future are preceded in the first conjugation by the vowel *ā*; in the second by *ē*; in the fourth by *i*. In the third the stem-vowel<sup>2</sup> is dropped. Thus,

I. *laudā b ō* (from *laudō*), *I shall praise.*

II. *tenē bi s* (from *teneō*), *you will hold.*

III. *mitt e t* (from *mittō*), *he will send.*

IV. *audi e nt* (from *audiō*), *they will hear.*

<sup>1</sup> Singular. The plural, *populī*, means *nations*.

<sup>2</sup> See § 41.

**90. Exercise.** Write paradigms of the future tense of the four verbs just given, with English translation of the forms of *laudō* according to § 89.

**91. Exercise.** 1. Shall we lay-waste the fields? 2. The lieutenant will break (move) camp. 3. I shall leave the town. 4. You will not find the ambassadors in the town, Gāius.<sup>1</sup> 5. I shall lay waste the fields; I shall not break camp. 6. He will find his friends; he will not be wearied. 7. They will find and lay waste the fields of the Gauls. 8. Gāius will leave the camp and seize the gates of the town. 9. Friends, you will wage a great war, and besiege many towns, and find much<sup>2</sup> money. 10. Shall you not fear the danger, lieutenant?

**92. Exercise.** Mox lēgātus Rōmānus castra in locō idōneō pōnet. Tum agrōs Gallōrum vāstābit, oppidum oppūgnābit. In oppidō fēminae et puerī manēbunt, nam perīculum timēbunt. Galī in agrīs gladiīs pūgnābunt. Rōmānī dēfessī proelium relinquent et castra movēbunt.

## LESSON XVII.

### THE FUTURE OF *SUM*. VERB REVIEW.

**93. Review Exercise.** 1. You will not find the lieutenant in the camp, friends. 2. The Gauls will lay waste the poet's fields. 3. They will break camp and leave our fields. 4. Shall I find the letter? 5. Why will the troops remain in danger?

**94. Future Tense of *Sum*.** This is irregular, as will appear from the following

<sup>1</sup> The vocative is usually placed after the first word or two of the sentence. <sup>2</sup> Latin says "big money" where we say "much money."



## Paradigm.

	1. er ō,	<i>I shall be</i>
SINGULAR.	2. eri s,	<i>you (sing.) will be</i>
	3. eri t,	<i>he, etc., will be</i>
	1. eri mus,	<i>we shall be</i>
PLURAL.	2. eri tis,	<i>you (plur.) will be</i>
	3. eru nt,	<i>they will be</i>

**95. Exercise.** 1. Will the boys be our enemies? 2. Then we shall be men. 3. You will be lieutenant; will you not leave the town? 4. I shall find the gate; I shall be free. 5. Boys, you will find the troops in the town and then you will be free. 6. The woman will be free from want.

**96. Exercise.** Review the verbs in the vocabularies; also §§ 60, 65, 69, 83, 85, 89.

1. They were besieging. 2. We shall see. 3. I owed. 4. They save. 5. You fight (sing. and plur.). 6. You will have (sing. and plur.). 7. He frees. 8. They are fortifying. 9. He was leaving. 10. Slaves, you will be free. 11. Vergil, you are a great poet. 12. He will place the altar in a large field.



ALTAR

**97. Exercise.** Learn the Vocabulary.

1. Fēminae et puerī periculō bellī perterrentur. 2. Itaque virī oppida mūrīs māgnīs mūniunt. 3. Mūrīs et portīs fēminās puerōsque servābunt. 4. In oppidō liberī erunt periculō. 5. Cōnsiliō bonō puerōs periculō liberābunt.

## LESSON XVIII.

THE THIRD DECLENSION: CONSONANT STEMS  
IN P, B, C, AND G.

**98. Base and Stem.** In studying declensions I and II, we have used the term *base* to indicate that part of a word which is left when the case-endings are taken away. In studying the third declension, it will be necessary to speak of the *stem*, which in this declension is often the same as the base. (In declensions I and II, base and stem are different. Thus, the base of **servus** is **serv-**, but its stem is **servo-**; the base of **porta** is **port-**, but its stem is **portā-**.)

**99. Classes of Nouns.** Nouns of the third declension differ in their methods of forming the nominative singular. This difference depends on the last letter of the stem. If the last letter is a consonant, the noun is said to have a consonant stem. If the last letter is **i**, the noun is said to have an **i-stem**.

Consonant stems are further divided as follows:

(a) Mute stems; ending in  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \mathbf{p} \text{ or } \mathbf{b} \text{ (labial mutes);} \\ \mathbf{c} \text{ or } \mathbf{g} \text{ (palatal mutes);} \\ \mathbf{t} \text{ or } \mathbf{d} \text{ (lingual mutes).} \end{array} \right.$

(b) Liquid stems, ending in **l** or **r**.

(c) Nasal stems, ending in **m** or **n**.

**100. Declension of Nouns with Mute Stems.** These are declined by adding the following endings directly to the stem:

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
N. V.	-s	-ēs
Gen.	-is	-um
Dat.	-ī	-ibus
Acc.	-em	-ēs
Abl.	-e	-ibus

In the nominative singular, the following changes occur :

(a) **c** or **g** combines with **s** to form **x**. Thus,

STEM.	NOMINATIVE.
vōc-	vōx (for vōc-s), <i>voice, word.</i>
rēg-	rēx (for rēg-s), <i>king.</i>

(b) **t** or **d** is dropped before **s**. Thus,

STEM.	NOMINATIVE.
aetāt-	aetās (for aetāt-s), <i>age.</i>
cūstōd-	cūstōs (for cūstōd-s), <i>guard.</i>

(c) A short **i** before the final consonant of the stem is generally changed to **e** in the nominative singular. Thus,

STEM.	NOMINATIVE.
prīncip-	prīnceps, <i>chief.</i>
iūdic-	iūdex, <i>juror.</i>
obsid-	obses, <i>hostage.</i>

**101. Exercise.** Write paradigms from the following stems:

1. prīncip-, *chief*, m.
2. lēg-, *law*, f.
3. milit-, *soldier*, m.

**102. Exercise.** Copy and complete.

1. By a law of the commons. 2. To the chief of the  
 plēb-  
 3 f  
 Gauls. 3. To the leaders of the war. 4. By the words  
 due-  
 3 m  
 vōc-  
 3 f  
 of kings. 5. We seek peace. 6. We were seeking the  
 rēg-  
 3  
 pet-  
 3  
 pāc-  
 3 f  
 leaders. 7. The king's law was good. 8. The chief's  
 word is law. 9. The soldiers seek the safety of the  
 salūt-  
 3 f  
 state. 10. In peace the laws are in safety.  
 cīvitāt-  
 3 f

**103. How to Know the Stem.** To find the stem of a noun of the third declension, cut off the case-ending of the genitive singular. Thus,

NOMINATIVE.	GENITIVE.	STEM.
<b>virtūs,</b>	<b>virtūt-is,</b>	<b>virtūt-</b>

This rule is safe only when the genitive has more syllables than the nominative. Such a word is said to "increase in the genitive."

**104. Exercise.** Give the nominative and genitive singular, and the stem of each noun; tell where it is made, that is, its case, number and gender (see Vocabulary); and translate.

1. Pācī.
2. Mīlitum.
3. Plēbem.
4. Lēgēs.
5. Prīncipibus.
6. Dux.
7. Vōcēs.
8. Cīvitātis.
9. Salūte.
10. Bellō prīncipēs salūtem plēbis petunt.

## LESSON XIX.

### THE PERFECT TENSE.

**105. Present Stem.** The tenses thus far learned have all been formed by adding terminations to what is called the Present Stem. This stem ends in a vowel (§ 65).

(a) In the first conjugation, the stem-vowel is **-ā-**; as in  
**laudā s, laudā bā s, laudā bi s.**

(b) In the second conjugation, the stem-vowel is **-ē-**; as in  
**tīmē s, tīmē bā s, tīmē bi s.**

(c) In the third conjugation, the stem-vowel is **-ē-**, but is often changed to **-ī-** or **-ū-**; as in

**mitti s, mittu nt;**

or dropped; as in

**mitt a m.**

(*d*) In the fourth conjugation the stem-vowel is *-ī-*; as in  
*venī s, venī ē bā s, vēnī ē s.*

A long stem-vowel is shortened before another vowel (see § 12, *b*), and before the endings *-t* and *-nt*.

**106. The Perfect Tense.** This tense represents action (*a*) AS COMPLETED AT the present time or (*b*) AS SIMPLY HAVING OCCURRED BEFORE the present time. The first is translated by the English perfect ("present perfect"), using the auxiliary verb *have*, and is called the Pure Perfect; the second, by the English past or "preterite" tense, and is called the Historical Perfect. Thus,

Pure Perfect.	<i>laudāvit, he has praised.</i>
Historical Perfect.	<i>laudāvīt, he praised.</i>

One must judge by the context which of these is meant.

**107. The Perfect Stem.** The perfect tense is formed by adding a special set of person-endings to the perfect stem. This stem may be found by cutting off the *i* from the third of the principal parts of the verb. Thus,

PRINCIPAL PARTS.	<i>amō, amāre, amāvī, amātum.</i>
PERFECT STEM.	<i>amāv-</i>

(*a*) In the first and fourth conjugations, the perfect stem is formed by adding *v* to the present stem, as above: *amā-, amāv-*.

(*b*) In the second conjugation, the perfect stem is generally formed by dropping the stem-vowel and adding *u*, as *monē-, monu-*.

But *dēlēō, destroy, fleō, weep*, the various compounds of *-pleō, fill* (as *compleō, fill up*), and a few others, form their perfect in the same manner as conjugations I and IV. Thus, *dēlē-, dēlēv-*.

(*c*) In the third conjugation, the perfect stem is sometimes formed by adding *s* to the present stem after drop-

ping the stem vowel, as **carps-** from **carpe-**; **rēx-** from **rege-** (**rēx-** = **rēgs-**; see § 100, *a*). There is, however, no fixed rule; the only safe way in any conjugation is to learn the principal parts of each verb as it occurs.

**108. Endings of the Perfect.** These are added directly to the perfect stem, according to the following

**Paradigm.**

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
1.	pūgnāv-ī	pūgnāv- <b>imus</b>
2.	pūgnāv- <b>istī</b>	pūgnāv- <b>istis</b>
3.	pūgnāv- <b>it</b>	pūgnāv- <b>ērunt</b> or <b>-ēre</b>

**109. Exercise.** Write paradigms of the perfect of **habeō**, **dēleō**, **scribō**, **mūniō**, and **sum**. Give English meanings of **habeo** and **sum**, according to § 107.

**110. Exercise.** Review all the verbs in the Vocabularies, and learn to conjugate the perfects.

**111. Exercise.** 1. We have waged war. 2. They left<sup>1</sup> the place. 3. He sent a messenger. 4. I did not pitch camp. 5. I was then pitching camp. 6. You have hastened. 7. You wrote many letters. 8. We have been ambassadors. 9. They have been messengers. 10. They did not seek our friends. 11. We were seeking friends. 12. He has always been our friend.

**112. Exercise.** Give the present stem, the perfect stem, the principal parts, and the translation of each of the following forms.

1. Flēvistī. 2. Mānsērunt. 3. Mōvī. 4. Vāstāvit.  
5. Invēnistis. 6. Relīquimus.

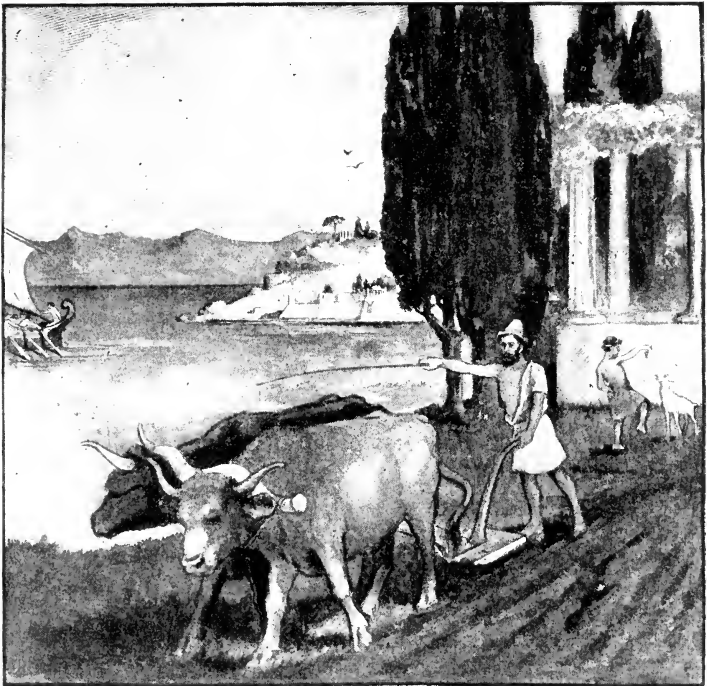
---

<sup>1</sup>To determine whether the imperfect or perfect is to be used in translating the English past tense, try to discover whether the *continuance* of the past action is thought of, or merely its *occurrence*.

## LESSON XX.

## READING LESSON: AGRICOLA ET NAUTAE.

Ītalia terra fēcunda est. Multī incolae Ītaliae agricolae sunt. Terram Ītaliae oppida clāra, vīcī amoenī, agrī lātī, silvae māgnae ōnant. Taurī agricolārum Rōmānōrum agrōs arātrō arant. Arātrum ferreum est, taurī



AGRICOLA ET NAUTAE

rōbustī iugum līgneum portant. Agricola strēnuus taurōs pigrōs baculō castīgat. Puer parvus agricolae cum caprō et caprā in agrō saltat. Herbae tenerae caprīs iūcundae sunt.

Ōrae Italiae undīs pulsantur. Nautāe perītī in unciīs nāvīgant. Ventī validī vēla lāta nāvīgī pulsant. Rēmōs longōs nautae rōbustī agitant. Nautae strēnuī ex Ītaliā ferrum, frūmentum, vīnum exportant. Aurum et argentum nautae Rōmānīs in oppida<sup>1</sup> Ītaliae important. Etiam nauta perītus ventōs asperōs vītāt. Nam saxa ōrae nāvīgīō līgneō perīculōsa sunt. Parvum oppidum est in ōrā. Nautae validī in nāvīgīō dē oppidō discēdunt. Nautās et nāvīgīum agricola strēnuus videt. Puer nōn videt; semper cum caprīs saltat.

## LESSON XXI.

### THE PLUPERFECT TENSE.

**113. Review Exercise.** 1. The Romans have destroyed the town and the women are weeping. 2. The Romans have filled our fields with soldiers. 3. Why have you not sought peace? 4. We found many slaves in the camp. 5. The laws of the Romans were good.

**114. The Pluperfect.** This tense represents action as completed BEFORE some point of time in the past. Thus,

laudāv **era** m, *I had praised*;  
fu **erā** mus, *we had been*.

It is formed by adding the following terminations to the perfect stem:

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
1.	<b>-era</b> m	<b>-erā</b> mus
2.	<b>-erā</b> s	<b>-erā</b> tis
3.	<b>-era</b> t	<b>-era</b> nt

**115. Exercise.** Write paradigms of the pluperfect of

<sup>1</sup> In, when followed by the accusative, means *into*.



**parō, moneō, scribō, audiō, and sum**, with English meanings of **sum** according to § 113.

**116. Exercise.** Learn the Vocabulary.

1. Virtūs militum māgna fuerat. 2. Obsidēs nostrōs in servitūte nōn tenerant. 3. Laudem parvam obsidibus dederat (from **dō**). 4. Māgnā virtūte salūtem cīvitātis servāvit. 5. Auctōritātem equitum timuerāmus. 6. Militēs dēfessī fuerant. 7. Equitēs castrīs (*in camp*) continuerās. 8. Equitēs proelium nōn timēbant; perīculum servitūtis semper timent. 9. Pedēs servōrum dēfessī sunt. 10. Dux vōcem obsidum Rōmānōrum audīverat. 11. Parat; parābat; parābit; parāvit; parāverat. 12. Fuerātis; es; erunt; fuistis; erās.

**117. Exercise.** The Gauls feared slavery. Accordingly they had fortified their towns with walls and ramparts. But the Romans came and destroyed the walls. Then the Gauls sought peace. They gave their children as hostages to the Romans. The Romans had already laid waste the fields, and the women were weeping.

## LESSON XXII.

### THE THIRD DECLENSION: LIQUID AND NASAL STEMS.

**118. Review Exercise.** 1. The cavalry (plur. of **eques**) had seized the camp of the soldiers and were laying waste the fields. 2. The leader has saved the town and is breaking camp. 3. The ambassadors see the danger and will seek peace. 4. Through (by) the influence of the knights the state had kept (held) the hostages in slavery. 5. The praise of the people is, and has been, and always will be, pleasing (**grātus, -a, -um**) to princes (**prīnceps**).

**119. Liquid Stems.** These end in *l* and *r*. Nouns whose stems end in these letters add no case-ending to form the nominative. Thus,

STEM.	NOM.	GEN.
cōnsul-	cōnsul	cōnsul is, <i>consul</i> .
Caesar-	Caesar	Caesar is, <i>Caesar</i> .

**120. Stems in -tr.** These form the nominative in **-ter**, as

STEM.	NOMINATIVE.
patr-	pater, <i>father</i> .
mātr-	māter, <i>mother</i> .

**121. Nominatives in -s.** A few nouns, apparently of the above class, have **-s** in place of **-r** in the nominative singular. Memorize the following list:

flos, flōr is, m.,	<i>flower</i> .
mōs, mōr is, m.,	<i>custom</i> .
rōs, rōr is, m.,	<i>dew</i> .

**122. Exercise.** Write complete paradigms of **cōnsul**, *consul*; **imperātor**, *commander*; **mōs bonus**, *good custom*; and **noster frāter**, *our brother*.

**123. Nasal Stems.** These end in **m** or **n**.

There is only one noun whose stem ends in **m**. This is **hiem s**, *hiem is*, f., *winter* (sometimes spelled **hiemps**), in the nominative singular.

Most nouns whose stems end in **n** drop the **n** to form the nominative, adding no case-ending, as

STEM.	NOMINATIVE.
centuriōn-	centuriō, <i>centurion</i> .

Stems in **-in** change *i* to *ō* in the nominative, besides dropping the **n**, as **multitūdō**, *multitūdin is*, f., *multitude*. **virgō**, *virgin is*, f., *maiden*.

**124. Exercise.** Write a paradigm from the stem **homin-**, m. or f., *man*.

**125. Exercise.** 1. Caesar cōsul et imperātor fuerat. 2. Patrēs filiōs, mātērēs filiās laudant. 3. Rōrem in (on) flōribus vidēbant puellae. 4. Mōrēs Gallōrum nōn audīvimus (**audiō** means both *hear* and *hear of*). 5. Hieme multitudō hominum in oppidō est. 6. Centuriōnī pecūniam nōn dedimus. 7. Obsidēs ex oppidō vēnerant et pecūniam servō imperātōris dabant.<sup>1</sup> 8. Mātērēs nostrae nūntiōs mittēbant. 9. Patrēs nostrī nūntiīs pecūniam nōn dederant. 10. Centuriōnēs periculum viderant et castra in locō idōneō pōnēbant.

### LESSON XXIII.

#### THE FUTURE PERFECT TENSE. VERB REVIEW.

**126. Review Exercise.** 1. Do we find flowers in the winter? 2. They are seeking the safety of their fathers and mothers. 3. Did Caesar praise the customs of the Gauls? 4. Why is the consul's mother weeping? 5. The general frees a large number of men from slavery.

**127. The Future Perfect.** This tense represents action as completed AFTER the time of speaking. Thus,  
laudāv **eri** nt, *they will have praised.*

The tense is formed by adding the following terminations to the perfect stem :

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
1. -er ō	-erī mus
2. -eri s	-eri tis
3. -eri t	-eri nt

**128. Exercise.** Write a paradigm, with English meanings, of the future perfect of **sum**. Use *shall have* as the auxiliary in the first person ; *will have* in the second and third.

<sup>1</sup> **Dō** has **ā** instead of **ā** before the tense-sign in the imperfect and future (**dabam** and **dabō**, not **dābam** and **dābō**).

**129. Exercise.** 1. I shall have given. 2. They will have seen. 3. We shall have come. 4. You will have remained. 5. He will have moved.

**130. Exercise.** (Review §§ 60, 65, 69, 83, 85, 89, 94, 106-109, 114.)

1. We are good soldiers. 2. What were you preparing? 3. They had seized [their] father's kingdom. 4. You have not seen the leaders, boys. 5. The Roman cavalry will find the wearied Gauls. 6. The Gauls will have seen the danger and will leave the place. 7. They had seen the danger and were fortifying the camp. 8. They have seen the Romans and are seeking peace. 9. I am; I have been; I shall be; I shall have been; I was; I had been. 10. He has; they have had; you have seen; we had; we had had; we had been.



ROMAN SOLDIERS BUILDING RAMPART

## LESSON XXIV.

### PREPOSITIONS.

**131. Prepositions.** Though in Latin the case-endings frequently make the use of prepositions, such as *in*, *with*, *from*, *by*, etc., unnecessary, yet they are not dispensed with entirely.

**132. Prepositions with the Ablative.** Prepositions are found with only two cases in Latin, the accusative and the ablative.

The following prepositions always take the ablative:

$\bar{a}$ ,  $ab$ ,  $d\bar{e}$ ,  
 cum,  $ex$ ,  $\bar{e}$ ,  
 sine,  $pr\bar{o}$ ,  $prae$ .<sup>1</sup>

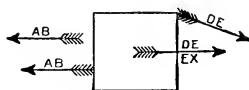
Before a vowel or  $h$ ,  $ab$  and not  $\bar{a}$ ,  $ex$  and not  $\bar{e}$ , must be used. Either form may be used before a consonant.

**133. The Latin for From.** *From* is expressed in Latin sometimes by the aid of a preposition, sometimes by the ablative alone. Thus,

*Dē locō discessit, He withdrew from the place;*  
 but *Nōs timōre liberābis, you will free us from fear.*

When the verb denotes actual *motion*, it regularly takes a preposition. For the use with other verbs, consult the Vocabulary. The Rule is given later (§ 315).

The difference in the use of  $ab$ ,  $d\bar{e}$ , and  $ex$ , all of which mean *from*, can be understood from the following diagram, with the aid of the Vocabulary:



**134. Manner.** *Cum*, *with*, besides expressing accompaniment (see § 53, *d*), may also indicate the MANNER in which an act is performed. Thus,

*Māgnā cum celeritātē veniam, I will come with great speed.*

*Cum* may be omitted with the ablative of manner when

<sup>1</sup> Also the prepositions *absque*, *without*, *cōram*, *in the presence of*, and *tenuis*, *up to*; which are not used in this book on account of their infrequent occurrence in the Latin at first read.

there is an adjective in agreement. Thus, in the sentence just given, *māgnā celeritāte* would also be good Latin.

**135. Exercise.** 1. Ambassadors are coming from the town. 2. You will not fight for the people without danger. 3. They have come about peace. 4. Soon the soldiers will withdraw from the walls. 5. We have come from the gates of Rome. 6. The general has come with a great number of soldiers. 7. The cavalry had remained in-front-of the camp. 8. The leaders are few in-comparison-with the people. 9. In winter we shall stay in the town without danger. 10. The hostages will have come from the province with great fear.

**136. Exercise.** 1. Prae numerō Gallōrum paucī sumus. 2. Nōn sine periculō ante portās oppidī manēbimus. 3. Cum salūte legiō in castrīs mānsit. 4. Cum multitudine hominum dē locō discesserunt. 5. Multitudine mīlitum imperātor oppidum oppugnābit.

**137. RULE XIII.** *Manner is expressed by the ablative of a noun with the preposition cum, or by the ablative of a noun and an adjective with or without cum.*

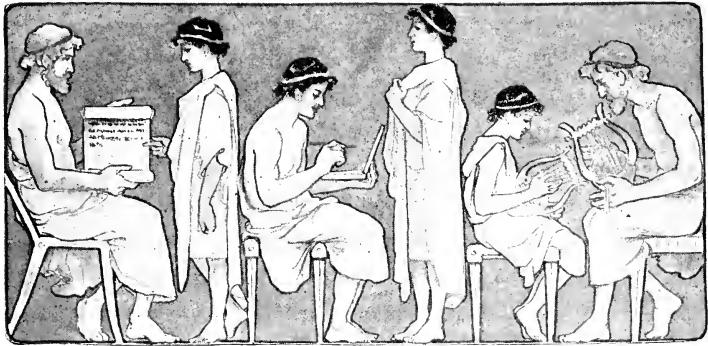
## LESSON XXV.

### READING LESSON: LŪDUS GRAECŌRUM.

In multīs oppidīs Graeciae et Ītaliae lūdī erant. Lūdus columnīs marmoreīs ōrnātus est. Statua Minervae lūdum

ornat. Nam Minerva dea sapientiae est. Magister, vir doctus, discipulō verba Homēri recitat. Homērus pūgnās virōrum clārōrum praedicat. Discipulus verba magistrī iterat. Liber magistrī doctī pulcher est. Nam litterae pulchrae librum ornant.

Magister puerō litterās Graecās et numerōs Graecōs mōnstrat. Tum puer attentus notās stīlo in cērā tābulae notat. Magister et discipulus verba Homēri cantant. Sinistrā lyram tenent, dextrā pulsant. Pulchra Homēri



IN A GREEK SCHOOL

verba virum et puerum dēlectant. Homērus clāra Graecōrum proelia praedicat, cōstantiam virōrum bellicōsōrum, patientiam equōrum rōbustōrum laudat.

Magistrī discipulōs strēnuos et attentōs coronīs pulchrīs ornant. Virī in viā puerum laudant. Puer laetus praemium pulchrum cōservat. Pigritia discipulōrum magistrīs sevērīs invīsa est. Saepe verbīs puerōs pigrōs vituperant et plāgīs castīgant. Ignōminia plāgōrum filiīs virōrum liberōrum māgna est.

Capillī et oculī puerōrum Rōmānōrum nigrī sunt. Barbae magistrōrum longae et albae sunt. Puerī et virī

vestimentis longis ornati sunt. Pueri non diu in ludo sunt. In<sup>1</sup> ludum et ex ludo pueri cum servis commeant. Servi pueris tabulas, stilos, lyras portant.

## LESSON XXVI.

### PREPOSITIONS, CONTINUED.

**138. Review Exercise.** 1. Why are the tribunes hastening from the camp? 2. The men will fight for (**pro**) their sons and daughters. 3. The consul withdrew from the province with much money. 4. You will not be free without a war. 5. They had filled the fields with soldiers.

**139. In and Sub.** **In**, *in*, *on*, *at*, *into*, *to*, takes the ablative when the phrase tells WHERE something is, the accusative when it tells WHITHER something is GOING. Thus,  
Ablative. **In oppidō est, manet, etc., he is, stays, etc., in the town.**

Accusative. **In oppidum venit, he comes into the town.**

Similarly **sub**, *under*, takes the ablative when the phrase tells under what something is, the accusative when it tells under what something is GOING. Thus,

Ablative. **Pāstor sub arbore sedet, The shepherd sits under a tree.**

Accusative. **Fēlis sub mēnsam currit, The cat runs under the table.**

**140. Other Prepositions.** All prepositions other than those mentioned in Lesson XXV and § 139 take the accusative. The difference between **ad**, **in**, and **sub**, *to*, *towards*, with the accusative, is illustrated by the diagram on the next page.

<sup>1</sup> See foot-note to Lesson XX.





## LESSON XXVII.

## THE PASSIVE VOICE: PRESENT OF FOUR CONJUGATIONS.

**144. The Passive Voice.** A sentence such as

*The boy sees the soldier.* **Puer militem videt,**

may be changed so as to read

*The soldier is seen by the boy.* **Miles ā puerō vidētur.**

The two sentences state the same idea, but the FORM of the statement is changed. In the first sentence, the verb (**videt**) is said to be in the Active Voice; in the second, in the Passive Voice (**vidētur**). Notice the following points:

(a) **Militem**, the object of the active verb, has become **miles**, the subject of the passive.

(b) **Puer**, the subject of the active sentence, has become in the passive **ā puerō**.

(c) The verb has changed its form in both English and Latin.

**145. Person-endings of the Passive.** These are as follows:

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
1.	-r	-mur
2.	-ris, -re	-mini
3.	-tur	-ntur

**146. Present of Four Conjugations.** To form the present tense, the person-endings are added to the present stem as follows: with the exception that in the first person singular of all forms the termination **-r** is added to the complete first person singular active (as, active, **videō**; passive, **videor**). Compare carefully with § 65. Notice the stem-vowel in the second person singular of Declension III.

## Terminations of the Present Passive.

CONJ.	I.	II.	III.	IV.
	1. -or	-e or	-or	-i or
SING.	2. -ā ris, -ā re	-ē ris, -ē re	-e ris, -e re	-ī ris, -ī re
	3. -ā tur	-ē tur	-i tur	-ī tur
	1. -ā mur	-ē mur	-i mur	-ī mur
PLUR.	2. -ā minī	-ē minī	-i minī	-ī minī
	3. -a ntur	-e ntur	-u ntur	-iu ntur

**147. Exercise.** Write a paradigm of the present passive of *laudō*, *videō*, *pōnō*, and *audiō*, with English meanings of *laudō* according to the example in § 144.

**148. Ablative of Agent and Ablative of Means.** The Agent is the PERSON BY WHOM an act is performed; the means is the THING WITH WHICH the agent performs the act. Thus,

*The soldier is killed by a Gaul (agent) with a sword (means), Miles ā Gallō gladiō interficitur.*

The ablative of agent ALWAYS takes the preposition *ā* or *ab*, and is used only with passive verbs.

The ablative of means NEVER takes a preposition, and may be used with both active and passive verbs. Thus, the sentence just given, changed to the active, would read

*Gallus militem gladiō interficit, The Gaul kills the soldier with a sword.*

**149. Exercise.** Learn the Vocabulary.

1. The voice of the general is heard by the soldiers. 2. We are led to the fortifications by the guides. 3. By a few men I am called a friend<sup>1</sup> of Caesar. 4. Cicero, you are being<sup>2</sup> praised by the Roman people. 5. Dangers are not feared by our brothers.

<sup>1</sup> Nominative. See § 70. This construction occurs with passive verbs just as with *sum*. <sup>2</sup> See foot-note to § 61.

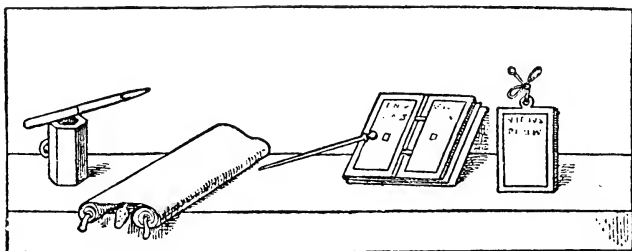
**150. Exercise.** 1. Amīcī Gallōrum ā mīlitibus appellāmur. 2. Ā duce ad imperātōrem cum salūte dūceris. 3. Pāx erōbrīs litterīs petitur. 4. Castra locō<sup>1</sup> idōneō pōnuntur. 5. Vōcēs mīlitum dēfessōrum ā lēgātō audiuntur. 6. Cūr prīncipēs appellāminī? 7. Semper ab equitibus laudor. 8. Oppida fossis et mūrīs mūniuntur.

**151. RULE XV.** *The agent after a passive verb is expressed by the ablative with ā or ab.*

### LESSON XXVIII.

#### THE PASSIVE VOICE: IMPERFECT AND FUTURE TENSES.

**152. Review Exercise.** 1. The plan is called good by the people. 2. You are led by guides out of the town into the camp. 3. The Roman soldiers are being led towards the fortifications. 4. Peace is sought by the lieutenant's brother. 5. Letters are being written by the beautiful girls to their brothers (use *ad*; the dative is less common with *scrībō*).



ROMAN WRITING MATERIALS

**153. Imperfect Passive.** This tense is formed by adding the regular person-endings of the passive to the

<sup>1</sup> With *locus*, the preposition *in* is often omitted.

tense-sign **-ba-**, the whole being added to the present stem as in § 83. Thus,

*laudā ba ntur, they were being praised, or they were praised.*

**154. Exercise.** Write paradigms of the imperfect passive of **exspectō**, *await*; **perterreō**, *alarm*; **cōstituō**, *station*; **impediō**, *hinder*; with English meanings of **exspectō** only, according to the example in § 153.

**155. Future Passive.** This tense is formed by adding the regular person-endings of the passive to the same tense-signs as for the future active, except that the second person singular of the first and second conjugations ends in **-be ris (-be re)**. Thus,

*amā be ris or amā be re, you will be loved.*

*monē be ris or monē be re, you will be advised.*

**156. Exercise.** By the aid of § 89 write paradigms of the future passive of the same verbs as in § 154, with English meanings of **cōstituō**, according to the example in § 155.

**157. Exercise.** Learn the Vocabulary.

1. The arms were awaited by the legions. 2. The soldiers will be hindered by their arms. 3. The aid of a large number of cavalry will be awaited. 4. The cavalry were being stationed in-front-of the camp. 5. The minds of the Romans were terrified by the forces of the Gauls. 6. Aid will be sent to the soldiers by Caesar. 7. We shall not be alarmed by the words of the commons. 8. Was the fortification of the camp hindered by the winter? 9. We shall be stationed before the gate. 10. The centurion's father will not be praised by the people.

## LESSON XXIX.

THE THIRD DECLENSION: NEUTER NOUNS;  
CONSONANT STEMS.

**158. Review Exercise.** 1. The guide will be awaited by the consul's brother. 2. We shall be stationed in front of the rampart without our arms. 3. I was alarmed and withdrew. 4. Why were you not hindered by the multitude of the men? 5. Were you not awaited by the general?

**159. Declension of Neuters: General Rule.** In all neuter nouns, of whatever declension, (*a*) the accusative and vocative are always the same as the nominative in both singular and plural; and (*b*) the nominative plural (and consequently the accusative and vocative plural) always ends in **-a**.

**160. Neuters of the Third Declension.** Neuter nouns of the third declension have for the nominative singular the simple stem, no case-ending being added. The genitive, dative, and ablative have the same endings as other nouns of this declension.

The stem, however, is sometimes altered in some other way than by the addition of a termination. Thus,

Stems in **-in** have nominative in **-en**, as

*flūmen*, gen. *flūmin* is, *river*.

Stems in **-er** and **-or** generally have the nominative in **-us**, as

*opus*, gen. *oper* is, *work*.

*corpus*, gen. *corpor* is, *body*.

The stem **capit-** has nominative **caput**, *head*.

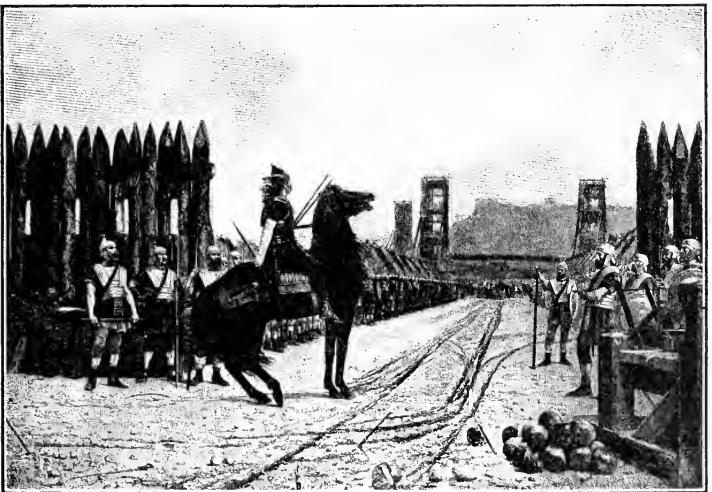
**161. Exercise.** Write paradigms of the nouns given in the preceding section, according to the rules stated in §§ 159 and 160.

**162. Exercise.** 1. Flūmina alta ā dēfessīs obsidibus vidēbantur. 2. Militēs dēfessī ab opere mūnitiōnis discēdēbant. 3. Et corpora et capita Gallōrum māgna erant. 4. Militēs Rŏmānī in lātō et altō flūmine armīs impediēbantur. 5. Māgnīs corporibus Gallōrum perterrēbāmur. 6. Nōmina lēgātōrum Gāius et Brūtus erant. 7. Āgmen in agrōs Gallōrum dūcēbant. 8. Sceleribus hominum perterrēmur. 9. Litterae sine nōmine erant. 10. In lateribus castrōrum sunt flūmina lāta.

### LESSON XXX.

#### READING LESSON: CASTRA RŌMĀNA.

Germānī imperiō Rŏmānō finitimī erant. Rŏmānī saepe cum Germānīs in rīpīs Rhēnī et Dānuvī pūgnābant. Cōpiae māgnae Germānōrum bellicōsōrum saepe Rhēnum

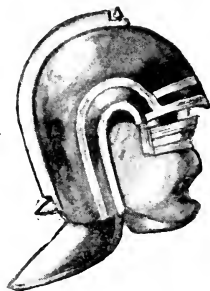
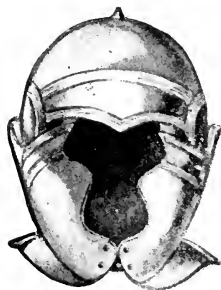


GALLIC CHIEF IN A ROMAN CAMP

fluvium superābant. Itaque Rōmānī cōpiīs validīs rīpam Rhēnī sinistram firmābant. Cōpiae Rōmānae castrīs mūnītīs tūtāe erant. Galeae, lōricae, scūta, hastae, gladii, arma Rōmānōrum erant.

Castra Rōmānā mūrō, fossā, vāllō, mūnīta erant. Cōpiae Rōmānae in tentōriīs albīs habitābant. Ex mūrō castrōrum virī in agrō per quattuor portās comēbant. Portae viīs lātīs coniūctae erant. Multitūdō armātōrum Rōmānōrum in castrīs erat. Etiam auxilia populōrum superātōrum in castrīs Rōmānīs erant. Cōpiae Germānōrum saepe ex agrīs et ex latebris silvārum castrīs mūnītīs appropinquābant. Oppūgnābant vāllum et fossam castrōrum.

Rōmānī saepe in rīpā Rhēnī sinistrā Rōmānōs superābant. Tandem Germānī castra Rōmānōrum firma expūgnāvērunt. Sed in locō castrōrum dēlētōrum incolae agrōrum finitimōrum aedificia aedificāvērunt. Multa oppida rīpae Rhēnī sinistrae ōlim castra Rōmāna fuerunt. In viā Colōniae, oppidī clārī, ruīnae mūrī et porta castrōrum antīquōrum cōservāta sunt.



ANCIENT HELMETS



## LESSON XXXI.

THE THIRD DECLENSION: *I*-STEMS.

**163. Review Exercise.** 1. The fortification of a Roman camp was a great work. 2. I have written the names of the leaders in the letter. 3. The sides of the altar were broad. 3. On the side of the altar was found the name of a goddess. 5. The goddess' head was beautiful.

**164. Third Declension: *i*-stems.** Learn the following

## Paradigm.

*hostis*, m., *enemy* (stem *hosti*-).

N. V.	<i>hosti</i> s	<i>host</i> ēs
G.	<i>host</i> is	<i>hosti</i> um
D.	<i>host</i> ī	<i>host</i> ibus
Acc.	<i>host</i> em	<i>host</i> ēs or <i>hosti</i> s
Abl.	<i>host</i> e	<i>host</i> ibus

From the above it is seen that in nouns of this class the whole of the stem appears only in the nominative singular, the genitive plural, and (sometimes) in the accusative plural, the final *-i-* being dropped in all other forms. In the accusative form in *-īs*, notice the quantity of the *ī* as compared with the same termination in the nominative or genitive.

*I*-stems include nearly all nouns which do not "increase" in the genitive (that is, which have the same number of syllables in both genitive and nominative singular). Exceptions are *pater*, *māter*, *frāter*, *iuvenis* and *senex*—*father*, *mother*, *brother*, *young man* and *old man*.

The nominative singular of some *i*-stems ends in **-ēs**, as in  
*caedēs*, gen. *caedis*, *slaughter*.

The accusative singular sometimes ends in **-im** and the ablative singular in **-ī**. *Turris*, *tower*, has both forms of each. Thus,

Acc.	<b>turrim</b> or <b>turrem</b> .
Abl.	<b>turrī</b> or <b>turre</b> .

**165. Exercise.** Write a paradigm of *finis*, *m.*, *end*, *boundary* (stem *fīni-*).

**166. Exercise.** Learn the Vocabulary.

1. The remaining forces of the enemy <sup>1</sup> will be seen by the general's slave. 2. The soldier will be stationed in the first rank. 3. You will not be alarmed by the great bodies of the enemy. 4. The territories of the *Helvētīi* were narrow. 5. The arms of the enemy will be lost in the river. 6. The slaughter in (= of) the battle will be great. 7. I shall not be alarmed by the great towers of the Romans. 8. They will place the tower in-front-of the walls of the little town.

**167. Exercise.** 1. *Turrēs* hostium ab hominibus in oppidō videntur. 2. Mox pācem ab imperātōre Rōmānō petent lēgātī. 3. Tum mīlitēs ad mūrōs venient et turrim ante mūnitiōnēs collocābunt. 4. Proeliō māgnō cum māgnā caede oppidum expūgnābunt. 5. Cōpia Gallōrum Rōmānōs ā fīnibus nōn prohibēbunt. 6. Nōn sine periculō lēgātī ex oppidō vērunt.

---

<sup>1</sup> Plural in Latin.

## LESSON XXXII.

## THE PASSIVE VOICE: PERFECT TENSE.

**168. Perfect Passive.** This tense is formed by combining the present tense of **sum** with the perfect passive participle of the verb whose perfect we are forming. Thus, the perfect passive participle of **laudō** is

**laudā tus, -a, -um, *having been praised* ;**

and the perfect passive is inflected:

- SING. 1. **laudātus sum, *I have been praised, or I was praised.***  
 2. **laudātus es, *you (sing.) have been praised, etc.***  
 3. **laudātus est, *he has been praised, etc.***

- PLUR. 1. **laudātī sumus, *we have been praised, etc.***  
 2. **laudātī estis, *you (plur.) have been praised, etc.***  
 3. **laudātī sunt, *they have been praised, etc.***

Notice that the participle agrees with the subject like an adjective. Thus,

*The girls have been (were) praised*

would be **Puellae laudatae sunt.**

**169. Formation of the Perfect Passive Participle.** This is declined like an adjective of the first and second declension. Its base is regularly formed by adding **-t** to the PRESENT stem of the verb. Thus,

	PRESENT STEM.	BASE.	PARTICIPLE.
CONJ. I.	<b>laudā-</b>	<b>laudāt-</b>	<b>laudātus, -a, -um</b>
CONJ. IV.	<b>audī-</b>	<b>audīt-</b>	<b>audītus, -a, -um</b>

In the second conjugation, the stem-vowel is changed to **-i**, as in

**habītus** (from **habeō**),

except in the case of the verbs mentioned in § 108, as in  
*dēlētus* (from *dēleō*).

In the third conjugation, the stem-vowel is generally dropped, as in

*rēctus* (from *regō*).

**170. The Principal Parts.** The use of the last of the principal parts will now be clear. By cutting off the final *-um* we obtain the base of the perfect passive participle. This base is called the Supine Stem, and the part from which it is obtained is called the Supine. The use of the supine will be explained later, as well as that of the second of the principal parts—the present infinitive active. Review §§ 41 and 107.

Every form of the verb is made from some one of the three stems which appear in the principal parts—the present stem, the perfect stem, and the supine stem.

**171. Exercise.** Without referring to the Vocabulary, name the principal parts of the following verbs, the stems of which are given:

PRESENT STEM.	PERFECT STEM.	SUPINE STEM.
da- <sup>1</sup>	ded-	dat-
dēbē- <sup>2</sup>	dēbu-	dēbit-
gere-	gess-	gest-
audī- <sup>2</sup>	audīv-	audīt-
relinque-	reliqu-	relict-
manē- <sup>2</sup>	māns-	māns-
mitte-	mīs-	miss-
pōne-	posu-	posit-
venī- <sup>2</sup>	vēn-	vent-
contende-	contend-	content-
vidē- <sup>2</sup>	vid-	vīs-

<sup>1</sup> -a- short in present stem of *dō*.

<sup>2</sup> Review § 12, b.

**172. Exercise.** Write the stems of the following verbs, the principal parts of which are given :

moveō, movēre, movī, mōtum.

discēdō, discēdere, discessī, discessum.

vāstō, vāstāre, vāstāvī, vāstātum.

dūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductum.

appellō, appellāre, appellāvī, appellātum.

perterreō, perterrēre, perterruī, perterritum.

cōstituō, cōstituere, cōstituī, cōstitutum.

impediō, impedīre, impedīvī, impedītum.

petō, petere, petīvī, petītum.

scrībō, scrībēre, scrīpsī, scrīptum.

**173. Exercise.** Write paradigms of the perfect passive of the verbs mentioned in § 154.

**174. Exercise.** 1. Auxilium Gallīs ab amīcīs datum est. 2. Castra locō idōneō posita sunt. 3. Puellae appellātae sunt pulchrae ā puerīs. 4. In oppidō relictī sumus. 5. In castra missus es. 6. Ā mīlitibus audītī nōn estis.

## LESSON XXXIII.

### THE PASSIVE VOICE: PLUPERFECT AND FUTURE PERFECT. GENERAL REVIEW OF VERBS.

**175. Review Exercise.** Make a table giving the endings of the present infinitive and the supine for the four conjugations. See § 170.

**176. Pluperfect Passive.** This tense is formed by adding the imperfect tense of *sum* to the perfect passive participle. Thus,

*laudātī erant, they had been praised.*

**177. Future Perfect Passive.** This tense is formed by adding the future tense of **sum** to the perfect passive participle. Thus,

**impediti erimus, we shall have been hindered.**

**178. Exercise.** Write paradigms of the pluperfect passive of **moneō** and **mūniō** and the future perfect passive of **laudō** and **dūcō**, with English meanings of **moneō** and **dūcō** according to the examples in §§ 176 and 177.



SOLDIERS ON THE MARCH

**179. Exercise.** Learn the Vocabulary.

1. The legion will have been led-across.
2. The enemy's flight had been seen.
3. The fear of the slaves will have been noticed.
4. The camp will have been surrounded.
5. You have not been seen by the few defenders.
6. I had not noticed the flight of the defenders of the camp.
7. The camp was filled with defenders.
8. They were defending the place.
9. We had chosen a suitable place.
10. The defenders will despair of safety.

## LESSON XXXIV.

THE THIRD CONJUGATION: VERBS IN *-IO*. THE THIRD DECLENSION: MIXED *I*-STEMS.

**180. Review Exercise.** 1. The enemy had been surrounded by the Romans. 2. The defenders of the walls will have been chosen. 3. Safety was sought in flight. 4. The troops had been led-across the river (acc.). 5. The enemy's high tower is being filled with men.

**181. Verbs in *-iō*.** Verbs in *-iō* differ from other verbs of the third conjugation only in the present, imperfect, and future. These tenses are spelled exactly like the same tenses in verbs of the fourth conjugation, with the following exceptions:

(a) The *i* of the stem is never lengthened: *capitis*, not *capītis*.

(b) The second person singular of the present indicative passive ends in *-eris* or *-ere*: *caperis* or *capere*, not *capiris*, etc.

(c) The present infinitive ends in *-ere*: *capere*, not *capire*.

**182. Exercise.** Write paradigms of the present of *capiō*, *take*; the imperfect of *faciō*, *make, do*; the future of *iaciō*, *throw*. *Capiō* and *iaciō* should be given in both active and passive; *faciō* does not occur in the passive in the tenses given.

**183. Exercise.** 1. *Faciam, faciō, faciēbam*. 2. *Caperis, capiēris, capitur*. 3. *Iaciunt, iacient, iaciet*. 4. *Iacitur, iaciētur, iacientur, iaciuntur*. 5. *Capiar, iaciēbar, iacis*.

**184. Mixed *i*-stems.** Some nouns of the third declension, although they increase in the genitive (see § 164),

have the genitive plural in **-ium**, and the accusative plural in **-ēs** or **-īs**. Such are, especially—

(a) monosyllabic bases ending in two consonants, as

**urb-**, nom. **urbs**, gen. plur. **urbi um**, f., *city* ;  
**noct-**, nom. **nox**, gen. plur. **nocti um**, f., *night*.

(b) nouns with nominatives in **-ns** and **-rs**, as  
**cohors**, gen. plur. **cohorti um**, f., *cohort* ;  
**cliēns**, gen. plur. **clienti um**, m., *client*.

**185. Exercise.** 1. Missiles are thrown from the walls of the cities. 2. In four nights we shall be in the city. 3. By the help of the cohorts the men will be captured. 4. The javelins will be thrown in (into) the direction of the wall. 5. We shall make peace with (**cum**) part of the Gauls.

## LESSON XXXV.

### READING LESSON: GERMĀNĪ ANTĪQUĪ.

Germānia antīquīs temporibus nōn dīvitīs,<sup>1</sup> sed multitudine<sup>1</sup> virōrum fortium nōbilis erat. Silvae inviae omnium generum bēstiārum ferārum plēnae erant. Agrī nōn fertīlēs, maria tempestātibus<sup>1</sup> saevīs horribilia erant. Caelum saepe nūbibus<sup>1</sup> trīste erat ; aestās erat brevis, hiems longa et dūra. Mōrēs Germānōrum mōribus<sup>2</sup> Rōmānōrum simīlēs nōn erant. Germānī fortēs nōn in urbibus mūnītis, sed in vicīs aut in aedificiīs singulīs habitābant. Neque literīs neque artibus dēlectābantur, sed per omne vītae tempus vēnātiōnibus et bellīs occupātī erant.

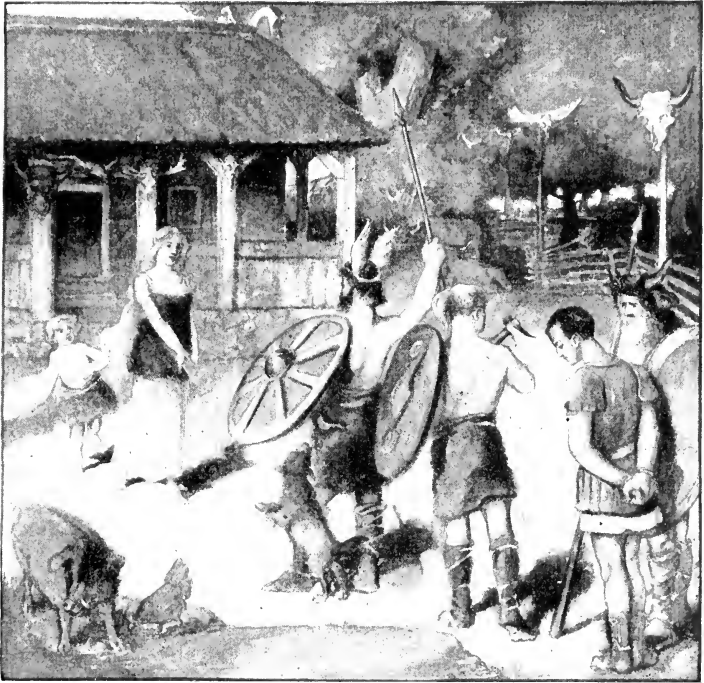
Animus ācer Germānōrum pācem diūtūrnū placidam-

<sup>1</sup> The ablative expressing a cause is translated by *from, with, because of, on account of*, or a similar expression.

<sup>2</sup> After words meaning *like* the dative is used.



que nōn tolerābat. Discordia āeris et studium ācre glōriæ multōrum bellōrum āerium causæ erant. Ante bella omnēs virī convocābantur; ducem commūnem cōpiārum pedestriū et equestriū creābant. Saepe populī māgnī ex agrīs sterilibus Germāniæ ēmigrābant; incolās agrō-



ANCIENT GERMANIS

rum fertiliū fugābant sēdēsque novās occupābant. Etiam Cimbrī et Teutonī ōlim propter sterilitātem agrōrum in Ītaliā migrāvērunt. Proeliīs āeribus cōpiās Rōmānōrum superāvērunt. Sed tum Marius, imperātor fortis Rōmānōrum, cōpiās novās comparāvit, et Germānī clādibus gravibus superātī sunt.

## LESSON XXXVI.

THE THIRD DECLENSION: NEUTERS; *I*-STEMS. ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.

**186. Neuters: *i*-stems.** The nominative ends in **-e**, **-al**, or **-ar**, the final **-i-** of the stem being either changed to **-e**, as in

**mare**, stem **mari-**, *sea*,

or dropped, as in

**animal**, stem **animāli-**, *animal*,

and

**calcar**, stem **calcāri-**, *spur*.

Such nouns have ablative singular in **-ī**, nominative and accusative plural in **-ia**, and genitive plural in **-ium**.

**187. Exercise.** Write complete paradigms of the nouns given in § 186, with English meanings of **calcar**. The genitive plural of **mare** is **marum**, by an exception; other neuters in **-e** have **-ium**, according to the rule. Review §§ 158, 159, 164.

**188. Adjectives of the Third Declension.** These are of three kinds:

(1) Adjectives whose nominative singular masculine ends in **-er** have THREE terminations in the nominative singular, as

M.      F.      N.

·    **ācer**, **ācr** is, **ācr** e, *keen*.

(2) Adjectives in **-is** have two terminations, as

M. & F.      N.

·    **forti** s, **fort** e, *brave*.

(3) All others have ONE termination, as

M. F. N.

·    **audāx**, gen. **audāc** is, *bold*.

·    **ingēns**, gen. **ingent** is, *huge*.

Adjectives of two and three terminations regularly have the ablative singular in **-ī**.

Adjectives of one termination have the ablative singular in either *-ī* or *-e*.

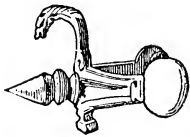
All of these adjectives are declined as *i*-stems in the plural. See §§ 164 and 186.

**189. Declension of *Celer*.** Adjectives of three terminations are declined like *ācer*, dropping the *e* except in the nominative singular masculine. But *celer*, *swift*, retains the *e* throughout. Thus,

*celer, celeris, celere, etc.*

The genitive plural of *celer* is *celerum*.

**190. Exercise.** Write complete paradigms of the adjectives given in §§ 188, 189.

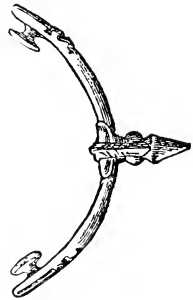


ROMAN SPUR

**191. Exercise.** Supply terminations to the adjectives and translate, first learning the Vocabulary.

1. *Calcāria sunt ācer.* 2. *Omn- Gallī proelium equestr- vīdērunt.* 3. *Multa et <sup>1</sup> ingent- animālia sunt in marī.* 4. *Cli- entēs prīncipis potent- nōn fuērunt fort.* 5. *Omn- lit- terae ā nūntiō celer- mittentur.* 6. *Au- dāc- lēgātus Rōmānus cohortem ad mūrōs ducēbat.*

**192. Exercise.** 1. The bodies of the animals were huge. 2. The equestrian order was powerful. 3. We have seen the bold general's long spurs. 4. The feet of the messengers are swift. 5. The rest-of the night seemed (passive of *videō*) long to the bold leader.



ROMAN SPUR

<sup>1</sup> Omit in translating.

## LESSON XXXVII.

## COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

**193. Degrees of Comparison.** Adjectives in their simplest form are said to be in the Positive Degree, as *lātus*, *broad*, *fēlix*, *fortunate*.

Adjectives whose form denotes the possession of the quality in a higher degree are said to be in the Comparative Degree, as *lātior*, *broader*, *fēlicior*, *more fortunate*.

Adjectives whose form denotes the possession of the quality in the highest degree are said to be in the Superlative Degree, as *lātissimus*, *broadest*, *fēlicissimus*, *most fortunate*.

**194. Formation of the Comparative.** The stem of the comparative is formed by adding *-ior-* to the base of the positive, as found by dropping the termination of the genitive singular. The comparative is declined according to the rules for liquid stems (§ 119), with the following exceptions :

(a) The neuter nominative and accusative singular end in *-ius*.

(b) The ablative singular ends in *-e* or *-ī*.

(c) The accusative plural ends in *-ēs* or *-īs*.

(d) The genitive plural has *-um*, not *-ium*.

(e) The nominative and accusative plural neuter have *-a*, not *-ia*.

**195. Exercise.** Write a paradigm of the comparative degree of *ācer*, *keen*.

**196. Formation of the Superlative.** This is regularly formed by adding *-issimus*, *-a*, *-um*, to the base. The superlative is inflected as a regular adjective of the first and second declensions.

The superlative is sometimes translated by *very*. Thus,  
**longissimus**, *longest* or *very long*.

**197. Nominatives in -er.** These form their comparative regularly, but the superlative is formed by adding **-rimus, -a, -um**, directly to the nominative singular masculine. Thus,

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
<b>pulcher, -chra, -chrom</b>	<b>pulchrior, -ius</b>	<b>pulcherrimus, -a, -um</b>

**198. Exercise.** Compare (that is, give the nominative singular masculine of positive, comparative, and superlative) the adjectives meaning *high; free; bold; swift; brave; huge; powerful*.

**199. How to Express *Than*.** This may be done in two ways:

(a) The word **quam**, *than*, is used; the second of the nouns compared being usually in the same case as the first. Thus,

*Caesar was braver than Pompey,*  
**Caesar fortior erat quam Pompēius.**

(b) When the first of the contrasted words is in the nominative or accusative case, **quam** may be omitted, and the second word put in the ablative. The above sentence would then read

**Caesar fortior erat Pompēiō.**

The ablative so used is called the Ablative of Comparison.

**200. Exercise.** Learn the Vocabulary. Use both the methods described in § 199 whenever possible.

1. The time is short—shorter—very short. 2. We shall inform Caesar (make Caesar more certain) of (**dē**) the battle. 3. Trusty men have informed the Gauls about all the danger. 4. In the summer they had come into a more unfavorable place. 5. The Romans were not bolder

than the boldest Gauls. 6. Seas are deeper than the deepest rivers. 7. Not all boys are braver than girls. 8. The javelin was heavier than the heaviest sword. 9. The general's horse was higher than the lieutenant's. 10. The longest swords are shorter than the shortest javelins. 11. The Romans' ships were longer than the Gauls'. 12. The garrison will withdraw in the shortest time. 13. We shall give the reward to the braver soldier. 14. The citizens fought with shorter swords. 15. The winter was very severe.

**201. RULE XVI.** *The comparative without **quam** is followed by the ablative.*



ROMAN SWORD

## LESSON XXXVIII.

### ADJECTIVES: IRREGULAR COMPARISON.

**202. Review Exercise.** 1. Winter is the severest season (time) of the year. 2. Horses are very swift animals. 3. The nights are longer in winter than in summer. 4. In summer the nights are very short. 5. The towers will be higher than the walls.

**203. Adjectives in *-lis*.** Six adjectives in *-lis* form their superlative by adding *-limus* to the base of the positive. Thus,

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.	
facilis, -e,	facilior, -ius,	facillimus, -a, -um,	<i>easy.</i>
difficilis, -e,			<i>difficult.</i>
similis, -e,			<i>like.</i>
dissimilis, -e,			<i>unlike.</i>
gracilis, -e,			<i>slender.</i>
humilis, -e,			<i>low.</i>

**204. Exercise.** Form the comparative and superlative of the last five adjectives in the above list, and memorize the list.

**205. Irregular Comparison.** Memorize the following list of adjectives irregularly compared :

bonus, <i>good</i> ,	melior, -ius, <i>better</i> ,	optimus, <i>best</i> .
malus, <i>bad</i> ,	pēior, -ius, <i>worse</i> ,	pessimus, <i>worst</i> .
māgnus, <i>great</i> ,	māior, -ius, <i>greater</i> ,	māximus, <i>greatest</i> .
parvus, <i>small</i> ,	minor, -us, <i>less</i> ,	minimus, <i>least</i> .
multus, <i>much</i> ,	(No m. or f.)plūs, <i>more</i> ,	plūrimus, <i>most</i> .

**206. Declension of Plūs.** (No m. or f.) *Plūs* is declined as follows :

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
N.		M. AND F.	N.
plūs		plūrēs	plūra
plūris		plūrium	
(wanting)		plūribus	
plūs		plūrēs (is)	plūra
plūre (rare)		plūribus	

How does this differ from other comparatives in the inflection of the plural? See § 194.

**207. Cases with Plūs.** In the singular, *plūs* is a neuter noun, and is followed by the genitive. Thus,

*plūs frūmentī*, *more grain*, (literally, *more of grain*).

In the plural, it agrees like other adjectives with the word which it modifies. Thus,

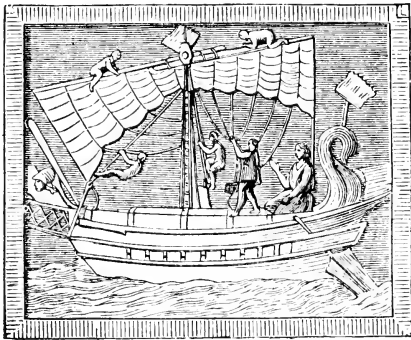
*Plūrēs fēminae quam virī sunt in oppidō*, *There are more women than men in the town*.

**208. Exercise.** 1. More grain; of more grain; with more grain. 2. More men; of more men; with more men. 3. Much time; more time; most time. 4. Many

ships ; more ships ; very many ships. 5. A greater work ; the greatest work ; a great work.

**209. Exercise.** Decline together the Latin words for the following.

1. Easiest work. 2. Better advice. 3. Our ancestors. 4. Older son. 5. Best plan. 6. Smaller thing. 7. Larger ship. 8. Youngest sister. 9. Better horse. 10. Worse garrison



ROMAN SHIP

### LESSON XXXIX.

ADJECTIVES: IRREGULAR COMPARISON, CONTINUED.

**210. Review Exercise.** 1. The greater part of the defenders had left the town. 2. We had more time than our brothers. 3. The enemy have the most horses. 4. We have the best fortifications. 5. The boys are very like [their] father (dative).

**211. Defective Comparison.** Some adjectives lack the positive. Memorize the following list.



**prior**, *former*, **p̄rimus**, *first*.

**propior**, *nearer*, **proximus**, *nearest*, *next*.

**ūterior**, *farther*, **ūltimus**, *farthest*.

The positives of the following are rare as adjectives. They are frequently used in the plural, as nouns.

(**exterus**, *outward*,) **exterior**, *outer*, **extrēmus** } *outmost*.  
(**extimus**) }

(**īferus**, *below*,) **īferior**,<sup>1</sup> *lower*, **īfimus** } *lowest*.  
(**īmus**) }

(**posterus**, *following*,) **posterior**, *latter*, **postrēmus** } *last*.  
(**postumus**) }

(**superus**, *above*,) **superior**, *higher*, **suprēmus** } *highest*.  
and **summus** }

**212. Adjectives Denoting a Part.** Certain adjectives regularly denote some particular PART of the object they describe. These are, among others, those meaning

*top of*, **summus**;  
*bottom of*, **īfimus**;  
*middle of*, **medius**;  
*end of*, **extrēmus**;  
*rest of*, **reliquus**.

Thus,

**In summō monte**, *at the top-of the mountain*.

**Īnfimae vallēs**, *the bottoms-of the valleys*.

**Mediā aestāte**, *in mid-summer*.

**Ad extrēmās fossās**, *near the ends-of the ditches*.

**Cum reliquīs cōpiīs**, *with the rest-of the forces*.

Notice that we should naturally expect the noun in each of the above instances to be in the genitive.

<sup>1</sup> **Īferior** means lower in position, **humilior**, lower in stature.

**213. Exercise.** 1. In mediā urbe āra m̄axima erat. 2. Extrēmā hieme castra m̄ovimus. 3. Cōpiae dē locīs superiōribus in locum īferiorem discēdunt. 4. Reliqua legiō nocte priōre prō portis oppidī cōstitutā erat. 5. Lēgātus cum quattuor cohortibus in summō colle est.

**214. Exercise.** 1. On a former night; on the first night. 2. Caesar was then in farther Gaul. 3. The poet's last work was not [his] greatest. 4. The legions were stationed half way up (= in the middle of) the hill. 5. Half way up the nearest mountain the rest of the forces were seen

## LESSON XL.

### READING LESSON: TEMPLUM DELPHICUM.

Dēlus īnsula patria Apollinis et Diānae fuit, ibique clārū Apollinis templum aedificātum erat. Sed templum Dēlium honōre et splendōre templī Delphicī superābātur. Templum Delphicum nōn in campō, sed inter saxa alta situm erat. Ōlim dracō ferus cūstōs locī invīi fuerat. Ā dracōne pāstōrēs necātī, agrī agricolārum vāstātī erant. Sed Apollō perniciōsum locī custōdem sagittīs certīs necāverat et templum marmoreum aedificāverat. Laurea deō iūcunda erat, itaque prope templum multae laureae pulchrae erant. Templum Apollinis, silva sacra, colōrēs et odōrēs grātī flōrum variōrum saepe ā poētīs Graecīs praedicātī sunt.

Māgna hominum multītūdō ex multīs Graeciae cīvītātibus templum Apollinis frequentābat. Nam ā P̄ythiā, sacerdotē Apollinis, fortūna hominum et voluntās dīvīna prōnūntiābātur. Hominēs prīmum membra aquā sacrā



THE ORACLE OF DELPHI

ōrnābātur. Etiam rēgēs piī aliārum regiōnum locum sācrum dōnīs pretiōsīs ōrnābant.

lavābant et capillōs laureā ōrnābant. Tum templum intrābant; sed locum sācrum, ubi tripūs Pŷthiae erat, nōn intrābant. Vapōrēs terrae Pŷthiam furōre dīvinō incitābant. Ē tripodō sacrō sacerdōs verba obscūra cantābat. Tum sacerdotēs ōrāculōrum<sup>1</sup> perītī hominibus voluntātem Apollinis explicābant. Ab hominibus grātīs templum Delphicum imāginibus pulchrīs

## LESSON XLI.

COMPARISON BY THE AID OF ADVERBS. ABLATIVE OF THE DEGREE OF DIFFERENCE.

**215. Review Exercise.** 1. The former battles were very sharp. 2. Were they sharper than the cavalry battles? 3. The nearer cohorts had thrown [their] javelins at (in) the enemy. 4. Have you more sisters than brothers? 5. Last (**proximus**) night (case?) there was more dew on the flowers than the night before (**prior**).

<sup>1</sup> Genitive with the adjective **perītus**. Translate by **in**, as required by the English idiom.

**216. Comparison by *Magis* and *Māximē*.** Just as in English we say "more beautiful" and "most beautiful," and not "beautifuler" or "beautifullest," so in Latin certain adjectives are compared by the use of *magis*, *more*, and *māximē*, *most*. Thus,

*idōneus*, *suitable*; *magis idōneus*, *more suitable*;  
*māximē idōneus*, *most suitable*.

This is especially the case with adjectives ending in *-eus* or *ēius*.

**217. Comparison by *Minus* and *Minimē*.** In the same way possession of a quality in a *less* or in the *least* degree is expressed by the use of the adverbs *minus*, *less*, and *minimē*, *least*. Thus,

*minus difficilis*, *less difficult*; *minimē difficilis*, *least difficult*.

**218. Degree of Difference.** When objects are contrasted or compared, the amount of the difference is expressed by the Ablative. This is called the Ablative of Degree of Difference. Thus,

*Gaius is four years older than Lucius*, *Gāius quattuor annīs māior nātū quam Lūcius est*.

*Much* and *a little*, when used with comparatives and superlatives, are expressed by the neuter singular of the adjectives *multus* and *paulus*, in the ablative of degree of difference. Thus,

*Maria multō māiōra sunt flūminibus* (or *quam flūmina*), *Seas are much larger than rivers*.

*Puer paulō altior frātre* (or *quam frāter*) *est*, *The boy is a little taller than his brother*.

**219. Exercise.** 1. The enemy have lost a much greater number of horsemen than the Romans. 2. The top of the wall is a little lower than the enemy's tower. 3. A less

active consul will not defend the city. 4. We are-looking-for (*petō*) more grain. 5. The work of fortification is much the least difficult. 6. The wall is ten feet shorter than the ditch. 7. The ditch is five feet deeper than the wall. 8. *Gāius* is seven years older than *Lūcius*. 9. *Lūcius* is six years younger than *Galba*. 10. The mountains are many feet higher than the tops of the hills.

**220. RULE XVII.** *With comparatives the ablative is used to denote the degree of difference.*

## LESSON XLII.

### PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

**221. Review Exercise.** 1. The towers were a little nearer to the walls than to the camp. 2. The longer work is much less difficult. 3. We shall see the farthest town of the Gauls. 4. The troops had been stationed in a lower place. 5. They are the nearest to the territories of the enemy.

**222. Personal Pronouns.** Learn the following paradigms.

	First Personal Pronoun.		Second Personal Pronoun.	
	Ego, I.		Tū, thou, you.	
	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
Nom.	ego	nōs	tū	vōs
Gen.	meī	{ nostrī nostrum	tuī	{ vestrī vestrum
Dat.	mihi	nōbīs	tibi	vōbīs
Acc.	mē	nōs	tē	vōs
Abl.	mē	nōbīs	tē	vōbīs

**Third Personal Pronoun.****Is, ea, id, he, she, it, that.**

## SINGULAR.

	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	is	ea	id
Gen.	ēius	ēius	ēius
Dat.	eī	eī	eī
Acc.	eum	eam	id
Abl.	eō	eā	eō

## PLURAL.

	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	iī and eī	eae	ea
Gen.	eōrum	eārum	eōrum
Dat.	iīs and eīs	iīs and eīs	iīs and eīs
Acc.	eōs	eās	ea
Abl.	iīs and eīs	iīs and eīs	iīs and eīs

**Is, ea, id** is properly a demonstrative pronoun, having the meaning *that*, but it is also used as the personal pronoun of the third person.

**223. Nominative of Personal Pronouns.** In the nominative the personal pronouns are generally used only for emphasis. Thus,

*You are happy; we are unhappy, Vōs fēlicēs estis; nōs infēlicēs sumus.*

**224. Exercise.** Give all possible translations of each of the following forms:

- Mihi; tibi; eī.
- Nōbīs; vōbīs; iīs.
- Mē; tē; eō.
- Nōs; vōs; eās; eōs.
- Eā; id; nostrum.
- Meī; tuī; eīus.
- Eōrum; eārum; vestrum.
- Ego; tū; is; ea.
- Nostrī; vestrī; eum.
- Eam; iī; eae.

**225. Agreement of Pronouns.** Pronouns agree in gender and number with the nouns for which they stand. Thus,

*Nox appropinquat. Timēsne eam? The night is approaching. Do you fear it?*

If the pronoun is used as an adjective, it agrees also in case. Thus,

*Ea nox ultima erat hostibus. That night was the last for the enemy.*

**226. Exercise.** 1. That forest had been seen by them but not by us. 2. We have come from those hills, they from a region nearer the sea. 3. You have given us money, we will give you help. 4. Help will be given us by them. 5. That place is not very near them.

### LESSON XLIII.

#### DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

**227. Review Exercise.** 1. By you, friend, we shall be praised; but you will not be praised by us. 2. They have seen us and we have seen them. 3. I will defend you, citizens; you always have defended me. 4. By me our safety shall never be despaired-of. 5. We were alarmed by them, but they were much more (*magis*) alarmed by us.

**228. The Pronoun *Hic*.** *Hic* means *this*, and refers to something near or connected with the speaker. Learn the following paradigm:

	SINGULAR.		
	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	<i>hic</i>	<i>haec</i>	<i>hōc</i>
Gen.	<i>hūius</i>	<i>hūius</i>	<i>hūius</i>
Dat.	<i>huic</i>	<i>huic</i>	<i>huic</i>
Acc.	<i>hunc</i>	<i>hanc</i>	<i>hōc</i>
Abl.	<i>hōc</i>	<i>hāc</i>	<i>hōc</i>
	PLURAL.		
Nom.	<i>hī</i>	<i>hae</i>	<i>haec</i>
Gen.	<i>hōrum</i>	<i>hārum</i>	<i>hōrum</i>
Dat.	<i>hīs</i>	<i>hīs</i>	<i>hīs</i>
Acc.	<i>hōs</i>	<i>hās</i>	<i>haec</i>
Abl.	<i>hīs</i>	<i>hīs</i>	<i>hīs</i>

**229. Exercise.** Give all possible translations of the following forms, each of which occurs more than once in the preceding paradigm.

1. Hōc. 2. Hīs. 3. Haec. 4. Hūius. 5. Huīc. 6. Hōrum.

**230. Exercise.** Give the case, gender, number, and meaning of each of the following.

1. Hīc. 2. Hārum. 3. Hās. 4. Hanc. 5. Hōs. 6. Hae.  
7. Hunc. 8. Hāc. 9. Hī.

Do any of the above occur more than once?

**231. The Pronoun *Ille*.** *Ille* means *that*. *Is* also means *that*, but *ille* points out more emphatically. Learn the following paradigm :

	SINGULAR.		
	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	ille	illa	illud
Gen.	illius	illius	illius
Dat.	illī	illī	illī
Acc.	illum	illam	illud
Abl.	illō	illā	illō

The plural is declined like that of an adjective of the first and second declensions.

**232. Exercise.** Give all possible translations of each of the following forms.

1. Illā. 2. Illud. 3. Illius. 4. Illī. 5. Illō. 6. Illa.  
7. Illīs. 8. Illōrum. 9. Illae. 10. Illam.

**233. Special Uses.** *Hic* may mean *the latter*, and *ille* *the former*. When pronouns are used in complete agreement with nouns (§ 225), they are called Pronominal Adjectives. These usually precede the nouns with which they agree. *Ille* sometimes follows its noun, however, and then is generally to be translated *the well-known*, *the famous*, etc.



## LESSON XLIV.

## POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

**234. Possessive Pronouns.** The genitives of the personal pronouns **ego** and **tū** are not to be used to express possession. Instead, the following possessive pronouns are used. They agree in case, gender, and number with the thing possessed. Learn the list:

**meus, -a, -um, my, mine.**

**tuus, a, -um, your, yours** (when addressing one person).

**noster, -tra, -trum, our, ours.**

**vester, -tra, -trum, your, yours** (when addressing more than one person).

**suus, -a, -um, his, her, hers, its, their, theirs** (according to the subject of the sentence).

**235. Possessive of the Third Person.** **Suus** means *his* if the subject is singular masculine; *her* or *hers* if the subject is singular feminine; *their* if the subject is plural. Thus,

**Caesar suōs militēs ēdūxit, Caesar led out his soldiers.**

**Māter suum filium amat, The mother loves her son.**

**Galli urbem suam servāvērunt, The Gauls saved their city.**

If the possessive case in the third person does not denote THE SAME PERSON AS THE SUBJECT, **suus** is not to be used, but the genitive of **is, ea, id**, instead. Thus,

**Ēius militēs ēdūxī, I led out his soldiers.**

**Vidēsne eōrum timōrem? Do you see their fear?**

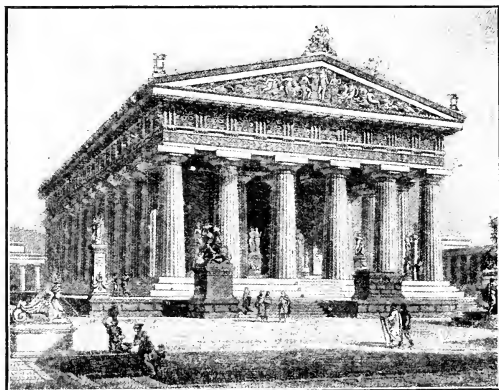
**Reus laetus est, nam praetor vītam ēius servābit, The defendant is glad, for the judge will save his life** (i.e. the defendant's life).

The possessive of the third person is generally omitted in Latin unless it is emphatic, or unless the meaning would not be clear without it.

**236. Exercise.** 1. We shall lead out our forces. 2. I have defended all my friends. 3. Have you led your cohort across the river, Gaius? 4. Soldiers, did you lose your swords? 5. The general has come; the lieutenant will receive part of his legion. 6. That general did not give part of his forces to Titus.

**237. Exercise.**

1. *Ēius militēs mox cōstiterint.* 2. *Amīcī vestrī Rōmam illam numquam vīdērunt.* 3. *In hīs regiōnibus silvās māximās invēnērunt.* 4. *Tua tibi, mea mihi pecūnia ab imperātōre nostrō dabitur.* 5. *Vestram urbem ā plūrimis perīculīs virtūte suā dēfendērunt.* 6. *Cicerō summus vir erat, sed frāter eius minus erat māgnus.* 7. *Cicerō frātrem suum apud populum laudāvit.* 8. *Cōpiae apud Rōmam, urbem suam, manēbunt.* 9. *In illō colle mediō cōpiae vestrae cōstiterant.* 10. *Illā nocte plūrimōs cīvīs interfēcērunt.*



AN ANCIENT TEMPLE



SUMMONING GERMANS TO BATTLE

**LESSON XLV.**

## READING LESSON: MŌRĒS GERMĀNŌRUM.

Sacerdōtēs perītāe et prūdētēs ante pūgnam voluntātem deōrum explicābant. Cōnsiliū sapiēns sacerdotum ā virīs numquam repudiābātur. In pūgnā Germānī hostībus nōn disciplīnā bellī terribilēs erant, sed māgnā hominum multitūdine, ingentī corporum māgnitūdine, clāmōre saevō, fortitūdine et audāciā. Animō fortī Germānī vulnera gravia et mortem tolerābant. Post pūgnam vīta victōrum fēlīx erat. Nam laus virōrum fortium et audācium sempiterna erat, et carminibus poētārum in convīviīs laetīs praedicābātur. Īnfēlīx autem vīta ignāvōrum erat. Nam ignāvī ab omnibus vitābantur et fugābantur. Itaque ignāvī saepe morte voluntāriā

animam efflābant. Captīvī autem ā victōribus ferīs mōre crudēlī<sup>1</sup> in ārīs deōrum immolābāntur.

Tacitus mōrēs dūriōrēs et simpliciōrēs Germānōrum cum mōribus ēlegantiōribus et molliōribus Rōmānōrum compārat. Vīta Germānōrum asperior erat quam Rōmānōrum. Caelum Germāniae trīstius, āer frīgidiōr erat; maria saeviōra, tempestātēs vehementiōrēs, silvae lātiōrēs et dēnsiōrēs erant. Aedificia agricolārum antiqūis temporibus nōn pulchriōra erant quam hodiē. Sed corpora Germānōrum vītā asperiōre et simpliciōre firmābantur; itaque rōbore<sup>1</sup> et magnitudine<sup>1</sup> corpora Rōmānōrum ēlegantiōrum superābant.



ANCIENT GERMANS

## LESSON XLVI.

### THE RELATIVE PRONOUN.

**238. The Relative Pronoun.** The commonest relative pronoun is **quī**, *who, which, that*. Learn the following paradigm.

<sup>1</sup> The ablative (translated by **in**) is used here to show in what respect the statement is true. This is called the Ablative of Specification.

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	quī	quae	quod	quī	quae	quae
Gen.	cūius	cūius	cūius	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
Dat.	cuī	cuī	cuī	quibus	quibus	quibus
Acc.	quem	quam	quod	quōs	quās	quae
Abl.	quō	quā	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

**239. Translation of the Relative.** Learn the following meanings of the various cases. Notice that in English there is no difference between the singular and the plural.

Nom.	<i>who, which, what, that.</i>
Gen.	<i>whose, of whom, of which, of what.</i>
Dat.	<i>to or for whom, which, what.</i>
Acc.	<i>whom, which, what, that.</i>
Abl.	<i>by, with, from, etc., whom, which, what, that.</i>

**240. Use of the Relative.** In such a sentence as

<b>Militēs</b>	<b>quōs laudāvit</b>	<b>fortēs erant,</b>
<i>The soldiers</i>	<i>whom he praised</i>	<i>were brave,</i>

there are two parts. There is first the statement, **Militēs fortēs erant**, *The soldiers were brave*; then there is the sentence **quōs laudāvit**, *whom he praised*, which DEFINES **militēs**. Such a sentence as this last, containing some form of the relative pronoun and used to modify or define a noun, is called a Relative Clause.

The noun which the relative clause modifies or defines is called the Antecedent of the relative.

The relative has the same gender, number, and person as its antecedent. Thus, both **militēs** and **quōs** are masculine gender, plural number, and third person.

The CASE of the relative, however, has nothing to do

with that of the antecedent. Thus, in the sentence just considered, **militēs** is nominative, subject of **erant**, but **quōs** is accusative, object of **laudāvit**. Since a pronoun, as its name implies, is a word used *for* a noun (generally to avoid the necessity of repeating the noun), its case is always the same as the case of that noun would be in the same position. Thus, by substituting the antecedent for the relative in the above sentence, we should have

**Militēs** (**militēs laudāvit**) **fortēs erant**, *The soldiers (he praised the soldiers) were brave*,

in which it is clear that the second **militēs** is the object of **laudāvit**.

**241. Exercise.** 1. We halted on a hill; the hill was very high. 2. We halted on a hill which was very high. 3. The hill on which we halted was high. 4. He has time; the time is short. 5. The time which he has is short. 6. You will see a chief; the chief's influence is great. 7. You will see a chief whose influence is great. 8. The influence of the chief whom you saw had been very great. 9. The man is a soldier; the general has given him money. 10. The man to whom the general has given money is a soldier. 11. We saw mountains which were higher than those which we had already seen. 12. The men to whom we gave money were not soldiers. 13. We saw men whose influence was much greater than yours. 14. The men whom we saw were greater than you. 15. The cities to which we came were smaller than those from which we had come.

**242. Translation of *That*.** *That* must be translated by some form of **quī** whenever *who* or *which* can be substituted for it without affecting the meaning. In the following Exercise be careful to apply this test.

**243. Exercise.** 1. That is an illustrious man. 2. The man that you saw is illustrious. 3. No one saw the signal that the prisoner gave. 4. That prisoner gave signals that no one saw. 5. Those were the forces that were returning to winter-quarters.

**244. RULE XVII.** *The relative agrees with its antecedent in gender and number, but its case depends on the construction of the clause in which it stands.*

## LESSON XLVII.

### INTERROGATIVE AND INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.

**245. The Interrogative *Quis*.** As in English, the same pronoun may be used both as a relative and as an interrogative. Thus,

Relative.           **Is, quem vīdistī, cōsul est,** *The man (literally he) whom you saw is the consul.*

Interrogative.   **Quem vīdistī?** *Whom did you see?*

In the singular, however, the interrogative pronoun has **quis** instead of **quī**, and **quid** instead of **quod**, unless it is used as an adjective—that is, unless it agrees with some noun. Thus,

Pronoun.       **Quis venit?** *Who is coming?*

Adjective.     **Quī vir venit?** *What man is coming?*

The interrogative PRONOUN has no separate form for the feminine; **quis**, **quem**, and **quō** being regarded as both masculine and feminine; but when used as an ADJECTIVE, the feminine forms are the same as in the relative; as in

*What city is the capital of Italy? Quae urbs caput est Italiae?*

**246. Exercise.** Write a paradigm of the interrogative pronoun **quis**, in the singular only. The plural is like that of **quī**.

**247. Exercise.** 1. What were you saying? 2. At (ad) what town did they arrive? 3. To whom had he owed the money? 4. By whose advice is he returning to the city? 5. What general is withdrawing from winter quarters? 6. Who gave the signal? 7. By whom was the signal given? 8. What man placed the standard on the top of the hill? 9. To whom was the money given? 10. What was the height of the mound which you were making?

**248. Aliquis. Quīdam. Quisque.** The pronoun **aliquis**, *some one, some*, is declined like **quis** (see § 245), except that in the singular feminine and in the neuter plural it has **aliqua** and not **aliquae**. When used as an adjective it has **aliquī** instead of **aliquis**, and **aliquid** instead of **aliquid**. Thus,

**Aliquod flūmen**, *Some river.*

**Aliquis appropinquat**, *Some one is approaching.*

**Quīdam**, *a certain, a certain one, some* (but more definite than **aliquis**), is declined like the relative **quī** with the suffix **-dam** added; but in the neuter singular it has both **quīdam** and **quoddam**, the former being substantive and the latter adjective. Also, **m** is changed to **n** before **d**, giving **quendam**, **quandam**, **quōrundam**, **quārundam**, instead of **quemdam**, etc.

**Quisque**, *each, each one, everyone*, is formed by adding the suffix **-que** to **quis**. It has adjective forms **quīque**, **quodque**, as well as the pronominal forms **quisque**, **quidque**. The feminine forms **quaeque**, etc., are used as adjectives only. Compare § 245.

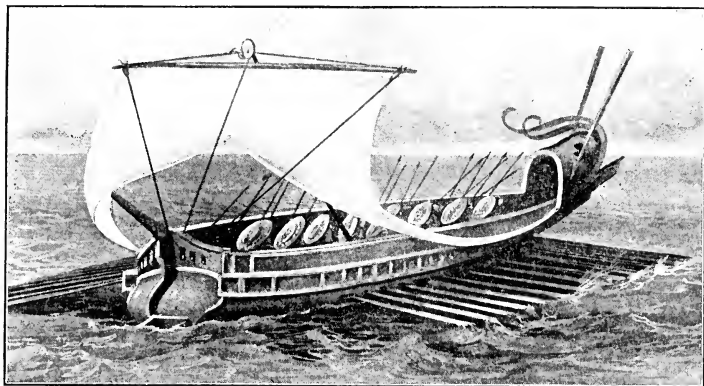
**249. Exercise.** 1. A certain city. 2. Of some hills. 3. To each footsoldier. 4. Everyone<sup>1</sup> will come. 5. Cer-

---

<sup>1</sup> Singular.



tain ships were seen in the sea in the winter. 6. This is some soldier's sword. 7. They were defended from all danger by a certain general. 8. He praised each boy. 9. The enemy had taken some part of the town. 10. We have chosen a certain Gaul [as] leader of our forces.



ANCIENT WAR GALLEY

## LESSON XLVIII.

## PRONOUNS, CONTINUED.

**250. Review Exercise.** Write paradigms of *aliquis*, *quidam*, and *quisque*; the last one in the singular only.

**251. The Pronoun *Ipse*.** *Ipse, ipsa, ipsum, self, myself, yourself, himself, themselves*, etc., is called the Intensive Pronoun. It is declined like *ille*, except that it has *-um* instead of *-ud* in the neuter singular. See § 231.

**252. Exercise.** Write a paradigm of *ipse*, in the singular only.

**253. The Pronoun *Suī*.** *Suī* means *of himself, herself, itself, themselves*; but it differs in its use from *ipse* according to a principle given in the next section. Learn the following paradigm:

Gen.	<i>suī</i>
Dat.	<i>sibi</i>
Acc.	<i>sē</i> or <i>sēsē</i>
Abl.	<i>sē</i> or <i>sēsē</i>

There is no nominative, and the singular and plural are the same.

**254. Use of *Iipse* and *Suī*.** *Iipse* is used for emphasis. Thus,

*Iipse dixit, He said (it) himself.*

*Iipsum rēgem vīdī, I saw the king himself.*

*Suī* is used only as a reflexive pronoun; that is, it refers to the same person or thing as that named by the subject of its own sentence. It is only used in the third person.

*Puella sē laudāvit, The girl praised herself.*

*Dōna sibi dant, They give gifts to themselves.*

*Cōnsul suī memor nōn est, The consul is not thoughtful of himself.*

The two pronouns may be combined. Thus,

*Captivus ipse sēsē liberāvit, The prisoner himself freed himself.*

**255. Exercise.** Copy and complete:

1. I myself did this.
2. The citizens will save themselves from (*ā*) slavery.
3. He sent-away the tenth legion itself.
4. We ourselves have seen the army-on-the-march.
5. Why does your king never restrain himself?

**256. Reflexive of the First and Second Persons.** There is no separate reflexive pronoun of the first or sec-

ond person. Instead, the personal pronouns, *ego* and *tū*, are used. Thus,

*We do not praise ourselves, Nōs (acc.) nōn laudāmus.*  
*You praise yourself, Tē laudās.*

**257. Exercise.** The Latin for *I retreat* is *mē recipiō*, literally *I take myself back*. Write a paradigm of the present tense of this verb, including the proper reflexive form for each number and person as explained in § 256.

**258. Exercise.** 1. I shall retreat. 2. We had retreated. 3. The tenth legion itself retreated to-the-foot of a mountain. 4. You yourselves will have often retreated. 5. The infantry (footsoldiers) themselves were retreating.

## LESSON XLIX.

### PRONOUNS, CONTINUED. IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES.

**259. The Pronoun *Iste*.** The demonstrative pronoun *iste, ista, istud*, is declined like *ille*. See § 231. It means (often with a scornful application) *that-of-yours*. Thus,  
*istud opus, that work of yours; istis amicis, to those friends of yours.*

**260. The Pronoun *Īdem*.** *Īdem, eadem, idem* means *the same*. It is formed by adding the suffix *-dem* to the various forms of *is*. The following changes occur :

Instead of *isdem* we have *īdem*.

Instead of *iddem* we have *īdem*.

Before *-dem*, *m* becomes *n*, as *eārundem*.

**261. Exercise.** Write a complete paradigm of *īdem* (see § 222).

**262. Exercise.** 1. That liberty of yours is worse than our slavery. 2. Those friends of yours have given the

same advice. 3. I will give that advice of yours to the same people. 4. Those legions of yours are in the same place. 5. The same commander will lead those troops of yours out of the camp.

**263. Irregular Adjectives.** Nine adjectives of the first and second declensions have the genitive singular of all genders in *-iūs* and the dative singular of all genders in *-ī*. Otherwise they are regular, except that **alius** has nominative and accusative singular neuter **aliud** and genitive **aliūs** (not *al-iūs*). Learn the following list:

**alius**, *other*.

**alter**, gen. **alteriūs**, *the other* (of two).

**sōlus**, *alone, only*.

**tōtus**, *whole*.

**ūllus**, *any*.

**nūllus**, *no, none*.

**ūnus**, *one*.

**uter**, gen. **utriūs**, *which* (of two).

**neuter**, gen. **neutriūs**, *neither*.

The genitive singular of **alius** is rarely found. Instead, the genitive singular of **alter** may be used.

**Ūnus** may be used in the plural to agree with plural words signifying a single object, such as **castra**, and also in the sense of *alone*, a meaning which it shares with **sōlus**.

**264. Exercise.** Write paradigms of **alius** and **ūnus**, in the singular only.

**265. Exercise.** 1. The tenth legion withdrew; the other remained. 2. By the aid of this cohort alone I was holding back the enemy. 3. Freedom has been given to this whole city. 4. One general completed that war in one year. 5. No defenders were seen on the walls. 6. By flight alone we shall have safety. 7. Which of the

two is braver? 8. Neither despaired of the safety of the whole town. 9. They had never lost any part of their money. 10. He was leading the cohorts of another legion across some river.

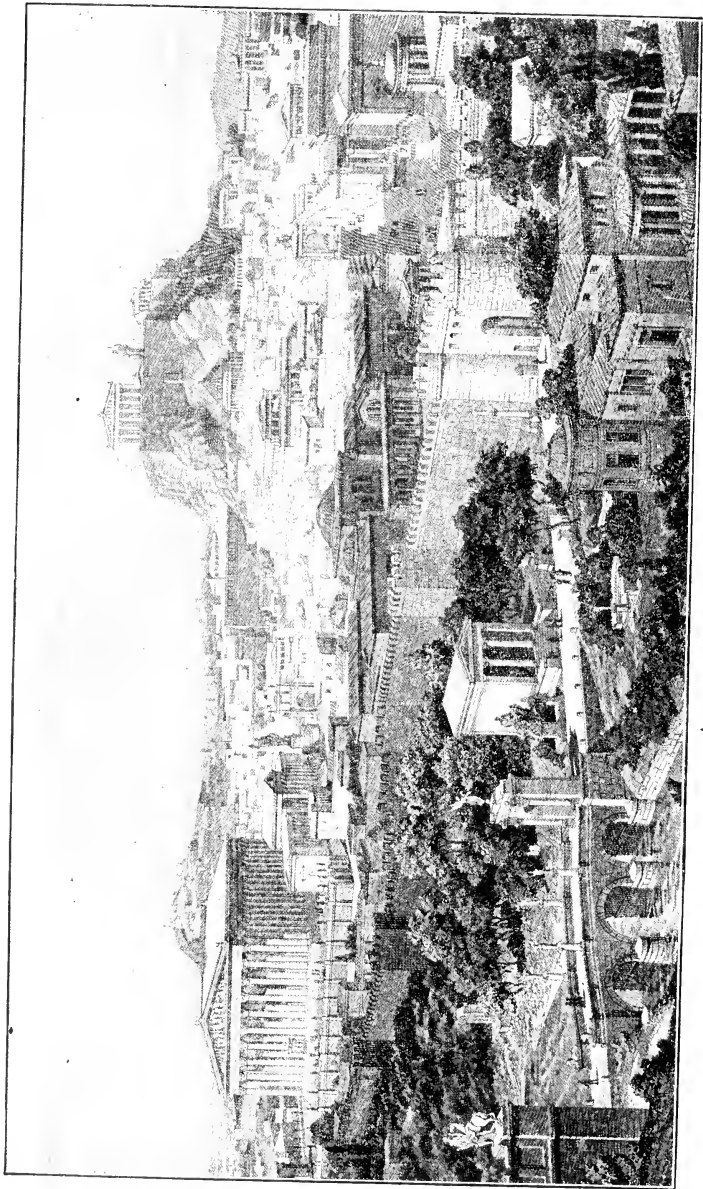
### LESSON L.

#### READING LESSON: ATHĒNAE.<sup>1</sup>

Nautae in nāvigiō ōrae Atticae appropinquant. Primum hastam auream Minervae spectābunt. Nam statua deae aedificia oppidī superat. Athēnae in tūtclā Minervae sunt.<sup>2</sup> Ōlim enim Minerva et Neptūnus dē oppidō certābant. Neptūnus incolīs Athēnārum equum bellicōsum dōnāvit; Minervae dōnum erat olīva iūcunda. Dōnō suō Minerva deum superāvit. Itaque in templō oppidī habitābat et semper habitābit. Ego numquam statuam pulchram deae spectābō. Sed statuā tuī, Mārce, oculī mox dēlectābuntur, nam cum anīcīs tuīs in Graeciam migrābitis. Nam semper Rōmānī Athēnās frequentābunt, quod Athēnae magistrae<sup>2</sup> litterārum sunt. Ōlim Athēnae parvae, neque aedificiīs pulchrīs ōrnātae erant. Sed virī strēnuī divitiās māgnās in patriam meam portāvērunt. Etiam Persae nōnnūllīs proeliīs Graecōs superāvērunt. Post prīmam Persārum victōriam incolae Athēnārum timidī in īnsulam finitimam nāvīgāvērunt; etiam dea ex templō ēmigrāverat. Itaque Persae sine pūgnā in oppidum penetrāvērunt et multa aedificia et templa inflammāvērunt. Sed post victōriam Graecōrum incolae remigrāvērunt et Athēnās aedificiīs, templīs, statuīs pulchrīs ōrnāvērunt, mūrīs lātīs et altīs fīrmāvērunt.

<sup>1</sup> See View of Athens, p. 94.

<sup>2</sup> Translate as singular.



ANCIENT ATHENS RESTORED

## LESSON LI.

## ALIIUS AND ALTER: CORRELATIVE USE.

**266. Review Exercise.** 1. I have many books; which have you seen? 2. Both Caesar and Cicero were great men; which-of-the-two was the greater? 3. Did they have any enemies? 4. Neither had the same enemies as [which] the other [had]. 5. This legion alone will not destroy the fortifications of one town.

**267. Correlatives.** Instead of *the one . . . the other*, Latin has *the other . . . the other*, **alter . . . alter**.

Instead of *one . . . another*, it has *another . . . another*, **alius . . . alius**.

Instead of *some . . . others*, it has *others . . . others*, **alii . . . alii**.

**268. Shortened Expressions.** Instead of *one said one thing, another said another*, Latin omits the first part of the sentence, and has only *another said another thing*, **alius aliud<sup>1</sup> dixit**. In the same way, instead of *some fled in one direction, others in another*, it has *others fled in another direction*, **alii in aliam partem fugerunt**, etc.

**269. Exercise.** 1. Alii hōc, alii illud vīdērunt. 2. Altera puella librōs, altera pecūniam laudat. 3. Alii in aliam regiōnem venient. 4. Alius : b aliō interfectus est. 5. Alius bellum, alius pācem timet.

**270. Exercise.** 1. Some were on the right bank of this river, others on the left. 2. Some withdrew to one place, others to another. 3. One was cut off from safety by a wall, but the other found the gate. 4. Courage is

<sup>1</sup> *Thing* and *things* can be expressed by the neuter singular and plural of an adjective (or pronoun), as here shown.

praised by some, money by others. 5. Some of the troops will be taken (led) to one camp, others to another.

### 271. Summary of Words Meaning "Other."

*Another* is *alius*.

*The other* (of two) is *alter*.

*Others* is *alii*.

*The others, the rest*, is *cēteri*, or *reliqui*.

**272. Exercise.** 1. Others praise Caesar; Cicero does not praise him. 2. Are not the others cut off from flight? 3. The tenth legion was stationed on the other bank of the river. 4. Soon another legion will come to the same river. 5. Have the rest of the enemy withdrawn?

## LESSON LII.

### THE FOURTH DECLENSION.

**273. Review Exercise.** 1. Some saw the general alone, others saw both the general and his lieutenant. 2. There were no defenders in the whole city. 3. One completes the work, another is praised. 4. Some heard one [thing], others another. 5. You will never have any liberty without a war.

**274. The Fourth Declension.** Most nouns of the Fourth Declension are masculine. There are a few feminines and neuters. Masculines and feminines have the following endings:

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
N. V.	-us	-ūs
Gen.	-ūs	-uum
Dat.	-uī (-ū)	-ibus
Acc.	-um	-ūs
Abl.	-ū	-ibus



The dative and ablative plural sometimes end in **-ubus** instead of **-ibus**. So always in **arcus**, *bow*, **quercus**, *oak*, **tribus**, *tribe*.

**275. Exercise.** Write a paradigm of **exercitus**, m., *army*.

**276. Neuters.** Neuters of the fourth declension end as follows :

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
N. V.	-ū	-ua
Gen.	-ūs	-uum
Dat.	-ū	-ibus
Acc.	-ū	-ua
Abl.	-ū	-ibus

**277. Exercise.** Write a paradigm of **cornū**, n., *horn*.

**278. Exercise.** 1. At the approach of the army the enemy broke camp. 2. The leaders of armies are called generals. 3. We shall be cut-off from supplies. 4. Who are the chiefs of the senate? 5. We made an attack on Caesar's troops. 6. The tenth legion was stationed on the right wing (horn). 7. Caesar killed the Gaul with his [own] hands. 8. Who held the leadership of the whole [of] Gaul? 9. We were not alarmed by his arrival. 10. They fear the Roman armies and so do not attack (make an attack on) the lieutenant.

**279. Exercise.** 1. Equitātus<sup>1</sup> in sinistrō cornū collocābitur. 2. Cūr aditum Caesaris nōn timuistis? 3. Eius adventū lēgātōs mīsistis quī pācem ab imperātōre Rōmānō petēbant. 4. Peditātus<sup>1</sup> impetum hostium nōn sustinuit. 5. Prīnceps senātūs nūntium ad imperātōrem mīsīt.

<sup>1</sup> Besides the plural words for *infantry* and *cavalry* already given, there are these fourth declension nouns, which are singular.

## LESSON LIII.

## THE FIFTH DECLENSION.

**280. Review Exercise.** 1. By the arrival of the Roman army they had been cut off from supplies. 2. Who had the [right of] approach to (ad) the senate? 3. With his right hand the soldier had thrown a spear. 4. In Caesar's army were both infantry and cavalry. 5. You will soon see the approach of the enemy's right wing.

**281. The Fifth Declension.** Nouns of this declension are feminine, with the exception of *diēs*, *day*, and *meridiēs*, *noon*, which are masculine. In the singular, *diēs* is sometimes feminine; especially when it means a period of time rather than any particular day. The terminations of the fifth declension are as follows.

N. V.	-ēs	-ēs
Gen.	-eī (-ēī)	-ērum
Dat.	-eī (-ēī)	-ēbus
Acc.	-em	-ēs
Abl.	-ē	-ēbus

The genitive and dative singular have -ēī instead of -ēī when the termination is preceded by a vowel. Thus,

*fidēī*; *diēī*.

**282. Exercise.** Write a paradigm of *rēs*, *thing*.

**283. Duration and Extent.** Nouns which answer the questions "How long?" or "How far?" are put in the accusative. Compare § 53, *a*, *b*. Thus,

*Trēs annōs in urbe mānsit*, *He remained (for) three years in the city.*

*Fossa ducentōs pedēs pertinēbat*, *The ditch extended two hundred feet.*

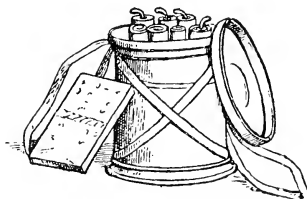
**284. Exercise.** 1. What things have you in your right hand? 2. The line-of-battle was drawn up in a great plain. 3. All came under (into) his protection. 4. The commonwealth is in danger. 5. We have lost that hope of safety which we had. 6. Liberty is the best of all things. 7. The Gauls exchanged (gave among themselves) a pledge. 8. For four days they were fortifying the camp. 9. For one whole day the soldiers were drawn up on a plain before the city. 10. The commonwealth has fleets and armies (express in two ways).

**285. Exercise.** Illō diē māgnūm proelium erat in Galliā. Omnēs cōpiāe hostium instrūctae erant in plānitīe. Nostrī prō castrīs in aciē cōstiterant. Omnis spēs rei pūblicae in eōrum virtūte posita erat. Māgna erat fidēs cīvium, māgna spēs hostium. Mox quīdam sīgnūm dedit, et nostrī<sup>1</sup> impetum in aciem Gallōrum fēcērunt. Illī fugae sē dedērunt, sed nostrī fortēs virī revertērunt in urbem quam servāverant, et ab omnibus laudātī sunt. Laudem dedit imperātor illīs quōrum virtūtem animadverterat. Aliquī in proeliō interfectī erant, sed hī paucī erant. Hostium autem māxima erat caedēs. Fēminae prō salūte suā flōrēs in ārīs deōrum pōnunt.

**286. RULE XIX.** *Duration of time and extent of space are expressed by the accusative.*

---

<sup>1</sup> **Nostrī, vestrī,** etc., are regularly used as nouns with the meaning *our men, troops, friends,* etc.



BOX OF BOOKS

## LESSON LIV.

## NUMERALS.

**287. Review Exercise.** 1. The army will be drawn up in a plain. 2. You will be cut off from these things. 3. In one day he will have saved the commonwealth. 4. Caesar gave his protection to the hostages. 5. Others were held back by fear of these things.

**288. Numerals.** The numerals *one, two, three, etc.*, are called Cardinal Numerals.

The numerals *first, second, third, etc.*, are called Ordinal Numerals.

The cardinals, from four to a hundred inclusive, are not declined.

The declension of *ūnus, one*, has been already given. See § 263.

**Duo, two**, is declined as follows :

	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	duo	duae	duo
Gen.	duōrum	duārum	duōrum
Dat.	duōbus	duābus	duōbus
Acc.	duōs (duo)	duās	duo
Abl.	duōbus	duābus	duōbus

**Trēs, three**, is declined as follows :

	M. AND F.	N.
Nom.	trēs	tria
Gen.	trium	trium
Dat.	tribus	tribus
Acc.	trēs (trīs)	tria
Abl.	tribus	tribus

In the singular (that is, when it means *one thousand*), **mille** is an indeclinable adjective, and does not affect the case of the word which it limits. Thus,

**Mille militēs veniunt,** *A thousand soldiers will come.*

**Cum mille militibus vēnit,** *He came with a thousand soldiers.*

In the plural, however (that is, when more thousands than one are meant), **mīlia** is a noun, and is followed by the genitive. Thus,

**Duo mīlia militum,** *Two thousand soldiers* (literally, *thousands of soldiers*).

**Cum tribus milibus militum vēnit,** *He came with three thousand soldiers.*

**Duo mīlia passuum prōgrediuntur,** *They advance for two miles* (literally, *thousands of paces*).

In the plural **mille** is declined as follows :

Nom., Acc.	<b>mīlia</b>
Gen.	<b>mīlium</b>
Dat., Abl.	<b>milibus</b>

**289. One to Seventeen.** Learn the cardinal numerals from one to ten inclusive, as given in the Vocabulary to this Lesson.

The ending **-decim** in Latin corresponds generally to **-teen** in English. This is preceded by one of the ten digits, often abbreviated, as **quīndecim** (for quīnquedecim), *fifteen*.

**290. Exercise.** Without consulting a dictionary, give the English equivalents of the following :

1. Quattuordecim. 2. Sēdecim. 3. Tredecim. 4. Septendecim. 5. Ūndecim. 6. Duodecim.

**291. Eighteen to Twenty.** *Twenty* in Latin is **vīgintī**. For *eighteen*, Latin says "two-from-twenty," **duodēvīgintī**, and for *nineteen*, "one-from-twenty," **ūndēvīgintī**.

**292. Multiples of Ten.** Multiples of ten, from thirty to ninety inclusive, end in **-gintā**. The first part of the number is easily recognized. Thus, **quīnquāgintā** is *fifty*.

**293. Exercise.** Give English equivalents of the following :

1. Trīgintā. 2. Octōgintā. 3. Septuāgintā. 4. Nōnāgintā. 5. Sexāgintā. 6. Quadrāgintā.

**294. Between the Tens.** Numbers from twenty-one to twenty-seven, thirty-one to thirty-seven, etc., are formed on the same principle as in English. Thus,

*thirty-two*, trīgintā duo;  
*forty-four*, quadrāgintā quattuor.

Twenty-eight, twenty-nine, etc., are expressed according to the principle of § 291, "two-from-thirty," "one-from-thirty," etc. But *ninety-eight* and *ninety-nine* are formed like *ninety-seven*, etc.

Besides this, just as in English we sometimes say "four and twenty" for twenty-four, so in Latin we may put the unit first, connecting it to the other by **et**. Thus,

**duo et vīgintī**, *two and twenty* or *twenty-two*.

When any part of such a number is declinable, it agrees with its noun, whichever of the above forms be employed.

**Ūnus** in such a case is singular in form. Thus,

**Ūnus et vīgintī** (or **vīgintī ūnus**) **hominēs**, *twenty-one men*.

**Cum trīgintā duābus nāvibus**, or **cum duābus et trīgintā nāvibus**,  
*with thirty-two ships*.

**295. Exercise.** 1. Twenty-five paces. 2. Thirty-four paces. 3. Of ninety-nine miles. 4. In forty-two years. 5. The legion has marched eighty-six miles. 6. Seventy-seven bridges. 7. For sixty-three girls. 8. Of fifty-eight laws. 9. A thousand horsemen marched twenty-one miles. 10. With three thousand infantry.

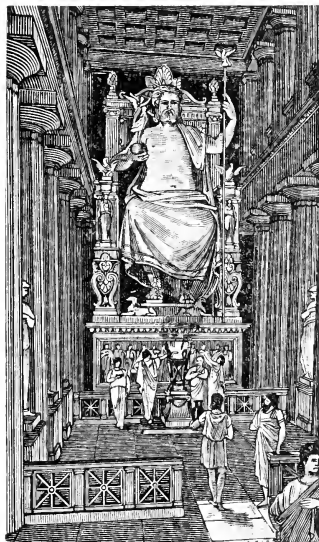
## LESSON LV.

## READING LESSON: IUPPITER.

Iuppiter rēx erat deōrum hominumque. Iovis uxor fuit Iūnō, rēgīna deōrum; filia Iovis Minerva erat. Iovī ā Graecīs et ā Rōmānīs templa praeclara cōnsecrāta sunt. Iovem Rōmānī Patrem appellābant, quod animō patriō mundum et genus hominum gubernābat. Ā Iove tem-

pora aestātis hiemisque sēparāta sunt. Ex Olympō altō Iuppiter agrōs imbribus recreābat, fulminibus scelera hominum malōrum castigābat, bonīs vītam beātam dōnābat. Hospitēs in tūtēlā Iovis erant.

Olympia, locus sacer Peloponnēsī, in rīpā dextrā Alphēī flūminis sita erat. Locus templis Iovis aliōrumque deōrum et certāminibus Olympiīs clārus erat. Campus lātus Olympiae nemore amoenō, aedificiīs praeclārīs, statuīs splendidis deōrum ōrnātus erat. Etiam hominum memoria statuīs pulchrīs cōnservābātur. Victōribus enim



IN THE TEMPLE OF JUPITER

certāminum statucae aēneae vel marmoreae praemia rōboris et celeritātis pedum erant. Sed Iovis statua, opus Phīdīae artificis, cētera artificum opera pulchritūdine, māgnitūdine, māiestāte superābat. Splendōrem aurī et eboris

quae in illā statuā erant, oculī hominum vix tolerābant. Caput augustum, oculī sevērī, barba et capillī dēnsī, scēptrum aureum, fulmen splendidum, sella rēgia potestātem dīvinam et māiestātem patris deōrum hominumque sīgnificābant.

## LESSON LVI.

### NUMERALS, CONTINUED.

**296. Review Exercise.** 1. There were two lines of battle drawn up (plup.) in that huge plain. 2. There are four things which the people fear. 3. Sixty-eight is one less than sixty-nine. 4. Eighty-three is two more than eighty-one. 5. Fifty-four is twenty-five less than seventy-nine.

**297. Multiples of a Hundred.** *One hundred* is *centum*, indeclinable. Multiples of a hundred end in *-centī*, *-ae*, *-a*, and *-gentī*, *-ae*, *-a*, and are declined as adjectives of the first and second declension.

**298. Exercise.** Give English equivalents for the following.

1. Octingentī. 2. Trecentī. 3. Sēscentī. 4. Ducentī. 5. Nōngentī. 6. Septingentī. 7. Quadringentī. 8. Quīngentī.

**299. Exercise.** 1. We have marched twenty-six miles. 2. There were three hundred and thirty-five men and four hundred and fifty-one women in the town. 3. There were five hundred and ninety-seven boys and six hundred and sixty-one girls. 4. There were seven hundred and fifty-seven slaves. 5. And so all the people were two thousand, eight hundred and one.



**300. Ordinals.** These are declined as adjectives of the first and second declensions. Most of them are easily recognized by their likeness to the cardinals. Thus, *eleventh* is *ūndecimus*, from *ūndecim*, *eleven*.

**301. Exercise.** Give English equivalents for the following :

1. Quartus. 2. Secundus. 3. Quīntus. 4. Tertius.  
5. Octāvus. 6. Decimus. 7. Nōnus. 8. Prīmus. 9.  
Septimus. 10. Sextus.

**302. Exercise.** 1. A third part of the state withdrew.  
2. On the second day, some ships were seen in the sea.  
3. Was the fourth legion much braver than the fifth?  
4. The sixth night was like the seventh (dat.). 5. The eighth legion was braver than the ninth, but the ninth was less brave than the tenth. 6. Did you see the first attack?  
7. Who was the third king of the Romans? 8. There were seven kings of Rome. 9. The seventh, who was the worst, was called Tarquinius Superbus. 10. Twenty-three horses were seen in a large field by these two boys.

## LESSON LVII.

### ADVERBS: FORMATION AND COMPARISON.

**303. Adverbs.** Adverbs are words used to limit verbs, adjectives, and other adverbs. Thus,

Limits verb. *Bene facit, He does well.*

Limits adjective. *Minus idōneus est locus, The place is less suitable.*

Limits adverb. *Satis bene facit, He does sufficiently well.*

**304. Formation.** Many adverbs are formed from adjective stems. From adjectives of the first and second declension, adverbs are formed by substituting **-ē** for the termination of the nominative singular masculine. Thus,

Adjective. **lāt us**, *wide*.  
Adverb. **lāt ē**, *widely, far and wide*.

From adjectives of the third declension adverbs are formed by adding **-ter** to the stem, which regularly ends in **-i**. Thus,

Adjective. **fēlix**, *fortunate*.  
Stem. **fēlici-**  
Adverb. **fēlici ter**, *fortunately*.

Stems in **-nt-** drop the final **-ti-** of the stem. Thus,

Adjective. **prūdēns**, *prudent*.  
Stem. **prūdenti-**  
Adverb. **prūden ter** (not *prūdenti ter*), *prudently*.

In like manner **audāx**, *bold*, has **audāc ter** (not *audāci ter*), *boldly*.

The accusative and the ablative of both nouns and adjectives are sometimes used as adverbs. Thus, **vulgō**, *commonly*, ablative of **vulgus**, *populace*; **facile**, *easily*, accusative of **facilis**, *easy*; **partim** (see § 164), *partly*, an old accusative of **pars**, *part*.

**305. Exercise.** Form adverbs in **-ē** and **-ter**, according to the method explained in § 304, from the following adjectives.

1. **Certus**, *certain*. 2. **Vehemēns**, *impetuous*. 3. **Fortis**, *brave*. 4. **Ācer**, *sharp*. 5. **Gravis**, *heavy, severe*.

**306. Comparison.** The comparative of an adverb has the same ending as the accusative singular neuter of the comparative of an adjective. Thus,

**longē**, *far*; comparative **longius**, *farther*.

The superlative of an adverb is like the superlative of an adjective, with *-ē* instead of the *-us* of the nominative singular. Thus, the superlative of *longē* would be

*longissimē, farthest.*

**307. Exercise.** 1. You come oftener than your brother. 2. This thing was known very widely. 3. We did it very easily. 4. You will reach (arrive at) the place with-more-difficulty. 5. We shall complete the work very carefully.

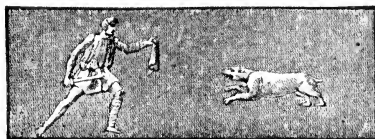
**308. Irregular Adverbs.** Learn the following list of adverbs which show some irregularity in comparison:

*diū, long* (in time); *diūtius, longer*; *diūtissimē, longest.*

*multum* (with comparatives, *multō*), *much*; *magis, more*; *māximē, most.*

*bene, well*; *melius, better*; *optimē, best.*

**309. Exercise.** 1. Bene meum opus faciō, tū tuum longē melius, illa suum optimē. 2. Illō diē Rōmānī diūtius quam priōre pūgnāvērunt. 3. Satis ācriter hostēs impetum in legiōnem fēcērunt. 4. Fortiter autem nostrī impetum eōrum sustinent et omnīs in fugam dedērunt. 5. Diū et ācerrimē pūgnāvērunt. 6. Multum tū pūgnāvistī, magis ego, ille autem māximē. 7. Hōc opus facillimē ā nobīs factum erit. 8. Multō aegrius hostēs in fugam dedimus. 9. Plānitīēs est lōcus nōn māximē idōneus castrīs. 10. Ego saepissimē eum vīdī, tū minus saeqē, ille autem multō saepius quam nōs.



## LESSON LVIII.

## THE LOCATIVE CASE.

**310. Review Exercise.** 1. Some do this far more easily than others. 2. We do not see you often enough. 3. We withstood the attack of the cavalry with difficulty. 4. The signals were seen far and wide. 5. My friend remained longer than I.

**311. The Locative.** Instead of the construction given in § 53, *a*, names of towns and small islands, as well as the nouns **domus**, *home*, and **rūs**, *the country*, are put in the locative case to indicate the place where.

The regular form of the locative is the same as the dative, except in the singular of the second declension, where it is like the genitive. In the third declension, the locative case may also end in **-e** in the singular.

The locative of **domus** is **domī**, *at home*.

The locative of **rūs** is **rūrī**, *in the country* (as distinguished from the city).

**312. Other Expressions of Place.** The same words are put in the accusative without a preposition to denote the place whither (see § 139), and in the ablative without a preposition to denote the place whence. (See § 133.)

**313. Exercise.** 1. There are more people in the city than in the town. 2. There were many thousand citizens in Rome. 3. From what country have you come? We have come from Greece. 4. To what city have we come? To Corinth. 5. In Carthage were many enemies of the Roman people. 6. Our friends were not at home.

The Gauls sent ambassadors to Italy. 8. Ambassadors came from Gaul to Rome. 9. They will send the children to the country next summer. 10. The messengers were sent home by the consul. 11. At Athens there were many altars. 12. There was a man at Cures who became (was made) king of the Romans.

**314. Exercise.** 1. Rūre in urbem veniet. 2. Ē Graeciā Rōmam missī erant lēgātī. 3. Mox Rōmā in Graeciam revertent. 4. Athēnīs sunt, unde mox in Galliam venient. 5. Rōma māxima urbs est in Ītaliā.

**315. RULE XX.** *The place from which is denoted by the ablative with ab, ex, or dē.*

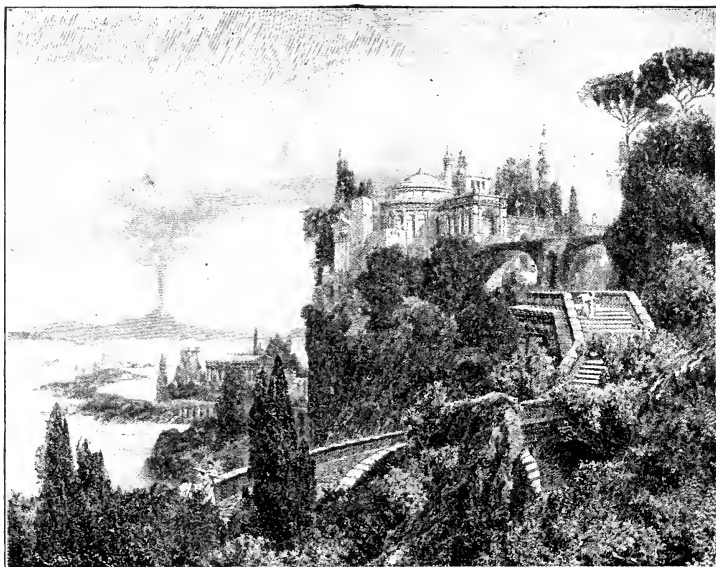
**RULE XXI.** *With names of towns and small islands, and the words domus and rūs, the place where is denoted by the locative; the place to which, by the accusative without a preposition; the place from which, by the ablative without a preposition.*

## LESSON LIX.

### SOME IRREGULAR NOUNS. THIRD DECLENSION: GENDER RULES.

**316. Review Exercise.** 1. Cicero is in the country, Caesar in the city. 2. Some came here from one city, others from another. 3. Why did the troops withdraw from Rome? 4. I have been sent from Corinth to Carthage. 5. We are coming from Athens to Italy.

**317. Declension of Domus.** Domus, house, home, besides having all the forms of the fourth declension, has in addition the locative, dative, and ablative singular, and the genitive and accusative plural of the second declension.



A ROMAN VILLA

**318. Exercise.** Write a paradigm of *domus*. The gender is feminine.

**319. Declension of *Vīs*.** *Vīs* in the singular means *force, violence*. In the plural it means *strength*. The gender is feminine. It is declined as follows.

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
Nom.	<b>vīs</b>	<b>vīrēs</b>
Gen.	<b>vīs</b>	<b>vīrium</b>
Dat.	<b>vī</b>	<b>vīribus</b>
Acc.	<b>vim</b>	<b>vīrēs, vīrīs</b>
Abl.	<b>vī</b>	<b>vīribus.</b>

**320. Declension of *Deus*.** *Deus, a god*, is regular in the singular, except that there is no separate form for the

vocative, the nominative being used instead. In the plural it is declined as follows.

N. V.	deī, diī, dī
Gen.	deōrum, deum
Dat.	deīs, diīs, dīs
Acc.	deōs
Abl.	deīs, diīs, dīs.

**321. Declension of *Senex*.** With the exception of the nominative singular, *senex*, *old man*, is declined as though the stem were *sen-*. It is of the third declension.

**322. Exercise.** Write a paradigm of *senex*.

**323. Declension of *Iter*.** *Iter*, *journey, march*, is a neuter of the third declension. All its forms, except the nominative and accusative singular, are from the stem *itiner-*.

**324. Exercise.** Write a paradigm of *iter*.

**325. Declension of *Iuppiter*.** *Iuppiter*, *Jupiter*, is declined as follows:

N. V.	Iuppiter
Gen.	Iovis
Dat.	Iovī
Acc.	Iovem
Abl.	Iove

**326. Gender Rules of the Third Declension.** Learn the following rules, which enable one to know the gender of most nouns of the third declension from their terminations.

Masculine are nouns ending in

-ō, -or, -os, -er, -es increasing in the genitive.

(See § 164.)

Feminine are nouns ending in

-ās, -ēs not increasing in the genitive, -is, -ūs, -ys, -x, -s preceded by a consonant.

Neuter are nouns ending in

-l, -e, -a, -n, -ar, -ur, -ūs

**327. Exceptions to Rules of Gender.** Names of males are masculine and names of females feminine, independent of any rule of gender by termination. Thus *rēx*, *king*, is masculine, although by the rule it should be feminine.

There are very many exceptions to the rules given in § 326. Memorize the following:

Nouns in -dō and -gō, and abstract and collective nouns in -iō, are feminine.

**328. Exercise.** Make a table, classifying the following nouns according to the rules just given.

cōsuētūdō, *habit.*

labor, *toil.*

agger, *mound.*

ōrātiō, *speech.*

celeritās, *swiftness.*

mors, *death.*

altitūdō, *height.*

clāmor, *shout.*

centuriō, *centurion* (an officer).

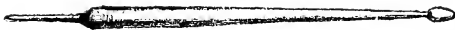
palūs, *marsh.*

profectiō, *departure.*

pāx, *peace.*

**329. Exercise.** Give the adjectives in the following sentences their proper terminations, and translate.

1. Iuppiter pater deōrum et māgn- rēx hominum appellābātur. 2. Āgmen long- hostium ā nōstris vidēbātur. 3. Corpus hūius animālis parv- est. 4. Turrēs nostr- altiōrēs quam hostium erant. 5. Hieme noctēs sunt longissim-.



STILUS



## LESSON LX.

## READING LESSON: AESCULĀPIUS.

Aesculāpius deus medicīnae erat. Propinquī ōlim ad templum Aesculāpī commeāvērunt, et deī auxiliū implōrābant. In templō statuam marmoream deī spectāvērunt. Figūra deī baculō sustentābātur. Oculis



AESCULĀPIUS

placidīs benevolentia deī sīgnificābātur. Propinquī tum gallum, porcū, āgnūm apportāvērunt. Ita victimīs pulchrīs Aesculāpiū plācābant. Āra deī pōnīs ōrnāta erat, quae ab aliīs iam data erant quī in templō fuerant et deū implōrāverant. Propinquī bēstiās immolāvērunt; deū dēlectābant. Tum deū implōrāvērunt. “Avus noster aegrōtus est. Medicus autem morbum nōn sānāvit; itaque tē dōnīs et vōtīs placāvimus. Avus semper pius fuit; dōna nostra nōn repudiābis. Tū aegrōtis semper benīgnus fuisti; animō propitiō morbum avī sānābis! Sī avum hōe periculō liberā-

veris, templum tuum etiam postea dōnīs pulchrīs ōrnābimus.” Deō vōta hōrum propinquōrum grāta erant, avum aegrōtum sānāvit. Tum omnēs deū laudāvērunt quī vim morbī malam superāverat avumque suum sānāverat.

## LESSON LXI.

DEPONENT VERBS. *POSSUM.*

**330. Review Exercise.** 1. The habit of toil is good for men. 2. The mound was eighteen feet high. 3. With might and main ("highest strength," *summae vīrēs*) the old men withstood the attack. 4. By forced (great) marches Caesar came to the town. 5. The gods hear the shouts of those who are in the battle.

**331. Deponent Verbs.** Verbs which are passive in form but active in meaning are called Deponent. Thus, *cōnor* means *I am trying*.

There are only three principal parts of deponent verbs, since the perfect active stem does not appear in the passive. These are as follows:

(a) The first person singular of the present indicative.

(b) The present infinitive.

(c) The first person singular of the perfect indicative.

Thus,

*cōnor, cōnārī, cōnātus sum.*

These give us the two stems: present, *conā-*, and supine, *cōnāt-*.

**332. The Verb *Possum*.** This is a compound of *sum*; that is, it is made by prefixing to *sum* the syllable *pot-*, which means *able*. Whenever the form of *sum* would begin with *s*, the final *t* of *pot-* is changed to *s*. Thus, *possum* and not *potsum*; but *potes, poterant*, etc.

*Possum* means *I am able, or I can*. The imperfect means *I was able, or I could*.

**333. Exercise.** Write a paradigm of *possum* in the present, imperfect, and future tenses.

**334. Perfect System of *Possum*.** In the perfect, the *f* is dropped; *potuī*, not *potfūī*.

**335. Exercise.** Write a paradigm of the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect of *possum*.

**336. Use of *Possum*.** *Possum* is followed by the present infinitive, as in English. Thus,

*I can come* = *I am able to come*, *Venīre possum*.

The endings of the present infinitive, active and passive, are as follows. Notice particularly that of the third conjugation in the passive.

		ACTIVE.	PASSIVE.
Conj. I.		-āre	-ārī, as <i>laudārī</i> .
Conj. II.		-ēre	-ērī, as <i>monērī</i> .
Conj. III.		-ere	-ī, as <i>mittī</i> .
Conj. IV.		-īre	-īrī, as <i>mūnīrī</i> .

**337. Other Verbs Taking an Infinitive.** Like *possum*, *cōnor*, *try*, *attempt*, and *dēbeō*, *ought*, are followed by the present infinitive.

**338. Exercise.** 1. I can set-out. 2. We shall be able to follow you. 3. They had not been able to see the old men. 4. Caesar could not make forced marches. 5. You ought to try to come. 6. He will have been able to encourage his [men]. 7. They cannot choose a commander. 8. We could not draw up the line of battle. 9. The line of battle could not be drawn up. 10. They will be able to retreat to a hill. 11. I have not been able to finish the work which I was trying [to do]. 12. The work ought to be finished in time. 13. What can you say? 14. Nothing can be said. 15. I ought to try to see the city where Caesar dwelt.

**339. Exercise.** 1. Cōnārī dēbēmus bonī esse. 2. In omnīs regiōnēs, Caesar, tē sequēmur. 3. Vōs dūcere possum in eās terrās in quās multī venīre cōnātī sunt, sed nōn potuērunt. 4. Milītēs decimae legiōnis cohortābātur. 5. In terram venīre nōn possum in quā tū, mī amīce, habitās.

## LESSON LXII.

THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD: PRESENT TENSE. HORTATORY SUBJUNCTIVE AND SUBJUNCTIVE OF PURPOSE.

**340. The Subjunctive Mood.** In certain expressions, the nature of which will be explained later, Latin uses a mood called the subjunctive, instead of the indicative. The subjunctive mood has four tenses only—present, imperfect, perfect, and pluperfect.

**341. Formation of the Present Subjunctive.** The present subjunctive is formed by adding person-endings to the present stem, altered as follows:

- Conj. I. Change the stem-vowel **-ā-** to **-ē-**; as **amē** s (present stem **amā-**).
- Conj. II. Add **-ā-** to the stem-vowel **-e-**, shortened from **-ē-** according to § 12, *b*; as **moneā** tur (present stem **monē-**).
- Conj. III. Change the stem-vowel **-e-** to **-ā-**; as **regā** tis (present stem **rege-**).
- Conj. IV. Add **-a-** to the stem-vowel **-i-**, shortened from **-ī-** as in Conj. II; as **audiā** minī (present stem **audī-**).

A simple way to do this is as follows. Change the **-ō** of the first person singular present indicative to **-ē-** in the first conjugation, **-ā-** in the second, third, and fourth, and

add the regular person-endings, using *-m* in the first person singular of the active. Thus,

I. *ame m*; II. *monea m*; III. *rega m*; IV. *audia m*.

This *-a-* or *-ē-* will be shortened to *-a-* or *-ē-* before *-m*, *-t*, or *-nt*, as above.

### 342. Present Subjunctive of *Sum* and *Possum*.

The present subjunctive of *sum* is formed by adding person-endings to *sī-*. The stem-vowel is shortened as in § 341. That of *possum* is formed according to the method explained in § 332.

**343. Exercise.** Write paradigms of the present subjunctive, active and passive, of *laudō*, *timeō*, *mittō*, and *audiō*, and of the present subjunctive active of *sum* and of *possum*.

**344. Meaning of the Subjunctive.** Sometimes the Latin subjunctive is rendered by an English indicative, sometimes by the aid of an auxiliary verb, as *may*, *might*, *let*, etc. THE TRANSLATION IN ANY GIVEN CASE DEPENDS ON THE KIND OF CLAUSE IN WHICH THE SUBJUNCTIVE IS FOUND.

**345. Principal and Dependent Clauses.** Some of the uses of the subjunctive are found in principal clauses; that is, in clauses which are complete sentences in themselves. Most subjunctives, however, are found in dependent clauses; that is, in clauses connected to the main sentence by a relative or interrogative pronoun, or by conjunctions other than *and*, *for*, *but*, *or*, and their equivalents.

**346. The Hortatory Subjunctive.** The present subjunctive in a simple sentence or in a principal clause may be translated by the auxiliary *let*. Thus,

*Lēgātī pācem petant, Let the ambassadors seek peace.*

The subjunctive when so used is called the Hortatory Subjunctive, because it urges or exhorts to an action. **Nē** is used instead of **nōn** as the negative of this construction. Thus,

**Nē veniāmus, *Let us not come.***

**347. The Subjunctive of Purpose.** A clause containing a subjunctive may be connected to another clause by the conjunction **ut**, *that, in order that*, negative **nē** (not **ut nē**), *that . . . not, lest*. Thus,

**Lēgātōs mittēmus *ut pācem petant,*** *We shall send ambassadors that they may seek peace.*

**Veniō *nē hōc faciās,*** *I am coming that you may not do this ; or, lest you do this.*

The subjunctive so used is called the Subjunctive of Purpose, because it states the purpose or aim of the subject in the principal clause.

**348. Exercise.** 1. He is coming; let him attack the town. 2. He is coming that he may attack the town. 3. I shall leave troops; let them defend the citizens. 4. I shall leave troops that they may defend all the citizens. 5. The general is waging war; let him save the state. 6. The general is waging war that he may save the state. 7. The defenders are throwing javelins; let not the town be taken. 8. They are throwing javelins that the town may not



SOLDIER WITH PILUM

be taken. 9. I am giving money to the men; let them not hinder us. 10. I am giving the men much money lest they hinder us.

**349. Exercise.** 1. Militēs sunt fortēs. 2. Militēs sint fortēs. 3. Imperātor militēs laudat, ut fortēs sint. 4. Vōs, militēs, laudābō, ut fortēs sītis. 5. Imperātor nōs laudābit, ut fortiter pūgnāre possīmus.

**350. RULE XXII.** *The present subjunctive may be used in the first or third person to express an exhortation or command. The negative is nē.*

**RULE XXIII.** *Purpose may be expressed by the subjunctive introduced by ut, positive, or nē, negative.*

## LESSON LXIII.

### THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD: IMPERFECT TENSE.

**351. Expression of Purpose in English.** In English, purpose is often expressed by the infinitive. Thus, instead of saying

*I am coming that I may see you,*

we should say

*I am coming to see you.*

This, however, must not be imitated in Latin. The translation of both the above sentences would be the same :

**Veniō ut tē videam.**

**352. Exercise.** Use the English infinitive in translating the Latin subjunctive of purpose whenever possible.

1. Nē militēs impediāmus. 2. Haec dīcō nē militēs impediāmus. 3. Acīem prō castrīs īstruat. 4. Imperātor lēgātum mittet ut cōpiās prō castrīs īstruat. 5. Pontem faciāmus ut imperātor legiōnem trādūcat.

**353. The Imperfect Subjunctive.** This tense is formed by adding the syllable *-re-* to the present stem, followed by person-endings as in the present tense. A simple way to accomplish this (except with deponent verbs) is to add person-endings directly to the present infinitive active. Thus, *amāre* gives *amāre m.*, etc.

**354. Exercise.** Write paradigms of the imperfect subjunctive active and passive of *laudō*, *timeō*, *mittō*, *audiō*, and *capiō*.

**355. Tense of the Subjunctive.** In the subjunctive of purpose, the imperfect tense must be employed when the verb of the principal clause is in any tense which denotes past time. Thus,

*They came to see me (= that they might see me), Vēnērunt ut mē vidērent.*

After any tense denoting present or future time, the present subjunctive must be used, as already noticed.

**356. Exercise.** 1. We did not come to learn this fact. 2. The troops advanced to join battle with the Roman cavalry. 3. We were throwing missiles to keep back the enemy from the camp. 4. I shall give a signal that the chiefs of the senate may come-together. 5. He will not be able to understand these things.

**357. Imperfect Subjunctive of *Sum* and *Possum*.** The imperfect subjunctive of *sum* is formed by adding person-endings to *esse-*. That of *possum* does not follow the principle previously laid down, being formed by adding person-endings to *posse-*. Observe that the infinitive has the same peculiarity, being *posse* (not *potesse*).



**358. Exercise.** Write paradigms of the imperfect subjunctive of **sum** and **possum**.

**359. Exercise.** 1. Imperātor aciem instrūxit, ut proelium committere posset. 2. Numquam tēla conicēi ut tē perterrere possem. 3. Convēnimus ut cīvitatē servāre possēmus. 4. Equitātus paulō longius prōgressus erat, nē hostēs impetum in latus apertum nostrī exercitūs facere possent. 5. Haec omnia dixī, militēs, ut fortēs essētis, cīvitatēque servāre possētis.

**360. Exercise.** 1. In the first sentence of § 359, change **instrūxit** to **instruit**, change the tense of **posset** according to § 355, and translate. Make similar changes in the subjunctives of the other sentences, after the principal verbs have been altered as indicated below. 2. Change **conicēi** to **coniciam**. 3. Change **convēnimus** to **conveniāmus**. 4. Change **prōgressus erat** to **prōgressus erit**. 5. Change **dixī** to **dīcimus**.

## LESSON LXIV.

### INDIRECT QUESTIONS.

**361. Indirect Questions.** In the two independent sentences

*Who is coming? I will tell you,*

*Who is coming?* is a Direct Question. If, however, we combine the two sentences so as to make the question a dependent clause, as in

*I will tell you who is coming,*

this dependent interrogative clause, *who is coming*, is called an Indirect Question. As has already been seen, direct questions have their verbs in the indicative. Indirect ques-

tions have their verbs in the subjunctive. Thus, the first sentence above would be

**Quis venit? Tibi dicam;**

while the second would be

**Tibi dicam quis veniat.**

Follow this principle carefully in the next **Exercise**, observing the rule for the tense of the subjunctive given in § 355.

**362. Exercise.** 1. Why was he coming? 2. He told us why he was coming. 3. Who was following us? 4. We did not know (*not know*, *nesciō*) who was following us. 5. Where are you going? 6. They will ask (*rogō*) you (acc.) where you are going. 7. Where am I coming from (*where . . . from*, *unde*). 8. I will not tell them where I am coming from. 9. Why were they setting out? 10. They did not understand why they were setting out.

**363. Exercise.** 1. Quis est? Nōn tibi dicam quis sit. 2. Ubi erās? Nōn mihi dixistī ubi essēs. 3. Dixit nōbīs cūr venīre nōn posset. 4. Tibi dicere nōn possum cūr nōn saepius veniam ut tē videam. 5. Scīsne, amīce, quō veniās?

**364. Exercise.** After changing the principal verbs of 363 as indicated below, make the necessary changes in the subjunctive, as was done in § 360, and translate. 1. Change *est* to *erat*; *nesciō* to *nescivī*. 2. Change *erās* to *es*; *dixistī* to *dicēs*. 3. Change *dixit* to *dixerit*. 4. Change *possum* to *poteram*. 5. Change *Scīs* to *Sciēbās*.

**365. RULE XXIV.** *An indirect question has its verb in the subjunctive.*

## LESSON LXV.

## READING LESSON: GALLIA ANTĪQUA.

Gāius Iūlius Caesar, clārissimus imperātor Rōmānus librum dē bellō Gallicō sērip̄sit, quod ipse in Galliā gesserat. Ex hōc librō haec<sup>1</sup> dē Galliā discimus.

Gallia est omnis dīvīsa in partēs trēs. Ūnam eārum partium incolunt Belgae. Aliam partem incolunt Aquītānī. Tertiam partem īī incolunt quī ipsōrum linguā<sup>2</sup> Celtae, Latīnā linguā Gallī appellantur. Hī omnēs linguā,<sup>3</sup> institūtīs,<sup>3</sup> lēgibus,<sup>3</sup> inter sē<sup>4</sup> differunt. Gallōs ab Aquītānīs Garumna flūmen dīvidit. Gallōs ā Belgīs Matrona et Sēquana flūmina dīvidunt. Hōrum omni-



GALLIC CHIEF

um fortissimī sunt Belgae. Ā cultū atque hūmānitāte prōvinciae longissimē absunt. Minimē saepe ad eōs mercātōrēs commeant, atque ea<sup>1</sup> important quae animōs effemināre solent. Proximī sunt Germānīs, quibuscum<sup>5</sup>

<sup>1</sup> The neuter of an adjective or pronoun, used alone, often means "thing." Thus *haec* here means "these things" (or facts). <sup>2</sup> *Ipsōrum linguā*: in their own language. Literally? <sup>3</sup> In language, etc. The ablative is here used to show in what respect something is true. So also in *linguā*, Note 2. (Ablative of Specification.) <sup>4</sup> *Inter sē*: from one another. Literally? <sup>5</sup> *Quibuscum*: regularly written instead of *cum quibus*.

continenter bellum gerunt. Quā dē causā<sup>1</sup> Helvētīi quoque reliquōs Gallōs virtūte<sup>2</sup> praecedunt, quod ferē cotīdiānīs proeliīs cum Germānīs contendunt.

### LESSON LXVI.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD: PERFECT AND PLUPERFECT TENSES.

**366. Perfect and Pluperfect Subjunctive.** The perfect subjunctive active is formed by adding **-eri-** to the perfect stem, and employing the regular person-endings of the active. Thus,

amāv **eri** m, etc.

fu **eri** m, etc.

The pluperfect subjunctive active is formed by adding **-isse-** to the perfect stem, with the usual person-endings. Thus,

rēx **isse** m, etc.

potu **isse** m, etc.

The perfect and pluperfect subjunctive passive are formed, respectively, by combining the present and the imperfect subjunctive of **sum** with the perfect passive participle. Thus,

Perfect.                    **monitus sim**, etc.

Pluperfect.                **auditus essem**, etc.

**367. Exercise.** Write paradigms of the perfect subjunctive of **sum** and the pluperfect subjunctive of **possum**, both of course active; and of the perfect subjunctive passive of **laudō** and the pluperfect subjunctive passive of **mittō**.

**368. Tense Rule.** The perfect subjunctive, like the present, is used only when the verb of the principal clause is some form denoting present or future time.

<sup>1</sup> Quā dē causā: regularly written instead of dē quā causā.

<sup>2</sup> Virtūte: see Note 3.

The pluperfect subjunctive is used only when the verb of the principal clause is some form denoting past time.

Review the rule given in § 355.

**369. Application of Tense Rule to Indirect Questions.** In indirect questions, the present and imperfect subjunctive denote action occurring AT THE SAME TIME AS that expressed by the main verb; the perfect and pluperfect subjunctive, action occurring BEFORE the time of the main verb.

By this rule *I don't know what he was doing* would have to be **Nesciō quid fēcerit** (not faceret). **Nesciō quid fēcerit** may also, of course, mean *I don't know what he did, I don't know what he has done*, etc. In other forms of the indirect question the tense of the English will generally be a sufficient guide. Observe the operation of this rule in the following Exercise.

**370. Exercise.** Imperātor ā mīlitibus quaesīvit cūr nōn longius prōgressī essent. 2. Quisque intellēxit cūr senātus convēnisset—convenīret. 3. Nesciō cūr proelium commissum nōn sit. 4. Quis cōgnōverat cūr proelium committerētur—commissum esset? 5. Scīsne quae sit altitūdō illius aggeris? 6. Aegrō dīcere possum quot hominēs in hōc oppidō sint. 7. Quaerō ā tē, mīles, quam longae sint fossae. 8. Dīcere non possum, Gāi, id quod mē rogās. 9. Dīcere nōn possum quīd rogāverit. 10. Rogāvit cūr dīcere nōn possēs—possētis quam altī essent mūrī et quō diē cōpiae ex urbe profectae essent.

**371. Exercise.** 1. We don't know who set the town on fire. 2. They asked us what place we had reached on our journey. 3. I will tell the hostages why I have followed them. 4. Will you think about what you have done? 5. Did you think about what you were doing?

6. Do you know by whom the town was set on fire?  
 7. He told me where the troops had been led from-here (hinc).  
 8. Do you know where they are being led from?  
 9. I don't know where they were led from.  
 10. Did the king's messenger inquire of (ā) you what you had written?

### LESSON LXVII.

IRREGULAR VERBS : *VOLŌ, NŌLŌ, MĀLŌ*. THE COMPLEMENTARY INFINITIVE.

**372.** *Volō, Nōlō, Mālō*. Learn the following forms of *volō*, *wish, be willing*; *nōlō*, *not wish, be unwilling*; *mālō*, *prefer, would rather*.

#### PRESENT INDICATIVE.

<i>volō</i>	<i>nōlō</i> (= <i>nōn volō</i> )	<i>mālō</i> (= <i>magis volō</i> )
<i>vīs</i>	<i>nōn vīs</i>	<i>māvīs</i>
<i>vult</i>	<i>nōn vult</i>	<i>māvult</i>
<i>volumus</i>	<i>nōlumus</i>	<i>mālumus</i>
<i>vultis</i>	<i>nōn vultis</i>	<i>māvultis</i>
<i>volunt</i>	<i>nōlunt</i>	<i>mālunt</i>

#### PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE.

<i>velim</i>	<i>velīmus</i>	<i>nōlim, etc.</i>	<i>mālim, etc.</i>
<i>velis</i>	<i>velītis</i>		
<i>velit</i>	<i>velint</i>		

#### IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE.

<i>vellem</i>	<i>vellēmus</i>	<i>nōllem, etc.</i>	<i>māllem, etc.</i>
<i>vellēs</i>	<i>vellētis</i>		
<i>vellet</i>	<i>vellent</i>		

The imperfect and future indicative of these verbs are formed regularly, after the method of the third conjuga-

tion, from the stems *vol-*, *nōl-*, and *māl-*, as *volam*, *nōlēbam*, etc. See §§ 83 and 89.

The perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect tenses are formed regularly from the stems *volu-*, *nōlu-*, and *mālu-*. The present infinitives are *velle*, *nōlle*, *mālle*. Review § 353, and notice that the rule for formation of the imperfect subjunctive by the aid of the present infinitive active applies to all verbs.

**373. Complementary Infinitive.** *Volō*, *nōlō*, and *mālō*, like *possum* and *cōnor*, may take an infinitive to complete their meaning. This is called the Complementary Infinitive. Thus,

*Vīsne rūs īre?* *Do you wish to go to the country?*

**374. Exercise.** Tell where each of the following forms is made; tell whether it is formed like a regular verb or not, and translate, unless it be a subjunctive.

1. *Vīs*; *nōn vis*; *volēbas*. 2. *Vult*; *volet*; *velit*.  
3. *Volō*; *māllem*; *volumus*. 4. *Mālam*; *vultis*; *māluērunt*. 5. *Vellēmus*; *voluerimus*; *voluissēmus*; *velle*.

**375. Exercise.** 1. We wished to come. 2. They were unwilling to fight. 3. The citizens prefer to make peace. 4. Shall you be unwilling to send away those men of yours? 5. I don't know why you wish to return home. 6. He had been unwilling to come with me (*mēcum*.<sup>1</sup>) 7. He told why he did not wish to hear your voice. 8. Then I asked him why he had not chosen rather (*preferred*) to withdraw. 9. I will try to do that which you have wished. 10. Don't you wish to come with us?

---

<sup>1</sup> With the personal pronouns *ego* and *tū*, with the reflexive *suī*, and generally with the relative *quī*, *cum* is enclitic (see § 25).

## LESSON LXVIII.

IRREGULAR VERBS: *FĪŌ*. THE SUBJUNCTIVE OF RESULT.

**376. FĪŌ.** The verb *fĭō* is found only in the tenses formed from the present stem. It means *to become, to happen, to be made, to be done*. It thus takes the place of the passive of *faciō*, which is not used in the present, imperfect, and future tenses. See § 182.

For the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect tenses of *fĭō*, the regular passive forms of *faciō* are used: *factus sum*, etc.

The indicative and subjunctive of *fĭō* are regular, as of the fourth conjugation, except that the vowel *i* remains long before another vowel unless the *i* is followed by *-er-*, forming an exception to § 12, *b*. Thus,

*fĭunt*; *fĭet*; but *fĭerent*.

The present infinitive is irregular: *fĭerĭ*.

**377. Exercise.** Write a paradigm of the present, imperfect, and future indicative, and the present and imperfect subjunctive of *fĭō*.

**378. Subjunctive of Result.** We have already seen how the subjunctive introduced by *ut* may express *aim* or *purpose*. The subjunctive with *ut* is also used to express the *consequence* or *result* of an action, which, of course, may or may not be what was aimed at. Thus, in the sentence,

*Puer tam celeriter cucurrit ut exanimārētur*, *The boy ran so fast that he got out of breath*,

it is unlikely that getting out of breath was the boy's *purpose*, but is evidently the *result* of his rapid pace. On the other hand, in



**Militēs tam fortiter pūgnāvērunt ut laudārentur,** *The soldiers fought so valiantly that they were praised,*

it is quite likely that they *may* have fought with the idea of receiving commendation; though the Latin does not definitely state this, but merely that the giving of praise was a *consequence* of their conduct, whatever its motive.

**379. Differences in Constructions.** (a) While the negative of the subjunctive of purpose is **nē**, the negative of the subjunctive of result is **ut nōn**. Thus,

Purpose. **Hōc facimus, nē culpēmur,** *we do this that we may not be blamed.*

Result. **Hōc tam bene facimus, ut nōn culpēmur,** *We do this so well that we are not blamed.*

(b) The subjunctive of result is very often preceded by some word in the main clause meaning *so, such,* or the like; as **tam** in the sentences above.

**380. Result Clauses Used with Certain Verbs.** A clause of result is used as the subject of verbs meaning *to happen.* Thus,

**Accidit ut esset plēna lūna,** (*It happened that there was a full moon.*

Notice that there is no "it" in the Latin, the real construction being

Subject.	Predicate.
<i>That-there-was-a-full-moon</i>	<i>  happened.</i>

**381. Tense Rule.** The rules already learned in §§ 355 and 368 apply also to the subjunctive of result.

**382. Exercise.** 1. *Accidit ut eō tempore is p̄nceps totius Galliae esset.* 2. *Ēō cōsiliō tē dē hīs rēbus certiorēm fēcī, ut civitātem ex hostibus servārem.* 3. *Sic rem gessī, civēs, ut omnīs ā commūnī periculō dēfenderem.*

4. Hōc cōnsilium cēpī, ut vōs omnīs ā periculō hostium dēfenderem. 5. Quis vōs, cīvēs, dē nostrā caede certiorēs fēcit?

**383. Exercise.** Distinguish carefully between purpose and result clauses, especially in the negative.

1. It happens that the leadership of Gaul is held by two chiefs, one of whom (of whom one) is friendly to us, the other hostile. 2. Will not this be done with this design (abl. without *cum*), that the prisoners may not be freed? 3. It happened that a meeting of the chiefs was being called by the consul. 4. Let all these things be done in-such-a-way that no one may wish to withdraw. 5. These things were done that you might not wish to leave the city. 6. We shall inform Caesar of (*dē*) this matter. 7. Will they not be informed of the departure of the Gauls? 8. Several of the Gauls had been informed of our departure. 9. By this misfortune it happened that we did not become Roman citizens. 10. Was not this plan formed in the general council of the Gauls?

### LESSON LXIX.

IRREGULAR VERBS: *FERŌ*. QUESTIONS WITH *NUM*.

**384. Ferō. Present Stem.** *Ferō* means *bear, carry, bring, etc.* The tenses of the indicative and subjunctive are regular, with the following exception: in the present indicative and the imperfect subjunctive, the stem-vowel is dropped before *r*, *s*, or *t*. Thus, *ferrēs* (not *fererēs*); *fers* (not *feris*); *fertur* (not *feritur*); etc.

The same principle applies to the present infinitive, which is *ferre* (not *ferere*); in the passive, *ferri*.

**385. Exercise.** Write paradigms of the present indicative and imperfect subjunctive of **ferō**, active and passive. (The imperfect and future indicative and the present subjunctive are regular as of the third conjugation: **ferēbam**, **feram**, etc.)

**386. Perfect and Supine Stems.** The perfect stem of **ferō** is **tul-**, the supine stem **lāt-**. The perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect are formed regularly from these stems.

**387. Exercise.** Write a synopsis, that is, the first person singular of each tense of **ferō**, active and passive, indicative and subjunctive, formed from the perfect and supine stems.

**388. Questions with Num.** Questions of the general form

*You do not wish to come, do you?*

are introduced by **num**. The *not . . . do you* of the English is all represented by the **num** in Latin. Thus, the above would be

*Num venire vīs?*

**389. Exercise.** The words to be translated by **num** are in italics.

1. The grain is *not* being gathered, *is it?* 2. You will *not* report this matter, *will you?* 3. They asked why we were suffering slavery [at the hands] of the Romans. 4. The bridge which we made over that river will *not* have been removed, *will it?* 5. Then they wished to retreat. 6. Did you not ask why the Romans had made war on the Gauls? 7. I neither asked why they were making war nor do I wish to know. 8. For I prefer to be informed by others. 9. They have *not* brought a larger supply of grain to us than to them, *have they?* 10. And they do *not* wish to make war on the Roman people, *do they?*

**390. Exercise.** 1. Num pedem referent cīvēs Rōmānī? 2. Omnīs rēs cōnferant quae in domibus suis sunt. 3. Nūntium ā captīvīs ad cīvīs refert: 4. Quid, serve, hūc adfers? 5. Militēs sīgna īnferre vult. 6. Neque sciunt cūr hanc rem perferant. 7. Hostīs vestrōs sustulī, ne in perīculō essētis. 8. Haec ad tē dētulī ut bellam illī populō īnferres. 9. Nam nōn sine proeliō rēs pūblica dēfendī potest. 10. Num haec mē ad imperātōrem dēferre vultis?

### LESSON LXX.

#### READING LESSON: HĒLVETIŌRUM CONIŪRATIŌ.

Apud Hēlvētios longē nōbilissimus fuit et dītissimus Orgetorix. Is coniūratiōnem nōbilitātis fēcit. Cīvibus<sup>1</sup> suis persuāsit ut dē fīnibus suis cum omnibus cōpiīs exīrent.<sup>2</sup> Undique locī naturā Hēlvētii continentur. Ūnā ex parte<sup>3</sup> flūmine Rhōnō lātissimō atque altissimō continentur, quī agrum Hēlvētium ā Germānīs dīvidit; alterā ex parte monte Iūrā altissimō, quī est inter Sēquanōs et Hēlvētios; tertiā ex parte lacū Lemannō et flūmine Rhodanō, quī prōvinciam Rōmānam ab Hēlvētīs dīvidit. Ita fīēbat ut nōn facile fīnitimīs bellum īnferre possent. Prō<sup>4</sup> multitudīne hominum angustōs fīnīs habēbant. Tum multās rēs comparābant. Iūmentōrum et carrōrum quam<sup>5</sup> māximum numerum coēmēbant. Sēmentīs quam<sup>5</sup> māximās faciēbant. Cum proximīs cīvītātibus pācem et amīcitiā cōnfirmābant. Bienniō eae rēs cōnfici poterant.

<sup>1</sup> *Persuādeō* takes its object in the dative.

<sup>2</sup> From *exeō*.

<sup>3</sup> *Ūnā ex parte*: *on one side*. Literally?

<sup>4</sup> *In comparation with*.

<sup>5</sup> *Quam* with a superlative means *as possible*. Thus, *quam māximum numerum* means *as great a number as possible*.

## LESSON LXXI.

IRREGULAR VERBS: *Eō*.

**391. The Verb *Eō*.** The present stem of *eō*, *go*, is *i-*. This is changed to *e-* before *a*, *o*, or *u*. Thus,

*eam*, *eō*, *eunt*; but *imus*.

The imperfect indicative is *ībam*, etc.

The future indicative is *ībō*, etc.

The perfect stem is *i-*. Sometimes *v* is added, making it *iv-*, but the other is more common.

*ii-* often contracts to *ī-*, giving *isse* for *iisse* (or *ivisse*), etc.

**392. Exercise.** Write a paradigm of the present indicative, and the present and imperfect subjunctive of *eō*, treating it as a verb of the fourth conjugation except in the cases mentioned above. Write, also, a synopsis of those tenses of the indicative and subjunctive which are formed from the perfect stem. Passive forms need not be given, though they are sometimes found.

**393. Exercise.** 1. We have gone many miles to-day. 2. To-morrow we shall go from home. 3. Yesterday the army (*āgmen*) went through the fields of the Gauls without any mischief. 4. On the following day we asked them where they had gone. 5. Why do you not ask me where I am going? 6. We do not know where they went. 7. They did not know where we had gone. 8. Do you wish to go with me? 9. They are going to a mountain the character of which they do not know. 10. Do you not know the character of the place to which you are going?

**394. Exercise.** 1. Quot mīlia passuum hōdiē istis? 2. Ad fossam pervēnimus quae ducentōs pedēs pertinēbat. 3. Nam militēs nocte proximā collem mūniverant in quō

summō castra pōnēbant. 4. Postrīdiē eius diēi per finīs hostium māgnīs itineribus ibāmus, ad urbem quandam quae ab inimicissimīs Gallīs incolēbātur. 5. Herī opus cōnfēcī tōtum quod tū mē facere vōlēbās. 6. Nātūram locī timēmus per quem domum ibimus. 7. Angustus enim est atque pālūdibus undique continētur. 8. Vix per hunc locum ad salūtem perveniēmus. 9. Nūntium quem ad mē attulistī herī ā complūribus aliīs audīveram. 10. Neque meliōrēs neque fortiōrēs virī invenīrī possunt quam iī quōs in nostro exercitū habēmus.

## LESSON LXXII.

### THE IMPERATIVE MOOD.

**395. The Imperative Mood.** The Imperative is the name given to those forms of the verb which are used in giving direct commands, as

*Advance! Break through the line!*

**396. Formation.** The imperative is formed by adding the following terminations to the present stem, as found by removing the termination **-re** (or **-se**) of the present infinitive active.

		<b>Active.</b>	
		<b>SINGULAR.</b>	<b>PLURAL.</b>
Present.	2.	— <sup>1</sup>	<b>-te</b>
Future.	{ 2.	<b>-tō</b>	<b>-tōte</b>
	{ 3.	<b>-tō</b>	<b>-ntō</b>
		<b>Passive.</b>	
Present.	2.	<b>-re</b>	<b>-minī</b>
Future.	{ 2.	<b>-tor</b>	(wanting)
	{ 3.	<b>-tor</b>	<b>-ntor</b>

<sup>1</sup> The second person singular of the active imperative has no termination, being the simple stem; as **amā** (from **amāre**), **es** (from **esse**), etc.

The third conjugation changes the stem-vowel to *-i-* in all forms except the second person singular present, where it is *-e-*, and the third person plural future, where it becomes *-u-*.

The fourth conjugation adds *-u-* to the stem-vowel in the third person plural future.

**397. Exercise.** Write paradigms of the imperative, active and passive, of *armō*, *arm*, *dēleō*, *destroy*, *capiō*, *take*, and *audiō*, *hear*.

**398. Imperative of the Irregular Verbs.** The imperative of *sum* is formed by adding the terminations to the present stem, *es-*. The third person plural of the future is *suntō*.

*Possum*, *volō*, and *mālō* have no imperative.

*Dīcō*, *dūcō*, *faciō*, and *ferō* have *dīc*, *dūc*, *fac*, and *fer* in the singular of the present, instead of *dīce*, etc.

The other forms of the imperative of *ferō* follow the principle stated in § 384.

The imperative of *fīō* follows the rule for the fourth conjugation active. See § 376 for the quantity of the *-ī-*.

*Nōlō* has an imperative like the fourth conjugation, with the exception of the form *nōluntō*.

*Eō* has an imperative of the fourth conjugation. It follows the principle given in § 391 with regard to the form of the stem-vowel.

**399. Exercise.** Write paradigms of the imperative active of *sum* and *eō*, and the imperative active and passive of *ferō*.

**400. Translation of the Imperative.** The present imperative is translated by the ordinary English imperative. The future is translated by *you, he, they, etc., shall*;

as in the following translation of the imperative of *eō*, go.

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
Present.	2. <i>go</i> (said to one person).	<i>go</i> (said to more than one person).
Future.	{ 2. <i>you shall go</i> (to one person).	<i>you shall go</i> (to more than one).
	{ 3. <i>he, she, it, shall go.</i>	<i>they shall go.</i>

**401. Use of the Imperative.** The present imperative is the form most commonly used. Some verbs, however, use the future either exclusively or commonly. Laws and solemn commands employ the future imperative.

**402. Exercise.** 1. Venī mēcum. 2. Īte, amīcī, domum. 3. Habētō tuās rēs (*property*). 4. Sequimini, mīlitēs. 5. Cōnāre, puer, omne cōficere opus tuum. 6. Cīvīs armātē, nam hostēs appropinquant. 7. Armāmini, cīvēs, ut rem pūblicam dēfendātis. 8. Dēlēte Carthāginem, populī Rōmānī hostem. 9. Vestrōs exercitūs atque vestra praesidia hostibus ostendite. 10. Castra mūnīte, mīlitēs, hostēs enim mox venient ut vōs vestrōsque interficiant.

## LESSON LXXIII.

### THE INFINITIVE MOOD.

**403. Formation of the Infinitive.** There are three tenses of the infinitive; present, perfect, and future.

(a) The terminations of the present have already been learned. Review § 337.

(b) The perfect infinitive active is formed by adding *-isse* to the perfect stem, as *amāv isse*, *to have loved*.

(c) The perfect infinitive passive is formed by combining



the present infinitive of **sum** with the perfect passive participle, as **amātus, -a, -um esse, to have been loved.**

(*d*) The future infinitive active is formed by adding **esse** to the future participle, as **amātūrus, -a, -um esse, to be about to love.** (The future participle is formed by substituting **-ūrus** for **-us** in the perfect passive participle.)

(*e*) The future infinitive passive is formed by adding the present infinitive passive of **ēō** to the accusative supine (see § 170), as **amātum irī, to be about to be loved.**

**404. Exercise.** Write complete paradigms of the infinitive, active and passive, of **moneō, advise; dicō, say; capiō, take; and audiō, hear.**

**405. Uses of the Infinitive.** There are four common uses of the infinitive in Latin :

(*a*) The Infinitive as Complement, which has been already explained. Review § 373. Besides the verbs there mentioned, the complementary infinitive is used after

**dēbeō, ought; audeō, dare; cōstituō, decide; incipiō, begin,** and other verbs which, like these, are felt to be incomplete without the name of some other action to which they lead.

(*b*) The infinitive may be used as the Subject of another verb, particularly of **sum.** Thus,

**Prō patriā mori est decōrum, To die for (one's) native land is noble.**

(*c*) The infinitive is sometimes used instead of a past tense of the indicative, in spirited description. This, called the Historical Infinitive, need not be considered here.

(*d*) The infinitive is used in indirect quotations. This use is explained in the following section. Only the uses described in (*a*) and (*d*) are employed in the exercises of this book.

**406. Indirect Quotations.** If someone makes a statement, such as

*Cicero is consul,*

the statement may be reported in two ways. We may give the EXACT WORDS of the speaker, using quotation marks. Thus,

*He said, "Cicero is consul."*

This is called a Direct Quotation.

Secondly, we may give the SUBSTANCE of the remark, but change the FORM of the expression. Thus,

(a) *He said that Cicero was consul;* or

(b) *He said Cicero to be consul.*

This is called an Indirect Quotation.

Indirect quotations in Latin are always like (b) above. It is therefore necessary to change an English sentence beginning "he said that," etc., into this form before it can be translated into Latin. Thus, the above sentence would be Latin

**Dixit Cicerōnem cōnsulem esse.**

Notice that, in accordance with the rule in Latin, **Cicerōnem**, the subject of the infinitive **esse**, is in the accusative. **Cōnsulem** is a predicate noun agreeing with the subject, **Cicerōnem**. (See § 73.)

**407. Exercise.** (a) Distinguish complementary infinitives from infinitives in indirect quotations. Translate the latter first literally, then in the form of (a) in § 406.

1. Dīcit hostīs fugere. 2. Fugere nōlumus. 3. Dīs grātiās agere dēbēmus. 4. Dīcit nōs dīs grātiās agere dēbere. 5. Ēruptiōnem facere incipiunt. 6. Dīcō eōs ēruptiōnem facere. 7. Bellum Rōmānīs inferre cōstitūimus. 8. Quis dīcit nōs bellum Rōmānīs inferre?

9. Ego dicō vōs bellum Rōmānīs inferre cōstituere.

10. Dicunt hostīs in proeliō plūrima vulnera accipere.

(b) Change the following sentences into the form of (b) in § 405, then translate into Latin.

11. He says that the soldiers are weary. 12. They say that their friends wish to go. 13. We say that the soldiers are fortifying the camp. 14. The soldiers say that the general is brave. 15. The general says that the lieutenant dares to make an attack on the enemy's line-of-battle.

**408. RULE XXV.** *The subject of the infinitive is in the accusative case.*

## LESSON LXXIV.

### THE INFINITIVE MOOD, CONTINUED.

**409. Tense of the Infinitive.** (a) The present infinitive denotes action occurring AT THE SAME TIME as that indicated by the verb of saying. Thus, in the sentence in § 406, it is clear that the speaker said that Cicero was consul *at that particular time*. The translation, then, would be made by the present infinitive, as given above.

(b) If, however, we had

*He said that Cicero had been consul,*

it would mean that Cicero had held the consulship BEFORE the time of speaking. Action occurring before the time of speaking is expressed by the perfect infinitive. Thus,

**Dixit Cicerōnem cōsulem fuisse** (literally, *He said Cicero to have been consul*).

(c) The future infinitive denotes action occurring AFTER the time of the verb of saying. The construction is

rendered in English by the auxiliaries *shall* and *should*, *will* and *would*. Thus,

**Dixit Cicerōnem cōsulem futūrum esse, He said that Cicero would be consul** (literally, *He said Cicero to be about to be consul*).

Here *futūrum* agrees like an adjective with the subject accusative, **Cicerōnem**. In the future active and perfect passive infinitives, the participle always agrees, like a predicate adjective, with the subject of the infinitive.

**410. Exercise.** Change the following sentences into forms capable of literal translation into Latin; then translate.

1. He says that the enemy hold the town. 2. They say that the soldiers have fortified the camp. 3. Didn't you say that the way was long? 4. I said that we had marched many miles. 5. He says that the troops will come. 6. He said that they would come.

**411. Exercise.** Translate each sentence first in the general form of (*b*) in § 406, and afterward in the form of (*a*).

1. Dīcit explōrātōrem Gallum esse. 2. Dīcit explōrātōrēs rem ad imperātōrem dētulisse. 3. Dīxit hōc latus castrōrum longissimum esse. 4. Dīxit lēgātum subsidium mīsisse. 5. Dīcunt Gallōs aedificia incēnsūrōs esse. 6. Dīxit explōrātōrēs aquam petītūros esse. 7. Dīcimus obsidēs acceptum īrī. 8. Dīxit lēgātōs missum īrī. 9. Dīcunt Gallōs obsidēs missūrōs esse. 10. Dīxistīne eōs obsidēs mīsisse?

**412. Exercise.** 1. He says that reinforcements will be sent. 2. You said that you would come. 3. They say that we set the building on fire. 4. Who says that the scouts are coming? 5. Who had said that the scouts were coming?

## LESSON LXXV.

## READING LESSON: MORS ORGETORĪGIS.

Orgetorīx Helvētius rēgnum in cīvitāte suā occupāre volēbat, et ob eam causam coniūrātiōnem aliōrum prīncipum Galliae fēcerat, quī idem<sup>1</sup> in suis quoque cīvitātibus facere volēbant. Hī erant Dumnorīx Aeduus, et Casticus Sēquanus. Aeduī et Sēquanī erant cīvitātēs Galliae potentēs.

Helvētiī autem nescīverant quid Orgetorīx facere vellet. Ea rēs est iīs per indicium cōnūtiāta. Tum Orgetorīgem ex vinculis causam dīcere<sup>2</sup> coēgērunt.

Vēnit diēs causae dīctiōnis. Ad iūdicium Orgetorīx hominum mīlia decem undique coēgit, quī eum periculō cēripuerunt. Tum cīvitās armīs iūs suum exsequī cōnāta est. Subitō advēnit nūntius quī Orgetorīgem mortuum esse dīxit. Neque quisquam dīcere potuit quō modō mortuus esset.

## LESSON LXXVI.

## THE INFINITIVE, CONCLUDED.

**413. Verbs Followed by the Indirect Discourse.** The general name for the accusative and infinitive construction after a verb of saying is the Indirect Discourse, or Oblique Narration.

Other verbs than *dīcō* take this construction. It is used with verbs of SAYING, THINKING, and FEELING, to describe that which is said, thought, or felt. (Such are

<sup>1</sup> Neuter: *the same thing.*

<sup>2</sup> *To plead his case.*

verbs meaning *tell, inform, think, suppose, believe, feel, see, know, hear.*)

**414. The Use of *Negō*.** Instead of *dīcō . . . nōn* in such a sentence as

*He says that he will not come,*

Latin prefers to use *negō, deny*. Thus,

**Negat sē ventūrum esse** (not, *Dīcit sē nōn ventūrum esse*).

**415. The Use of *Sē*.** When *he, she, it, or they* in the indirect quotation refers to the SUBJECT of the verb of saying, thinking, or feeling, the accusative of the reflexive *sui* is used. When someone else than the subject is meant, forms of *is* are to be employed. Thus,

*He said that he would come, Dixit sē ventūrum esse,*

means that the speaker said that *he himself* would come. If, however, we had

**Dixit eum ventūrum esse,**

it would mean that he said that *some other person* would come.

**416. Exercise.** 1. I believe that we shall conquer. 2. Do you think that they are about to make a sortie from the gates? 3. Did you suppose that we should rout the enemy's infantry to-day? 4. They did not think they were heard by the children. 5. They said that they would not inform their father.

**417. Complementary Infinitive and Clauses of Purpose.** Review §§ 351; 373; 404, *a*. In the following Exercise, distinguish carefully between complementary infinitives and clauses of purpose, and remember that the latter take the subjunctive in Latin.

Add to the list of verbs given in §§ 373 and 404 *iubeō*, *bid*, *command*, *order*.

**418. Exercise.** 1. Do you wish to receive favors from us? 2. They came to conquer our native land. 3. I do not wish you to believe that the Gauls were routed. 4. He commanded his lieutenants to send reinforcements. 5. Reinforcements will come soon to save the redoubt.

**419. Indirect Statements and Indirect Questions.** Review §§ 361; 405; 413. In the following Exercise, distinguish carefully between indirect statements and indirect questions. Observe that the indirect question always has some interrogative word, as *why*, *whether*, *who*, etc., to introduce it, and that the indirect statement is frequently introduced by *that*.

**420. Exercise.** 1. He said that he wished to thank us for (*prō*) our kindness. 2. I don't know why he didn't thank you yesterday. 3. The general has been informed that the army has suffered another disaster. 4. Did you hear what disaster it had suffered? 5. I saw that they were placing redoubts at-the-ends-of the ditches (see § 212); but I did not ask why the redoubts were being placed there.

**421. Exercise.** 1. Quis crēdidit eum ab illō adulēscēte interfectum irī? 2. Ā Gallīs Rōmānōs pellī posse numquam putāvī. 3. Quis rogāvit quot vulnera in illō proeliō ācerrimō ā mīlitibus accepta essent? 4. Ostende mihi, dēfesse mīles, illud vulnus quod accēpistī. 5. Līberī crēdunt frātrem suum fortissimum esse hominum.

## LESSON LXXVII.

## THE GERUND AND GERUNDIVE.

**422. The Gerund.** The gerund is a verbal noun corresponding to the English infinitive in *-ing*. It is declined as a neuter of the second declension, in the genitive, dative, accusative, and ablative singular only.

The base is formed by adding **-nd-** to the present stem, which is shortened or otherwise modified as shown below.

	End of Present Stem of Verb.	Base of Gerund.	Examples.
Conj. I.	-ā-	-and-	amandī, <i>of loving.</i>
Conj. II.	-ē- }	-end-	{ monendō, <i>by advising.</i>
Conj. III.	-e- }		
Conj. III, verbs in <b>-iō-</b> .	-ie- }	-iend-	{ ad mūniendum, <i>for fortifying.</i>
Conj. IV.	-ī- }		

**423. Exercise.** Write paradigms of the gerund of *superō*, *timeō*, *petō*, *audiō*.

In the first and second conjugations the stem-vowels, **-ā-**, **-ē-**, are shortened to **-a-**, **-e-**, as shown in the above examples.

The gerund of *eō* is *eundī*, etc.

**424. Exercise.** 1. *Faciendō discimus.* 2. *Oculī ad<sup>1</sup> videndum factī sunt.* 3. *Diēs conveniendō dicta est (appointed).* 4. *Opus mūniendī difficillimum erat.* 5. *Spem eundī nōn habēmus.* 6. *Captīvī videndī sōlem nūllam spem habēbant.* 7. *Hōc flūmen transeundō statim*

<sup>1</sup> Ad with gerund or gerundive is to be translated *for*.



fugere poterimus. 8. Beneficia tua accipiendō servī tuī factī sumus. 9. Māgnam spem habent Gallōs superandī. 10. Diem dīcet imperātor captīvōs omnēs interficiendī.

**425. The Gerundive.** Transitive verbs with an object usually employ a form called the Gerundive instead of the gerund. The gerundive has the same base as the gerund, but it is completely inflected as an adjective of the first and second declensions.

The use of the gerundive may best be understood by comparing two expressions. Thus, the phrase

*the fear of losing money*

may be translated in either of the following ways:

(a) Gerund:     **metus pecūniam āmittendī.**

(b) Gerundive: To change to this construction, put BOTH words in the CASE of the gerund in the first sentence; but make the gerundive agree in GENDER and NUMBER with the noun. Thus,

**metus pecūniae āmittendae.**

Both (a) and (b) are rendered alike in English, although a literal rendering of (b) would be, *fear of to-be-lost money*.

The gerundive, as has been said, is usual in the case of transitive verbs with an object; after a preposition it is the only construction allowed. Thus,

*for completing these things, ad hās rēs cōficiendās* (never *cōficiendum*).

**426. Exercise.** Rewrite sentences 6–10 of Exercise 424, changing from the gerund to the gerundive construction.

## LESSON LXXVIII.

## PARTICIPLES.

**427. The Participle.** A participle is a verbal adjective. Thus, in the expression *I saw the boys playing ball*, the participle *playing* is clearly a verb, because it has an object, *ball*; at the same time it is an adjective, because it describes *boys*—they are *playing* boys, not working boys or sleeping boys. Participles in Latin have three tenses: present, perfect, and future.

**428. Formation of the Present Participle.** The present participle is declined as an adjective of the third declension, having one termination. See § 188. The stem is formed by adding **-nti-** to the present stem of the verb, which is shortened or otherwise modified as in the case of the gerund. See § 422. The nominative singular is formed by dropping the **-i-** of the stem and adding **s**; *amō* giving *amāns*, *capiō* *capiēns*, etc. Thus,

	End of Present Stem of Verb.	Stem of Present Participle.	Nominative Singular.
Conj. I.	-ā-	-anti-	-āns.
Conj. II.	-ē- }	-enti-	-ēns.
Conj. III.	-e- }		
Conj. III, verbs in -iō.	-ie- }	-ienti-	-iēns.
Conj. IV.	-ī- }		

**429. Exercise.** Write a paradigm of the present participle of *regō*, *rule*.

**430. Use of the Present Participle.** The present participle in Latin corresponds to the English present ac-

tive participle in *-ing*; but the English participle is less precise than the Latin. Thus, in the sentence

*The child ran home, crying,*

it is clear that the child cried WHILE he was running; but in the sentence

*Passing the first door, he stopped at the second,*

the meaning is evidently that he FIRST passed one door, THEN stopped at another. In Latin, only the first of the above sentences would use a present participle. In other words, the present participle in Latin must denote an ac-



YOUNG ROMANS PLAYING BALL

tion OCCURRING AT THE SAME TIME as the action of the main verb.

**431. Exercise.** Select those sentences in which the participle might be literally translated into Latin, according to the principle just explained. The sentences are not to be translated.

1. The soldiers fell, fighting bravely. 2. Feeling that the request was wrong, he refused to grant it. 3. Despairing of success, they gave up the attempt. 4. Falling on his knees, he begged for mercy. 5. Passing a shop window, I was attracted by an advertisement. 6. Passing

the church, he reached the corner. 7. Coming home unexpectedly, he found the house on fire. 8. I bought this magazine, coming home from the office. 9. I spent six weeks in Maine, hunting. 10. They rushed up to us, shouting and gesticulating.

**432. Agreement of the Participle.** Since the participle is an adjective, it agrees in gender, number, and case with the word which it describes. Thus,

*āgmīna sequentia*,<sup>1</sup> *the armies following* (nom. or acc. pl. neuter).

*fēminārum flentium*, *of the weeping women* (gen. pl. feminine).

**433. Exercise.** 1. *Militēs fortiter pugnantes pedem referēbant.* 2. *Virōs magnas res audentes laudamus.* 3. *Illum discēdere cōnantem continuit.* 4. *Hostēs venientes ab exploratoribus videntur.* 5. *Militibus proficiscentibus magna praemia dabuntur.*

**434. Present Participle of *Eō*.** The stem of the present participle of *eō* is *eunti-*, but the nominative singular is *-iēns*; also, of course, the neuter accusative singular.

**435. Exercise.** Write a paradigm of the present participle of *eō*.

## LESSON LXXIX.

### PARTICIPLES, CONTINUED.

**436. The Perfect Participle.** Review the rules for the formation of the perfect participle, found in §§ 169 and 170. This participle is regularly passive, and corre-

---

<sup>1</sup> Deponent verbs have active participles as well as those of passive form.

sponds to the English past participle, or to the longer form with the auxiliary *having been*. Thus,

**vīsus, -a, -um, seen, or having been seen** (not “having seen”).

In deponent verbs, however, the perfect participle is active. (See § 331.) Thus,

**secūtus, -a, -um, having followed** (not “having been followed”).

**437. Exercise.** Distinguish carefully between deponent and other verbs.

1. Lēgātī ad Caesarem missī auxilium petīvērunt.  
 2. Questī quod (*because*) auxilium nōn datum erat dē conciliō discessērunt. 3. Mortuī militēs laudantur. 4. Moriēns imperātor dīxit sē vītam prō patriā esse datūrum.  
 5. Auxilium ab iīs petītum nōn dabitur. 6. Lēgātus negat sē condiціōnēs pācis ab iīs postulātās audīvisse. 7. Rōmānī calamitātibus doctī obsidēs retinent quōrum libertātem postulant Gallī. 8. Obsidēs ā Crassō retentī nūntiant eī Gallōs ante lūcem impetum in castra factūrōs esse. 9. Equitēs hostēs secūtī māgnum numerum eōrum interficiunt. 10. Prōgressī autem ad castra ab iīs relicta nihil inveniunt.

**438. Ablative Absolute.** When the participle cannot be made to agree with any noun in the sentence, a device called the Ablative Absolute enables us to keep the participle in the tense desired. Thus, if we have the sentence

*Hearing this, he went away,*

we know that *hearing* is really equivalent to *having heard* (§ 430). But *having heard* is active, and there is no perfect active participle of *audiō*. We therefore recast the sentence in the form

*This having been heard, he went away,*

and translate *this having been heard* in the ablative. Thus,  
*Hōc audītō discessit.*

**439. Exercise.** Recast the participial phrases as in the preceding example, and translate by the ablative absolute.

1. Having conquered the Gauls, Caesar will return to Italy. 2. Seeing the danger, at daybreak the enemy retreated. 3. Having kept back the hostages, they feared his arrival. 4. Not having sent reinforcements, the lieutenant knew that he would not be praised. 5. Having destroyed Carthage, the Romans thought a great danger had been removed.

**440. Exercise.** Notice that the ablative absolute is not used when the participle can agree with the subject, object, or other noun of the sentence with which it is connected.

1. Gallīs superātīs, Caesar in Ītaliām profectus est. 2. Gallī superātī condiciōnēs pācis accēpērunt quae ā Caesare cōstitūtāe erant. 3. Caesar in Ītaliām profectus domum nōn multīs diēbus pervēnit. 4. Caesare in Ītaliām profectō, Gallī bellum Germānīs īferre parābant. 5. Quis Gallōs superātōs dēfendet?

## LESSON LXXX.

### READING LESSON: HELVĒTIŌRUM PROPECTIŌ.

Post Orgetorigis mortem Helvētīi nihilō minus ē fīnibus suis exīre cōnantur. Ut spem reditiōnis tollerent, oppida et vicōs et prīvata aedificia omnia incendunt; frūmentum combūrunt. Sic parātiōres erant ad perīcula subeunda.<sup>1</sup> Quisque trium mēnsium molita cibāria domō efferre iussus est.

<sup>1</sup> Translate this gen. by *for*.

Cum Helvētiīs ībant Rauracī et Tulingī et Latobrigī finitimī; et Boiōs, quī trāns Rhēnum incoluerant et in agrum Nōricum trānsierant, sociōs <sup>1</sup> sibi adsciscunt.

Erant itinera duo quibus domō exire potuērunt. Ūnum, per Sēquanōs, angustum et difficile erat, inter montem Iūram et flūmen Rhodanum. Alterum, per prōvinciam Rōmānam, multō facilius erat, quod ibi Rhodanus flūmen vadis trānsiri potest. Itaque hōc itinere proficisci volēbant.

### LESSON LXXXI.

#### PARTICIPLES, CONCLUDED.

#### 441. Present Participles in the Ablative Absolute.

These are not so common as perfect participles in this construction; still they are found. Thus,

Rōmānī signa intulērunt, Gallis ācriter *resistentibus*, *The Romans advanced to the attack, the Gauls bravely resisting.*

**442. Exercise.** 1. Hostibus appropinquantibus, nostrī cōnātu dēstitērunt. 2. Militibus castra mūnientibus, Gallī oppidum expūgnāre cōnābantur. 3. Imperātōre militēs suōs cohortante, aciēs ā lēgātō īnstruēbātur. 4. Tē, Catilīna, sublātō, tanta pericula nōn verēbimur. 5. Catilīnā proficiscente omnes laetī erimus.

**443. Participle Omitted.** Two nouns, a noun and a pronoun, or a noun and an adjective, may stand together in the ablative absolute, no participle being employed. In translating such expressions literally, the word *being* may be inserted. Thus,

Tē duce, salvī erimus, *You (being) leader, we shall be safe.*

---

<sup>1</sup> [*As*] *allies.*

**444. Exercise.** 1. Mārcō Messālā et Mārcō Pīsōne cōsulibus, Helvētiī domōs suās relinquere cōstituērunt. 2. Rōmulō rēge, Rōma urbs condita est. 3. Cōnsule vīvō Catilīna urbem reliquit. 4. Populō Rōmānō sociō vestrō, cūr, Galli, Germānōs verēminī ?

**445. Translation of the Participle.** The participle is often used instead of a clause. It makes a compact arrangement, such as Latin is fond of; but literal translation of a participle generally makes poor English, and can easily be avoided. Thus, substitute

(a) a subordinate clause with *when* :

**Hōc auditō, discessit,** *When he heard this, he withdrew* (literally, *This having been heard, etc.*);

(b) a subordinate clause with *since* :

**Hostibus appropinquantibus, cōpiās castris ēdūcere nōluit,** *Since the enemy was approaching, he did not like to lead his troops out of camp* (literally, *The enemy approaching, etc.*);

(c) a coördinate clause with *and* :

**Cōpiās castris ēductās prō mūrīs instrūxit,** *He led the troops out of camp and drew them up before the walls* (literally, *He drew up the led-out troops, etc.*);

(d) a relative clause :

**Explōrātōrēs praemissī revertērunt,** *The scouts who had been sent ahead returned* (literally, *The sent ahead scouts, etc.*).

Other conjunctions can also be employed, such as *if* and *although*. Of course, one can only tell which one to select by consideration of the whole sentence. In translating from Latin into English, these substitutions should be made wherever the literal rendering of the participle gives the slightest effect of awkwardness.



**446. Exercise.** Translate the dependent causes by participles. Thus, the first sentence would become “*We having set out, saw,*” etc., and the second, “*These facts having been learned, my friend,*” etc.

1. When we had set out, we saw the enemy on the top of a mountain. 2. When he learned the opinion of the embassy, my friend said that he would cease from his attempt. 3. Although their allies have been subdued, nevertheless the Gauls are waging the war with the greatest (**summus**) courage. 4. The enemy were routed and overcome. 5. If this signal has not been seen by our friends, we are all in a new peril.

**447. Exercise.** Retranslate §§ 433, 437, 440, and 444, applying the principles of translation explained in this Lesson.

**448. The Future Participle.** This is chiefly used in forming the so-called First Periphrastic Conjugation, which will be explained in the next Lesson.

## LESSON LXXXII.

### PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATIONS.

**449. Meaning of “Periphrastic.”** “Periphrastic” means roundabout in expression, and in Latin is applied to forms of the verb made by combining the future participle or the gerundive with tenses of the verb **sum**.

**450. The First Periphrastic Conjugation.** The First Periphrastic Conjugation is formed by combining the future participle (see § 403, *d*) with the various forms of **sum**. The future participle can be translated *about to*,

*going to, intending to, likely to, etc.* In number, gender, and case it agrees with the subject. Thus,

**Profectūrus est**, *He is about to set out, he intends to set out, is likely to set out, is going to set out, etc.*

**Profectūra erat**, *She intended, etc., to go.*

**451. Exercise.** 1. They were going to leave off fighting (battle). 2. We are about to go to him. 3. They are going to bring back the hostages who fled yesterday. 4. We intend to promise everything that they have demanded. 5. They said that they were going to protect our rights.

**452. Subjunctive of the First Periphrastic Conjugation.** This is used in certain situations which require a future subjunctive. It is most commonly employed when the time of an indirect question is later than the time of the verb on which it depends. Thus,

*I don't know what I am going to do (or shall do), nesciō quid factūrus sim.*

*I didn't know what she was going to do (or would do), nescivī quid factūra esset.*

*We asked when they would come, Rogāvimus quandō ventūrī essent.*

In indirect questions of this type the form of **sum** is to be determined by the tense rules already given. See §§ 355, 368, 369.

**453. Exercise.** 1. I don't know what the name of the new ship will be. 2. He did not know what the name would be. 3. Had they heard at what time they would reach the bank of that river? 4. Tell me what you are doing—were doing—will do. 5. I did not wish to tell them what I had been doing—was doing—was going to do.

**454. The Second Periphrastic Conjugation.** This is formed by combining the gerundive with forms of *sum*. It is literally translated according to the following model :

*Mittendus est, He is to-be-sent.*

This is equivalent to either *he must be sent*, or *he ought to be sent*, or *he has to be sent*.

In this construction the gerundive, being really a predicate adjective, agrees with the subject. Thus,

*Mittenda est* means *She must be sent*.

**455. Exercise.** Translate each sentence in as many ways as possible, according to § 454.

1. *Gentēs Gallicae opprimendae sunt.* 2. *Iter ad rīpās Rhēnī flūminis faciendum est.* 3. *Imperium Rōmānum dēfendendum erat.* 4. *Estne imperium Pompēiō dandum?* 5. *Multa flūmina sunt trānseunda.*

**456. Dative of the Agent.** With the second periphrastic the agent is expressed, not by the ablative with *ab*, but by the dative. Thus,

*Mihi mittendus est, He must be sent by me.*

**457. Translation of the Second Periphrastic.** The second periphrastic is a passive form, as will be seen by observing the translations of the Latin in §§ 454 and 456. In English, however, it is better as a rule to employ active verbs with *must*, *ought*, *have to*, etc. Thus, the sentence

*Caesarī omnia ūnō tempore erant agenda,*

which, literally rendered, is

*All things were to be done by Caesar at one time,*

is better translated

*Caesar had to do everything at one time.*

In the same way, the illustrative sentence in § 456 would be translated *I must (or have to, or ought to) send him*. Notice that in these freer renderings the subject of the auxiliary *must, ought, etc.*, is represented in Latin by the dative of the agent.

**458. Exercise.** Retranslate Exercise 455 according to the suggestions in § 457, supplying in each sentence except the fourth a dative of agent with the periphrastic form, as follows: in sentence 1, supply **Caesarī**; in 2, **nōbīs**; in 3, **mihi**; in 4, **ā populō Rōmānō**<sup>1</sup>; in 5, **exercitūi**.

**459. Exercise.** Recast the following sentences in the passive, so that they are capable of literal translation into Latin, according to the model just given; then translate.

1. We must bring these things to pass. 2. I ought to tell my friends that I shall go to them soon. 3. We shall have to leave off the battle. 4. He had to ask many favors of (*from*) me. 5. These things must be done at once.

**460. Second Periphrastic of Intransitive Verbs.** When an intransitive verb, or a transitive verb used intransitively, is put in the second periphrastic, the gerundive is always put in the neuter singular. Thus,

*We must go, nōbīs eundum est* (literally, *it must be gone by us*).  
*I must see, videndum est mihi* (literally, *it must be seen by me*).

Verbs used in this way are said to be used impersonally, because they have as subject no word, such as noun or pronoun, to which the distinction of person can properly apply.

**461. Exercise.** 1. Ad eum nōbīs adeundum est. 2. Semper mihi vincendum est. 3. Crās tibi domum venien-

<sup>1</sup> In such a sentence, where there might be doubt as to which of two datives was the dative of agent, it is customary to put the agent in the ablative with **ā** or **ab**, as in other passive constructions.

dum est. 4. Nōn illī querendum est quod vincere nōn potest. 5. Captīvīs moriendum est.

**462.** Rule XXVI. *The agent with the second periphrastic conjugation is put in the dative.*

### LESSON LXXXIII.

#### THE SUBJUNCTIVE IN COMMANDS AND WISHES.

**463. Commands in the Third Person.** Such commands are expressed in English by the use of *let* or *shall*. Thus,

*Let all keep silence. They shall receive their reward.*

In Latin such commands are expressed most frequently by the subjunctive in the third person of the present tense. Thus,

*Let the legion advance-to-the-attack, Legiō signa inferat.*

This is, of course, the same as the hortatory subjunctive (§ 347). By some the term hortatory is confined to the first person, while the use in the third person is called Jussive (from *iubeō, iubēre, iussī, iussum, command*).

The third person of the future imperative is rarely used. When it does occur, it may be translated exactly as the subjunctive would be in the same situation.

**464. Prohibitions.** Prohibitions, that is, commands *not* to do something, are not expressed by the imperative with a negative, but in one of the following ways;

(a) **Nōlī** or **nōlīte** with the infinitive. Thus,

*Don't leave the camp, Nōlī (or nōlīte) castra relinquere.*

This means literally, *Be unwilling to leave the camp.* (**Nōlī** is used when one person is addressed, **nōlīte** when there is more than one.)

(b) **Nē** with the second person of the perfect subjunctive. The above sentence would then read

**Nē castra relīqueris** (or *relīquerītis*).

**465. Exercise.** Translate the prohibitions in the following sentences in both the ways given in § 464. Give both singular and plural forms in every case where the command or prohibition is in the second person.

1. Set out. Do not set out. Let us not set out. Let them set out. 2. Give. Don't give. Let me give. Let him give. 3. Command. Let them be commanded. Let us command. Do not command. 4. Flee. Let them flee. Do not flee. 5. Let us not come. Let him not come. Let them not come. Come. Don't come.

**466. Wishes.** In Latin, as in English, there are two common ways of expressing desire. One is to use a verb meaning *wish*, etc., with the complementary infinitive (or sometimes an **ut** clause). Thus,

*I wish to go, Īre volō.*

*I wish that he may come, Volō ut veniat.*

The second way is to express the wish in the form of an exclamation. Thus,

*O that he were here! Utinam adesset!*

*If only we had not come! Utinam nē vēnissēmus!*

*Would that I might see him! Utinam eum videam!*

In Latin a wish of this form is expressed, as above, by the subjunctive. If positive, it is regularly introduced by **utinam**; if negative, by **utinam nē** (or by **nē** alone). This is called the Optative Subjunctive, or the Subjunctive of Wish.

(a) The present subjunctive refers here to future time, and is translated by the auxiliary *may* or *might*, as in the third example.

(*b*) The pluperfect subjunctive refers to past time, and is translated by the English past perfect (pluperfect), as in the second example.

(*c*) The imperfect subjunctive refers to present time, and is translated by the auxiliary *were* (that is, the past tense of the subjunctive of *to be*), as in the last example.

(*d*) The perfect subjunctive is not to be used in this construction.

**467. Exercise.** 1. Utinam nē morārentur! 2. Utinam ad colloquium veniat! 3. Utinam nē nōs adesse vetuisset! 4. Nē fiat ut calamitātem accipiās! 5. Utinam omnēs linguam Latīnam discātis!

**468. Exercise.** 1. Would that our friends were present! 2. If only the enemy had delayed! 3. If only I had learned the Latin language [when] a boy (appositive)! 4. If only he does not forbid us to go to the conference! 5. If it only does not happen that they have delayed!

## LESSON LXXXIV.

### THE SUPINE. VARIOUS EXPRESSIONS OF PURPOSE.

**469. The Supine.** There are two supines: an accusative and an ablative. The accusative is sometimes called the Former Supine, and the ablative the Latter Supine.

For the formation of the supine, see § 170.

**470. The Accusative Supine.** The supine in *-um* is an accusative of limit, naming the action at which we aim in doing something. Thus,

**Nōn veniam tē vīsum, I won't come to see you.**

It thus becomes a method of expressing purpose; aim and purpose being the same thing.

From its nature as an accusative of limit, it can only be used with verbs of motion, such as *come, go, send*, and the like.

**471. Exercise.** Use accusative supines to translate the purpose clauses.

1. They send ambassadors to Caesar to ask help.  
 2. We have come to the senate to demand the liberty of our country. 3. They are going to the general to complain because he has kept back the hostages. 4. Scouts came to announce that the enemy were at hand. 5. You met on that day to beg liberty from those whose slaves you were.

**472. The Ablative Supine.** The supine in *-ū* is a fourth declension ablative singular, formed from the same stem as the supine in *-um*. It is used to tell IN WHAT RESPECT things are easy or difficult, pleasant or unpleasant, right or wrong, and the like. It is translated by the infinitive in English. Thus,

*Mirābile dictū, wonderful to tell* (literally *wonderful in the telling*).

**473. Exercise.** Translate the infinitives by ablative supines.

1. This is not easy to do. 2. It is wonderful to hear.  
 3. Such things are very difficult to tell.

**474. Expressions of Purpose.** We have thus far had three methods of expressing purpose.

- (a) *ut* and *nē* with the present and imperfect subjunctive;
- (b) *ad* with the gerund or gerundive;
- (c) the accusative supine.



Thus, the sentence

*He sent a messenger to ask help*

may be translated

- (a) **Nūntium mīsit ut auxilium peteret;**
- (b) **Nūntium mīsit ad auxilium petendum;**
- (c) **Nūntium mīsit auxilium petītum.**

There are two other common ways of expressing purpose. Thus, the above sentence might be rendered by **quī** with the subjunctive, instead of the **ut** clause:

(d) **Nūntium mīsit quī auxilium peteret;**

literally, *he sent a messenger who should ask help.*

The fifth method of expressing the same idea is by the use of **causā** (or **grātiā**), *for the purpose*, following the genitive of the gerund or gerundive. Thus,

(e) **Nūntium mīsit auxiliī petendī causā;**

literally, *he sent a messenger for the purpose (or for the sake) of asking help.*

**475. Exercise.** Translate the purpose clause of each sentence according to the method in § 474 which is indicated by the letter in parentheses.

1. Now the conquered citizens are coming to hand over their swords and shields (*a*). 2. Encourage the soldiers, in order that they may not hesitate (*a*) to pursue (inf.) the enemy. 3. We have come to resist (*b*). 4. Cavalry were also sent to pursue them (*d*). 5. Messengers came to announce (*c*) that hostages would be sent. 6. We have delayed three days in order to hear your message (*b*). 7. The Gauls also are coming to hand over the hostages to you (*a*). 8. The two generals will meet at this place for the purpose of holding a conference (*e*). 9. Now they will call (**convocō**) a meeting for the purpose of hearing the



ROMAN WAR HORSE

embassy (*b*). 10. The soldiers raised their shields for the purpose of defending their heads from (*ā*) the enemy's missiles (*a*).

**476. Exercise.** 1. Concilium convocētur ut Gallōrum lēgātīō ā prīncipibus audiātur. 2. Nōlīte scūta āmittere, mīlitēs, nē nēmō crēdat vōs fōrtis in proeliō fuisse. 3. Nunc morēmur ad obsidēs accipiendōs quōs illī trādere volunt. 4. Concilium convocāvit praemiōrum dandōrum causā.

5. Caesar Gallōs docuit sē diūtius morārī nōn posse frūmentī exspectandī causā.

### LESSON LXXXV.

#### READING LESSON: HELVĒTIĪ RHODANUM FLŪMEN TRĀNSĪRE PROHIBENTUR.

Caesar Helvētiōs per prōvinciam īre nōlēbat. Māximīs itineribus ab urbe<sup>1</sup> in Galliam ūlteriōrem contendit, et ad<sup>2</sup> Genāvam pervēnit. Eō<sup>3</sup> Helvētiī lēgātōs ad eum mittunt, quī dīcerent<sup>4</sup> sē sine ūllō maleficiō iter per prōvinciam factūrōs.<sup>5</sup> Caesar autem negāvit sē hōc concessūrum,<sup>5</sup> et ā lacū Lemannō ad montem Iūram mūrum fossamque perdūxit. Nihilō minus Helvētiī trānsīre cōnābantur. Aliī nāvēs iūnxērunt, quibus flūmen transīrent<sup>4</sup>; aliī ratēs fēcērunt; aliī vadīs Rhodanī, quā<sup>3</sup> minima

<sup>1</sup> That is, Rome. <sup>2</sup> To the neighborhood of. <sup>3</sup> Adverb. <sup>4</sup> Why subjunctive? See § 474 (*d*). <sup>5</sup> **Esse** is often omitted in compound infinitives.

altitudō flūminis erat, perrumpere cōnābantur. Omnēs autem operis mūnitiōne et mīlitum concursū et tēlis repulsī sunt, atque hōc cōnātū dēstitērunt.

### LESSON LXXXVI.

#### SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES OF PURPOSE : THE SUBJUNCTIVE AFTER VERBS OF FEARING.

**477. Substantive Clauses of Purpose.** Clauses of purpose are used as the object of certain verbs which in English take the infinitive. They are called substantive clauses because they are like substantives (nouns) in being used as the object of a verb.

Such verbs are those meaning :

(a) *ask*, as **petō**, **postulō**, **rogō** ;

(b) *command, advise, persuade*, as **imperō**, **moneō**, **persuādeō**,  
**hor'ō**.

The use of this construction is seen in the following example :

**Eōs monuit nē irent**, *He advised them not to go* (literally, *that they should not go*).

**478. Exceptions.** **Iubeō**, *command*, and **vetō**, *forbid*, are exceptions to the above rule, and take the infinitive. Thus,

**Eōs ire vetuit**, *He forbade them to go*.

**479. Exercise.** 1. The consul asked him to leave the city. 2. I advise you—forbid you—to return home. 3. The commander urged—commanded—his men to fight with the greatest courage. 4. I shall demand that they all thank us for this favor. 5. We could not persuade him (dative) to come.

**480. Subjunctive after Verbs of Fearing.** Another kind of substantive clause is that which is used as the object of verbs of fearing. The subjunctive with **nē** is used with verbs of fearing to denote the thing which it is feared **MAY** happen. Thus,

**Timeō nē superēmur**, *I am afraid that (or lest) we shall (or may) be conquered.*

The subjunctive with **ut** is used with verbs of fearing to denote the thing which it is feared **MAY NOT** happen. Thus,

**Timeō ut superēmus**, *I fear that we shall (or may) not conquer.*

When the verb of fearing itself is negatived, **nē nōn** is regularly used instead of **ut**. Thus,

**Caesar nōn veritus est nē hōc facere nōn posset**, *Caesar did not fear that he should not be able to do this.*

**481. Exercise.** 1. Nē hōc fiat! 2. Vereor nē hōc fiat. 3. Utinam ad nōs mox revertat! 4. Timeō ut ad nōs revertat. 5. Itaque nunc nōn timeō nē nōn fiat pāx inter Rōmānōs et Gallōs. 6. Quīs nōs longius in finīs hostium prōgredi vetābit? 7. Militēs petivērunt ut impedimenta in castrīs relinquerentur. 8. Timeō nē nihil ibi inveniātur. 9. Timēbat ut sē adesse cōgnōscerētur. 10. Veritus nē hostēs dē adventū suō certiōrēs factī essent—fierent,—Caesar militēs primā lūce proficīscī iussit.

**482. Exercise.** 1. I am afraid that you may become accustomed to flee (inf.). 2. They forbade us to withdraw from the town. 3. I urge you to leave nothing in the place. 4. They urged them to give up their arms. 5. I was afraid that my enemy would urge you not to come.

## LESSON LXXXVII.

## THE DATIVE WITH SPECIAL VERBS.

**483. Dative with Special Verbs.** Many verbs which are transitive in English are intransitive in Latin. These are especially verbs meaning to *help, harm, please, displease, command, obey, persuade, yield*, and the like, which regularly have words denoting PERSONS as their objects, and whose action would naturally affect the WELFARE or the PLEASURE of such persons. In Latin, these verbs have their objects in the dative, to indicate this unusual interest of the object in the action of the verb; for the dative, with its meaning of *to or for*, is the case which is best able to express such an interest.

At the end of this Lesson will be given the rule of syntax which covers such cases, in the form in which the grammars state it. It is important to remember, however, that not all verbs of pleasing, etc., take the dative, and that the rule has very many exceptions. The safest way is to notice whenever, in a vocabulary or dictionary, a verb is said to take the dative, and to commit the fact carefully to memory. In this way it is possible very soon to have at one's command a useful list of verbs which are transitive in English but intransitive in Latin.

In this Lesson the following verbs belong to the class just described (meanings in the Vocabulary):

crēdō  
 imperō  
 noceō  
 pāreō  
 persuādeō  
 placeō

**484. Dative with Prepositional Compounds.** For the same reason that the verbs described in the last section take the dative, it happens that many (but not all) verbs compounded with prepositions take the dative. These prepositions are **ad, ante, con-<sup>1</sup> in, inter, ob, post, prae, sub, super.**

In this connection should be learned the paradigm of **prōsum**, given in the chapter on Forms preceding the Vocabularies. In this verb **prō-** becomes **prōd-** before a vowel, as **prōdest**.

Sometimes such verbs allow both a direct and an indirect object. Thus, **praeficiō**, *place in command of*, has the person who is placed in command in the accusative, while that of which he is commander is in the dative. Thus,

*Caesar placed Galba in charge of the cavalry, Caesar Galbam equitātūī praefēcit.*

**Adiuvō**, *help*; **iubeō**, *command, order*; **vetō**, *forbid*, and **dēlectō**, *please, charm*, are followed by the accusative, forming an exception to the principle just stated. Review §§ 417 and 478.

**485. Exercise.** 1. You have helped me; now I will help you (use both **adsum** and **adiuvō**). 2. They persuaded us to come. 3. Don't injure those who are trying to benefit you. 4. Caesar commanded the Gauls to send grain to him (**sē**) by river (use both **imperō** and **iubeō**). 5. Labienus is-in-command-of the tenth legion. 6. Who placed him (acc.) in-command-of that legion (dat.)? 7. Have they made-war-on the Roman people? 8. Let us obey the laws. 9. I do not believe you, Cassius. 10. This thing does not please the commons (use both **dēlectō** and **placeō**).

<sup>1</sup> **con-** is for **cum**. It also appears in the forms **co-** and **com-**.

**486. Exercise.** 1. Cīvibus persuāsit ut ē finibus suīs exīrent. 2. Adulēscēns māgnō exercituī praefectus est. 3. Māgnīs rēbus is praeerit quī sibi imperāre potest. 4. Iīs placēmus quibus prōsumus. 5. Huīc hominī prōderam quod mihi adiūverat. 6. Illa rēs nōn mē dēlectat. 7. Iussus sum hostibus populī Rōmānī nocēre. 8. Quis mihi imperābit ut illīs noceam? 9. Num illī adulēscētī pārēbunt illī quibus praefectus est? 10. Semper eī pārent quod is semper iīs adfuit.

**487. RULE XXVII.** *Most verbs meaning to benefit or injure, please or displease, yield or persuade, obey or command, trust or distrust, serve or resist, envy, threaten, pardon, and spare take the dative of the indirect object.*

**RULE XXVIII.** *Many verbs compounded with the prepositions ad, ante, con-, in, inter, ob, post, prae, sub, and super take the dative of the indirect object.*

## LESSON LXXXVIII.

### THE ABLATIVE WITH CERTAIN DEPONENTS. CUM-CLAUSES. ADVERBS OF PLACE.

**488. Ablative with Certain Deponents.** Instead of the accusative of the direct object, the deponent verbs ūtor, fruor, fungor, potior, and vēscor are followed by the ablative. This does not mean that Latin ever put the object in the ablative case, but merely that the Romans thought of these verbs in such a way as to make it natural to use an ablative with each of them. Thus, where we think of enjoying something, they thought of getting enjoyment *by means of* something. Accordingly, where we should say *He enjoys life*, they said *He gets enjoyment by means of life*, **Vitā fruitor**. In the same way, we can think of ūtor, *I use*, as equivalent to *I employ myself*;

**fungor**, *I perform*, as *I busy myself*; **potior**, *I gain possession of*, as *I am made a possessor* (by means of the thing possessed); **vĕscor**, *I eat*, as *I feed myself*.

**489. Exercise.** 1. They use ships to (with which they may) cross the river. 2. We shall gain possession of the sovereignty of all Gaul. 3. The Roman senate enjoys great power. 4. What do those animals eat? 5. This man has performed very great services for his country.

**490. The Uses of Cum.** The conjunction **cum** has three principal meanings: *when* (**cum** Temporal), *since* (**cum** Causal), and *although* (**cum** Concessive).

When **cum** means *since* or *although*, it takes the subjunctive in all tenses.

When **cum** means *when*, it can take the subjunctive in the imperfect and pluperfect only. In all other tenses it is used in the indicative.

**491. Meaning of Cum.** In **cum**-clauses it is frequently necessary to judge by the context whether the **cum** means *when*, *since*, or *although*. The same thing is true of the English *when*. Thus, "I wouldn't go when I wasn't asked" is equivalent to "I wouldn't go *since* I wasn't asked." *When* is often equivalent to *although* in the same way.

**492. Exercise.** 1. Cum nōs vīceris, in fīdem tuam veniēmus. 2. Cum gentēs Gallicae victae esse crēderentur, perīculum erat nē alium et māius bellum in Galliā gerendum esset. 3. Cum tālia mihi pollicerētur, nōn crēdidī eum tanta efficere posse. 4. Cum obsidēs trāditae essent, imperātor pācem omnibus lēgātīs pollicitus est. 5. Cum sententiam meam rogābit, eī dīcam quid fierī velim.



**493. Adverbs of Place.** Learn the following list:

- |        |   |   |
|--------|---|---|
| Where. | { | (a) <b>ubi</b> means <i>in what place</i> , as <b>Ubi es?</b> <i>Where are you?</i>                                   |
|        |   | (b) <b>quō</b> means <i>to what place, whither</i> , as <b>Quō vādis?</b> <i>Where are you going?</i>                 |
| There. | { | (a) <b>ibi</b> means <i>in that place</i> , as <b>Ibi sunt librī,</b> <i>The books are there.</i>                     |
|        |   | (b) <b>eō</b> means <i>to that place, thither</i> , as <b>Eō pervēnimus,</b> <i>We arrived there.</i>                 |
| Here.  | { | (a) <b>hīc</b> means <i>in this place</i> , as <b>Hīc amicōs nostrōs invēnimus,</b> <i>Here we found our friends.</i> |
|        |   | (b) <b>Hūc</b> means <i>to this place</i> , as <b>Cūr hūc vēnistī?</b> <i>Why have you come hither (here)?</i>        |

*Whence, from what place, from where, is unde.*

*Thence, from that place, from there, is inde.*

*Hence, from this place, from here, is hinc.*

**494. Exercise.** 1. Where is the money that I gave you? 2. Here are the books that we lost. 3. I will send the children there. 4. Where will you send them? 5. They will not be sent here. 6. Where are they coming from? 7. The army is in camp. It will soon withdraw thence. 8. There are the men whom we saw. 9. They went from here. 10. From there we set out for Rome.

## LESSON LXXXIX.

### SUBORDINATE CLAUSES.

**495. Classification of Tenses.** In the INDICATIVE mood, tenses which refer to past time are called Historical (or Secondary); those which refer to present or future time are called Principal (or Primary).

In the SUBJUNCTIVE mood, the imperfect and pluperfect are called Secondary; the present and perfect Primary.

**496. Sequence of Tenses.** The rules already given for the use of the subjunctive in dependent clauses are all covered by one general principle, called Sequence of Tenses, which may be stated as follows:

When the subjunctive is used in a dependent clause, its tense must be secondary if that of the verb in the main clause is secondary, and primary if that of the verb in the main clause is primary.

This means, of course, that in any given case we have only two tenses of the subjunctive from which to choose, and must select the one which seems most nearly to convey our meaning.

(a) The present and imperfect subjunctive are to be used when the action occurs AT THE SAME TIME AS that of the main verb.

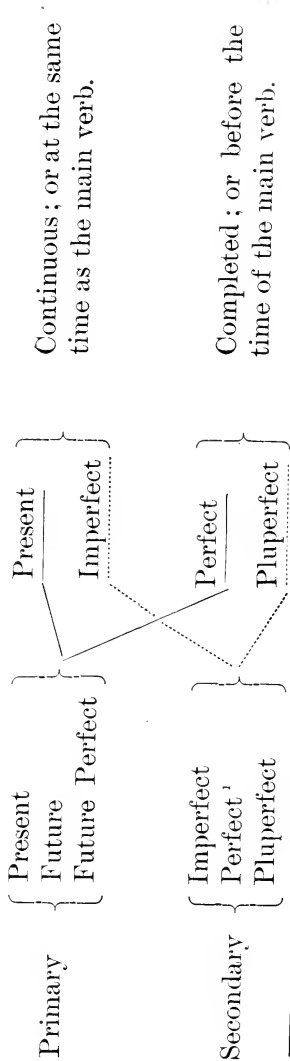
(b) The perfect and pluperfect subjunctive are to be used when the action occurs BEFORE that of the main verb.

(c) If the action occurs AFTER that of the main verb, either the first periphrastic conjugation is to be used, as in indirect questions, or the present and imperfect subjunctive, as in clauses of purpose, and clauses with verbs of fearing.

**497. Exercise.** 1. Since the Roman empire is so great, let us not try to crush the Roman legions. 2. When Caesar came into Gaul with a military command, do you know how many supposed that he would subdue the Gallic tribes in so short a time? 3. Although your [fellow]-citizens know how many your crimes have been, they do not wish you to die. 4. Since you have assured us that you will bring these things to pass, we will try to believe that you can do it. 5. When we were marching into that country, we did not know how many rivers we should cross.

DIAGRAM ILLUSTRATING THE SEQUENCE OF TENSES.

*Tense of Principal Clause.*      *Tense of Subordinate Clause.*      *Kind of Action Denoted.*




---

<sup>1</sup> The perfect is sometimes regarded as a primary tense, when it would be translated by *have* in English. Generally, however, it is regarded as secondary, even in the case mentioned.

**498. Conjunctions.** Most subordinate clauses are introduced by conjunctions. The exceptions are relative clauses and indirect questions. Some conjunctions, as **quod**, are regularly followed by the indicative; others, as **nē**, by the subjunctive; others still, as **ut** and **cum**, sometimes take the indicative and sometimes the subjunctive. Each one must be learned separately. Following are rules for some of the commonest:

(a) **Quamquam**, *although*, takes the indicative.

(b) **Postquam**, *after*, takes the indicative, generally in the perfect tense. It is often better to translate it by the pluperfect in English.

(c) **Ubi** means *when* as well as *where*. The rule for the mood and tense with **ubi** meaning *when* is the same as for **postquam**.

(d) **Ut** with the indicative does not introduce a clause of purpose, but means *as* or *when*. The tense follows the same rule as **postquam** and **ubi**.

(e) **Dum** meaning *while* generally has the present indicative; but it often evidently refers to past time and must then be translated by a past tense in English. **Dum** with the subjunctive may mean *until* or *provided that*, according to the general meaning of the sentence.

(f) **Si**, *if*, and **nisi**, *unless, if not*, follow rather complicated rules, which are better reserved for a later stage. They sometimes take the indicative and sometimes the subjunctive. The sentences containing **sī** and **nisi** which are given below need no special rule, however.

**499. Exercise.** 1. **Sī** metum habētis, cīvēs, cūr nōn fugitis? 2. **Nisi** aderat, orātiōnem Cicerōnis audīre nōn poterat. 3. Imperātor ubi milītēs hortātus est ut fortēs essent, sīgna inferre iussit. 4. **Dum** Rōmae sum, Cicerō-

nem saepe audīvī. 5. Postquam eō pervēnimus, castra relictum invēnimus. 6. Quamquam tibi nōn crēdō, hanc tamen tibi pecūniam dabō. 7. Caesar ut suōs ā Gallīs superārī vīdit, equitibus iussit ut auxilium ferrent. 8. Cum nihil tē timēre dīcās, volō tē socium meum in hōc perīculō esse. 9. Mīlitēs cum fortiter equitibus resisterent, impetum tamen sustinēre nōn poterant.



EQUES ROMANUS

10. Dum haec geruntur, impetus in sinistrum latus factum est ab iīs quī in summō colle cōstitierant.

## LESSON XC.

## READING LESSON: VIA PER SĒQUANŌS.

Relinquēbātur ūna per Sēquanōs via. Hāc viā Sēquanīs invītīs<sup>1</sup> ire nōn poterant; nam per angūstiās āgmen dūcendum erat.<sup>2</sup> Cum hīs<sup>3</sup> suā sponte persuādere nōn posset, lēgātōs ad Dumnorīgem Aeduū mittunt, quī apud Sēquanōs plūrimū poterat.<sup>4</sup> Per hunc ā Sēquanīs impetrant ut per finēs suōs Helvētiōs ire patiantur. Tum

<sup>1</sup> See § 443. <sup>2</sup> See § 454. <sup>3</sup> See § 487. <sup>4</sup> Literally, *was able the most*. Translate, "was most powerful."

obsidēs inter sē dant; Sēquanī, nē<sup>1</sup> itinere Helvētiōs prohibeant; Helvētiī, ut<sup>1</sup> sine maleficiō et iniūriā trānseant. Hī<sup>2</sup> autem cum in Aeduōrum finēs pervēnissent, agrōs eōrum vāstābant<sup>3</sup>; quā rē Aeduī ad Caesarem lēgātōs mīserunt, quī dē iniūriīs Helvētiōrum quererentur.

## LESSON XCI.

### ACCUSATIVE, GENITIVE, DATIVE, ABLATIVE.

**500. Two Accusatives.** With some verbs of asking and teaching, as *rogō* and *doceō*, two accusatives may be used, one of the person (Direct Object) and one of the thing (Secondary Object). Thus,

*Cōsul senātum sententiam rogāvit*, *The consul asked the senate its opinion.*

In the passive the direct object is made the subject and put in the nominative, while the secondary object remains in the accusative. Thus,

*Senātus ā cōsule sententiam rogātus est*, *The senate was asked its opinion by the consul.*

**501. *Petō*; *Postulō*; *Quaerō*.** With *petō*, *postulō*, and *quaerō*, the ablative with *ā* or *ab* should be used rather than the double accusative construction. This ablative is often rendered in English by *of*. Thus,

*Pācem ab imperātōre petēbant*, *They were begging peace of the consul.*

---

<sup>1</sup> *Nē . . . prohibeant*: as a guarantee that they should not restrain; *ut . . . trānseant*: as a guarantee that they should pass through.

<sup>2</sup> *Hī*: when a pronoun is ambiguous in English, the noun for which it stands should be substituted. Here *hī* means the Helvetii. <sup>3</sup>The imperfect is sometimes to be rendered *began to . . .*

**502. Exercise.** 1. Rōmānus Gallum linguam Latīnam docet. 2. Rōmānus Gallicam linguam ā duōbus servīs Gallicīs docētur. 3. Pācem ab imperātōre petīvimus. 4. Nōn quaeram, nōn postulābō ā tē id quod mihi dare nōn vīs. 5. Pāx ā lēgātō quaesīta est.

**503. Genitive and Ablative of Quality.** A noun denoting a quality may be put either in the genitive or ablative to describe another noun. Thus,

*vir summā auctōritāte, a man of very great influence.*  
*mōns māgnae altitūdinis, a mountain of great height.*

A noun so used must always have an adjective in agreement.

**504. Exercise.**

1. He said that the Gauls were men of great courage. 2. Did you ask why the ditches were of such (*tantus*) length? 3. Are there two towns of the same name? 4. The bodies of the Germans were of so great size that the Roman soldiers were not willing to join battle with them. 5. We shall send a messenger of great swiftness of foot (feet) to inform the citizens that they have been saved.



READER

**505. Dative of Service (Purpose).** Certain nouns are put in the dative in Latin where in English we should expect a predicate noun. Thus,

**Tū mihi māgnō auxiliō es,** *You are a great help to me* (literally, *for a great help*, etc.).

Such nouns are frequently abstract, and never plural.

An example of the same sort of construction in English is found in the Bible: "It shall be to the Lord for a name, for an everlasting sign which shall not be cut off." (Isaiah, 55 : 13.)

**506. Exercise.** Put the predicate nouns in the dative.

1. Those things were sent which were advantageous (a use) in (ad) war. 2. Their shields were a hindrance to the soldiers in crossing the river. 3. The tenth legion was left [as] a protection to the baggage. 4. Caesar said that he would provide for this (this would be a care to him). 5. You have come [as] a safeguard to your friends.

**507. Dative of the Possessor.** Sentences with *have* (not auxiliary) may be translated by the aid of the dative with *sum* as well as by *habeō*. Thus,

*We have many friends,*

besides being rendered

**Multōs amīcōs habēmus,**

may also be translated

**Multī amīcī nōbīs sunt** (literally, *Many friends are to us*).

The dative when so used is called the Dative of the Possessor.

**508. Exercise.** 1. Metus calamitātis nōbīs non est. 2. Quis tantā est virtūte ut nunquam timeat nē pecūnia sibi aliquandō (*sometime*) non sit? 3. Cuī est gladius?



4. Cūius est hīc gladius? 5. Illī Rōmānō multī clientēs erant, quibus in periculīs aderat. 6. Hīc māgnā auctōritāte est vir, cū plūrimī sunt servī.

**509. Ablative of Separation.** With verbs of depriving, the ablative is used to denote that of which one is deprived. This is called the Ablative of Separation, and appears in English either as an object (as in sentence 2 below) or as a phrase with *of* or *from*, as in the other sentences. Thus,

**Mūrus dēfēnsōribus nūdātus est,** *The wall was stripped of defenders.*

**510. Exercise.** 1. Do not deprive us of freedom. 2. The army lacked grain. 3. They have robbed the citizens of arms. 4. They said that the wall was stripped of soldiers. 5. You have freed us from great fear.

## LESSON XCII.

### TRANSLATION EXERCISE.

**511. The Latin Order.** In reading a Latin sentence, always try to take in the thought in the Latin order first; then, after you are quite clear what the Latin *means*, say to yourself, "Now, how should I say that same thing if I were telling someone else about it?" If your second statement really expresses the same idea as the Latin, and is good English, it is a good translation; no matter whether every word of the Latin has a corresponding word in English, or not.

On the other hand, every word of the Latin may be exactly rendered by an English word, and yet the result be worthless as translation; either because it does not give the real thought of the Latin, or be-

cause the English is such as no sane person would ever use for the purpose of expressing his thoughts. Suppose, to make this clearer, we take an example. In the second chapter of the first book of Caesar's Gallic War occurs this sentence: "His rēbus fiēbat, ut et minus lātē vagārentur, et minus facile finitimis bellum īferre possent; quā ex parte hominēs bellandī cupidī māgnō dolōre adficiēbantur." Let us first make a metaphrase of this passage; that is, a word-for-word rendering, keeping as close as possible to the Latin order. We should then get something like this: "From these things it happened that both less widely they wandered, and less easily on their neighbors war to bring were able; from which part men of warring desirous with great pain were affected." Now, it is fairly easy to make out the meaning from this metaphrase, but both order and phrasing must be changed before it can be called a translation. Beginning with odd-sounding expressions, we should probably agree that the following changes need to be made: change *less widely they wandered* to *their movements were more restricted*; *less easily were able to found it more difficult*; *bring war to make war*; *from which part* to *on which account*<sup>1</sup>; *men of warring desirous* to *those men who were fond of war*; *were affected with great pain* to *were greatly annoyed*.

Recombining the above, we obtain this result: *From these circumstances it happened, both that their movements were more restricted and that they found it more difficult to make war on their neighbors; on which account those men who were fond of war were greatly annoyed.*

It is more than likely that you feel that you could

---

<sup>1</sup> Literally, *from which direction*; that is, *source*. Then, the idea of source naturally suggesting cause, the rendering *from which cause* or *on which account* becomes justified.

improve on the wording of this in some particular, and you have a perfect right to do so, provided that you do not destroy the sense of the Latin and that you use good English.

**512. Exercise.** Give both a metaphrase and a translation of the following :

Intereā eā legiōne quam sēcum habēbat, mīlitibusque quī ex prōvinciā convēnerant, ā lacū Lemannō, quī in flūmen Rhodanum īfluit, ad montem Iūram, quī finēs Sēquanōrum ab Helvētiīs dīvidit, mīlia passuum ūndēvīgintī, mūrū in altitūdinem pedum sēdecim, fossamque perdūcit. Eō opere perfectō, praesidia dispōnit, castella commūnit, quō facilius,<sup>1</sup> sī sē invītō<sup>2</sup> trānsire cōnārentur,<sup>3</sup> prohibēre possit. Ubi ea diēs quam cōstituerat cum lēgātīs vēnit, et lēgātī ad eum revertērunt, negat sē posse iter ūllī per prōvinciam dare.

### LESSON XCIII.

#### TRANSLATION EXERCISE.

**513. The Compound and the Complex Sentence.** The tendency of Latin is to use the complex sentence, that is, one containing subordinate clauses and participial expressions, to a much greater extent than in English. Our own language, on the other hand, is fond of the simple sentence, or of two or more simple sentences connected merely by the coördinating conjunctions, such as *and*, *but*, and *for*, which have no subordinating power. Such a sentence is called a compound sentence. This fact has

<sup>1</sup> quō facilius = ut eō facilius, *the more easily to . . .* (literally, *whereby more easily . . .*). <sup>2</sup> Abl. abs. <sup>3</sup> Render this subjunctive by the auxiliary *should*.

an important influence on translation, as will be seen later.

**514. Long Latin Sentences.** Much of the difficulty of a long Latin sentence disappears when we learn that such a sentence is generally composed of a succession of subordinate clauses, each of which is a sentence in itself, inasmuch as it contains both subject and predicate, and is to be translated much like any other short sentence, with care to get in the connective (subordinating conjunction or relative). To make this statement clear, in the following sentence, taken from Caesar, *Bellum Gallicum*, I, 27, the clauses (with one exception) are separated by dots. The clause in parenthesis is a relative clause. It is indicated in this different way because relative clauses are often, as here, *inserted* in another clause to explain some word in that clause.

Quī cum eum in itinere convēnissent . . . sēque ad pedēs prōiēcissent . . . suppliciterque locūtī flentēs pācem petissent<sup>1</sup> . . . atque eōs in eō locō (quō tum essent) suum adventum expectāre iussisset . . . pārūrunt.

**515. Exercise.** Make a paraphrase of the above Latin sentence, translating the subjunctives as though they were the same tenses of the indicative.

**516. Exercise.** Translate the following sentences, which have been made by removing the conjunctions from the subordinate clauses above, and treating them as simple sentences. This also involved the changing of the verbs from the subjunctive to the indicative.

1. Illī eum in itinere convēnerant.
2. Sē ad pedēs prōiēcērant.
3. Suppliciter locūtī pācem petiverant.
4. Eōs in eō locō suum adventum expectāre iusserat.
5. Pārūrunt.

---

<sup>1</sup> Contracted for *petivissent*.

**517. Note on *Quī*.** Latin is so fond of subordination and close connection of clauses that it often begins sentences with a relative. This almost never occurs in English, and is impossible when there is a subordinating conjunction as well. Such a combination, therefore, as the **Quī cum** of the long sentence above should regularly be rendered as if it were **Et** (or **Sed** or **Nam**) **cum** *iī*, etc. In other words, we may consider that the following equation is true wherever the relative sounds awkward in English :

$$\text{quī} = \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{et,} \\ \text{sed,} \\ \text{nam, etc.,} \end{array} \right\} \text{is (or ille).}$$

**518. Exercise.** Make the best English translation you can of the long sentence above, which is here reprinted with the ordinary punctuation.

Quī cum eum in itinere convēnissent, sēque ad pedēs prōiēcissent, suppliciterque locūtī flentēs pācem petissent, atque eōs in eō locō quō tum essent suum adventum expectāre iussisset, pārūrunt.

## LESSON XCIV.

### TRANSLATION EXERCISE.

**519. The Broken Sentence.** When we consider that Latin may express by the use of a single complex sentence ideas which English would express by the use of simple sentences, it becomes clear that the best translation can frequently be obtained only by breaking the complex sentence of the Latin into two or more simple sentences when rendering in English. In this Lesson we shall first take a number of simple sentences, then combine them into a complex sentence, and lastly separate

the complex sentence into smaller members with a view to obtaining the best English rendering.

**520. Exercise.** Give a paraphrase and then translate:

1. Belgae paulisper apud oppidum morātī sunt.  
 2. Agrōs Rēmōrum dēpopulātī sunt. 3. Omnēs vicōs aedificiaque incendērunt. 4. Ad castra Caesaris omnibus cōpiis<sup>1</sup> contendērunt. 5. Ab<sup>2</sup> mīlibus passuum minus duōbus castra posuērunt. 6. Ea castra amplius mīlibus passuum octō in lātitudinem patēbant. 7. Haec rēs fūmō atque īgnibus sīgnificābātur.

**521. Exercise.** Give a paraphrase, and translate.

Itaque, paulisper apud oppidum morātī, agrōsque Rēmōrum dēpopulātī, omnibus vicīs aedificiīsque quōs adire poterant incēnsīs, ad castra Caesaris omnibus cōpiīs contendērunt, et ab mīlibus passuum minus duōbus castra posuērunt; quae castra, ut fūmō atque īgnibus sīgnificābātur,<sup>3</sup> amplius mīlibus passuum octō in lātitudinem patēbant.

**522. Exercise.** The Latin is broken into shorter sentences, after the manner of English. A few new words, indicated by italics, have been introduced.

Itaque paulisper apud oppidum morātī agrōs Rēmōrum dēpopulātī sunt. *Postquam* omnēs vicōs aedificiaque quae adire poterant incendērunt, ad castra Caesaris omnibus cōpiīs contendērunt, et ab mīlibus passuum minus duōbus castra posuērunt. *Ea* castra, ut fūmō atque īgnibus sīgnificābātur, amplius mīlibus passuum octō in lātitudinem patēbant.

---

<sup>1</sup> Ablative of accompaniment. **Cum** is often omitted in expressions denoting numbers of troops. <sup>2</sup> Adverb. Translate *away*. <sup>3</sup> **Ut** with the INDICATIVE means *as* or *when*; it means *that* only with the subjunctive.

## LESSON XCIV.

## ANALYSIS AND TRANSLATION.

**523. To Distinguish the Clauses.** It should now be clear that in reading Latin the division into clauses is of the utmost importance. Having once determined what words belong in a clause, and noticed the meaning and use of the connective, the translation of the clause becomes comparatively easy; and by translating clause after clause, the rendering of the whole sentence is accomplished. Practice of course is the great essential, but in order that practice may be intelligently done, the following suggestions are made.

- (a) Remember that each clause has its own verb.
- (b) Try to find the subject of that verb, and the object and adverbial modifiers if there are such.
- (c) Look out for connectives—conjunctions and relatives; and remember that while conjunctions are sometimes found in Latin after one or more words of the clause, they will regularly stand first in the translation.

**524. Exercise.** Answer the questions placed after the following Latin sentence.

Hostēs ubi dē expūgnandō oppidō et dē flūmine trāseundō spem sē fefellisse<sup>1</sup> intellēxērunt, neque nostrōs in locum inīquiōrem prōgredi pūgnandī causā vidērunt, atque ipsōs rēs frūmentāria dēficere coepit, conciliō convocātō, cōstituērunt optimum esse quemque domum revertī.

(a) What are the subjects of **intellēxērunt**, **vidērunt**, **coepit**, **cōstituērunt**?

(b) When a coördinating conjunction (**et**, **neque**, etc.)

---

<sup>1</sup> From **fallō**.

connects two clauses, if the first is subordinate the second must also be subordinate. If the second has no subordinating conjunction (*ut, cum, etc.*), the verb of the second clause will depend upon the subordinating conjunction in the first clause. Thus, *When I came and saw him, I did not recognize him*, means *when I came and when I saw him*, etc. Keeping this in mind, what are the verbs in the above Latin sentence which depend upon *ubi*?

(c) What is the principal verb of the sentence—the one which has no connectives?

**525. Exercise.** 1. Spēs hostēs fefellit. 2. Hostēs spem sē fefellisse intellēxērunt. 3. Spēs eōs fefellit et dē flūmine trānseundō et dē expūgnandō oppidō. 4. Nostrī in inīquiōrem locum pūgnandī causā nōn prōgrediuntur. 5. Vidērunt nostrōs in locum inīquiōrem nōn progredi. 6. Eōs rēs frūmentāria dēficere coepit. 7. Concilium convocāvērunt. 8. Optimum est quemque domum revertī. 9. Cōstituērunt hōc optimum esse. 10. Cōstituērunt optimum esse domum quemque revertī.

**526. Exercise.** Make a metaphrase and a translation of the Latin sentence in § 524.



ROMANS SACRIFICING



## EXERCISES FOR CLASS DRILL.

The Numbers correspond to the numbers of the Lessons with which these Exercises belong.

## I.

(a) Recite the Latin alphabet. Name the Latin vowels. Spell the list of diphthongs, and give their pronunciation. What is meant by long vowel? short vowel? long syllable? How many syllables has a Latin word? What is meant by quantity in Latin? When is a syllable long? When short? Define Antepenult; Penult. Do you know the name for the last syllable of a word? On what syllables does the accent never fall? Give the rule for the accentuation of Latin words.

(b) *Pronounce*: amābat, erat, speī, imperō, Gallia, bonus, hōc, rēx, prīstinus, exercitus, Capys, velle, absēns, caelum, autem, proelium, Caesar, caput, Vergilius, subvehō, īferunt, fuimus, cōgnitum, temporis, honōris, operis, gerētis, gereris, ferre, cōnsuētūdinem, Latīnus.

## II.

(a) *Give case, number, and meaning*: oppida, oppidum, puellās, lēgātos, videt, vident, amīcum, amīcus, puella, portās, portam, habet, amīcōs, puellam, puellae, portae, lēgātī, lēgātus, habent, porta, lēgātum, puellās, mūrī, mūrōs, mūrum, mūrus.

(b) *Pronounce and translate*: 1. Lēgātī mūrum vident. 2. Lēgātus portās videt. 3. Amīcī oppidum vident. 4. Amīcī portam vident. 5. Amīcus portās videt. 6. Oppidum portās habet. 7. Oppida mūrōs habent. 8. Amīcum habet lēgātus. 9. Portam habet mūrus.

(c) What nouns in Latin are neuter? Of what use are the terminations of Latin nouns? Do any English words add a termination to show that they are in the objective case? Name any you can think of. Explain the difference between natural and grammatical gender. When does a verb have the termination *-nt*? When *-t*? Can a Latin verb be said to agree with its subject? Can an English verb?

### III.

(a) 1. Rōmānī portās parvās vident. 2. Videtne Rōmānus fossās longās? 3. Rōmānus multōs amīcōs habet. 4. Nōne puellae parvōs gladiōs vident? 5. Puellae parvae gladiōs vident. 6. Oppidum fossās longās et mūrōs altōs habet. 7. Multīne Rōmānī gladiōs longōs habent? 8. Gladios parvōs habent Rōmānī paucī. 9. Rōmānus parvum gladium habet. 10. Puella parva portam videt. 11. Videntne amīcī fossam lātā? 12. Nōne lēgātī amīcōs multōs habent?

(b) What is meant by "syntax?" How do we know what ending an adjective should have? In § 31 the subjects in sentences 3 and 5 were not expressed. Judging by these sentences, what kind of subject need not be expressed in Latin? A footnote to the same section says that *besieges* and *is besieging* are the same in Latin: do both forms refer to the same time? Do you know of any special names which English grammar gives to these two forms? Give the rule for the agreement of adjectives.

### IV.

(a) 1. Oppūgnat, oppūgnatne? oppūgnant. 2. Numerus, numerī, numerōrum. 3. Cōpīae telōrum. 4. Inopīae

frūmentī. 5. Cōpia pecūniae. 6. Fīlia pecūniam habet. 7. Filiae pecūniam habent. 8. Fīliae pecūniam habet. 9. Nōne amīcī puellārum tēla habent? 10. Amīcī puellārum tēla videt.

(b) When may the subject of a Latin verb be omitted? Has the verb any means of indicating the subject when the subject is omitted? Define Genitive. Give the Latin for daughter; daughter's; daughters'; of daughters; of the daughter; of the Roman's daughter; of the Romans' daughters; of the Roman's daughters' weapons.

## VI.

(a) 1. Fīlius, filiō, filiīs. 2. Puella, puellīs, puellae. 3. Fēminae praemia filiīs dant. 4. Fēminae praemia filiī dant. 5. Datne fēminae fīlius māgnum praemium amīcō? 6. Gallus pecūniam habet. 7. Nōne pecūniam amīcō dēbet? 8. Tēla lēgātīs dant. 9. Māgnus numerus Gallōrum pauca praemia habet. 10. Parvum numerum praemiōrum Rōmānīs dat lēgātus.

(b) Give the principal parts of the Latin verbs meaning *besiege; have; see; hear; give; owe; send; fortify*. Give also singular and plural forms of each verb, according to the rules in § 41. Make an English sentence containing a direct object and an indirect object with *to*; another with a direct object and an indirect object without *to*. What is the case of the direct object in Latin? of the indirect object? Can we tell by the ending of the dative plural whether a noun is first or second declension? Give the termination of the dative plural for both declensions. What case-endings are alike in declension I? In Declension II?

## VII.

(a) 1. Oppidum bellō expūgnant. 2. Nōne populum periculō bellī liberant? 3. Lēgātī cōpiae pīlis pūgnant. 4. Prōvinciam ūnō annō periculō bellī liberat. 5. Cōpiae lēgātum pecūniā periculō liberant. 6. Pecūniā lēgātus prōvinciam periculō liberat. 7. Populus pīlis pūgnat. 8. Populus fossā oppidum mūnit. 9. Populum inopiae periculō pīlis liberant. 10. Oppida Gallōrum mūrīs mūniunt.

(b) When do the dative and ablative end alike? How can they be distinguished? Mention any Latin verbs you can that require a dative to complete their meaning. Mention any verbs often used with the ablative.

## VIII.

(a) 1. Gallī in castrīs cum Rōmānīs pūgnant. 2. Paucīs hōrīs castra gladiīs expūgnant. 3. Nūntiōs cum litterīs cūr nōn mittis? 4. Cūr nōn gladiō cum inimicō pūgnat? 5. Venitne nūntius Gallōrum cum cōpiā frūmentī? 6. Inopiā frūmentī oppidum Rōmānī nōn expūgnant. 7. Nōne castra periculō liberant? 8. Castra mūrīs longīs mūniunt. 9. Murōs et portās castrōrum fossā mūniunt. 10. Puellae Rōmānōs bellī periculō pecūniā liberant.

(b) What is a preposition? Describe the four uses of the ablative given in this Lesson. In English, does *in* ever denote anything except "time when" and "place where?" Mention any instances you can think of. Have any rules been given as yet for the translation of these other uses? Does *with* ever denote anything in English except means and accompaniment? How can we tell when to use **cum** in Latin?

## IX.

Give the nominative, vocative, and accusative, singular and plural, of the Latin words for Roman, girl, town. Translate: 1. Galle, lēgātum audīs. 2. Pecūniam, fīlia. Gallō dās. 3. Quid, amīce, dēbēs?

When does the vocative singular end in **-e**? Is the vocative plural ever different from the nominative plural? What in English corresponds to the Latin vocative? What is the meaning of the verb-ending **-ō**? **-mus**? **-nt**? **-s**? **-t**? **-tis**? Define "present tense." Tense means time: is it, then, accurate to say that the present tense represents the action of the verb as occurring at the present time?

## XI.

(a) 1. Contendit; nōnne contendit? lēgātī contendunt. 2. Cōpiās castrīs<sup>1</sup> nōn continet. 3. Gallusne rēgnum occupat? 4. Quid, amīce, occupās? 5. Rēgnum Gallōrum occupō. 6. Castra pōnimus. 7. Castra in rēgnō Gallōrum pōnunt. 8. Puellae perīculum bellī timent. 9. Venīs, veniunt, venītis. 10. Quid, fīlia, parās?

(b) Define paradigm, conjugation, person-ending, verb-stem, stem-vowel. In which conjugations does the stem-vowel disappear before the ending of the first person singular? What is the stem-vowel of the first conjugation? of the second? of the fourth? What is added to the stem-vowel in the third person plural of the fourth conjugation? The stem-vowel is obtained by cutting off the termination **-re** of the infinitive (see § 41): to what is the stem-vowel changed in the third conjugation? Which conjugation keeps the stem-vowel unchanged throughout the present tense? Which one changes it throughout?

---

<sup>1</sup> Latin here says *by* where English would use *in*.

## XII.

(a) 1. Timetne servus proelium? 2. Suntne servī nūntiī? 3. Puella nōnne est bona? 4. Nōnne poēta est bonus? 5. Poētae sunt bonī. 6. Fīliae sunt bonae. 7. Nūntiī sunt dēfessī. 8. Nūntiī lēgātum timent. 9. Es; esne? estis; est. 10. Sumus; nōnne sumus? sum; sunt.

(b) Give the person-endings of the present tense. Name the difference between the person-endings of **sum** and those of regular verbs. The verb-stem of **sum** is **es-**: in what forms of the present is this found without change? In what forms is the **e** dropped? In what forms is **u** added? Can you think of any reason why the **u** should be present in these forms? Define predicate, predicate adjective, predicate noun, copula. Explain the difference between a predicate noun and an object. Can you think of any other verbs than **be**, in English, which are followed by a predicate nominative? Can you give or make a rule covering the verbs which take a predicate nominative?

## XIII.

(a) 1. Cūr puer crēbrōs nūntiōs mittit? 2. Nūntiī gladiōs nōn habent. 3. Nūntī gladius longus est. 4. Populus deābus pecūniam dat. 5. Vir fili agrum fīliae dat. 6. Mī fili, nōnne es bonus puer? 7. Meī filiī, quid nūntiō dēfessō datis? 8. Poētae bonō librōs nostrōs nōn damus. 9. Librōs nostrōs liberīs virīs damus. 10. In proeliō, mī puer, multa sunt perīcula. 11. Cōnsilium virī bonum puerō est. 12. In agrīs nostrīs crēbra sunt proelia. 13. Librī poētae longī sunt. 14. Liberī poētae cōnsilium audīmus. 15. In oppidō nostrō paucae sunt portae. 16. Virumne

puer videt? 17. Videtne puer virum? 18. Vir puerum videt. 19. Vir puerō cōnsilium dat. 20. Vir puerum periculō māgnō liberat.

(b) What is meant by “declining” a noun or adjective? What is the ending of the base of second declension nouns in **-er**? How can one tell when to omit the **e** before **r** in declining? Name two nouns having dative and ablative plural in **-ābus**. What would these cases be if formed regularly? Account for the irregular form which is in use. Why is the genitive of **nūntius** spelled with one **i**, while the genitive of **rēgius**, *royal*, has two? Give the vocative singular of **Rōmānus**; **puer**; **meus** (all genders); **Commius**; **vir**; **dea**; **bellum**.

#### XIV.

(a) 1. Manēbās; manēbāmus; manēs. 2. Manēbant; manent; manet. 3. Maneō; nōnne manēbam? manēbātis. 4. Scrībunt; cūr scrībēbant; scrībit. 5. Scrībis; scrībēbās; scrībēbātisne? 6. Scrībitis; scrībō; scrībēbam. 7. Ārae pulchrae erant. 8. Tribūnī ārās vidēbant. 9. Tum agrōs pulchros vident. 10. Cūr poēta āram deae nōn vidēbat? 11. Māgnū proelium in agrīs erat. 12. Puellae et fēminae periculum virōrum vidēbant et timēbant. 13. Tum populus castra mūrō et fossā mūnit et oppidum periculō liberat. 14. Liberābat; liberābant; liberant. 15. Mūniēbat; mūniēbant; muniuntne?

(b) Define attributive adjective; appositive; tense. What time is represented by the imperfect tense? Give the rule for the case of an appositive. Decline together as appositives **Cinna lēgātus**, *Cinna the lieutenant*.

## XVI.

(a) 1. Scribunt; scribēbant; scribent. 2. Vidēbis; vidēbās; vidēs. 3. Mūniēs; mūniēbās; mūnīs. 4. Oppūgnās; oppūgnābās; oppūgnābis. 5. Dabās; datīs; dabimus. 6. Nōne mittet? pūgnant; liberābō. 7. Gerōne? gerēbam; gerāmus. 8. Contendis; pōnētis; timētis. 9. Manēmus; veniēmus; manēbimus. 10. Continēbunt; contendet; cūr scribēbam? 11. Vāstat; vāstant; vāstābant; vāstābunt. 12. Movētis; movēbitis; movēbātis; movēs. 13. Inveniēmus; inveniēbāmus; invenīmus; inveniēbam. 14. Vāstās; inveniēs; movēbis; movēbās; invenis. 15. Invenītis; movēs; vāstābam; movent; invenient; movēbō.

(b) What does the ending *-et* signify in the second conjugation? What in the third and fourth? How is the stem-vowel obtained from the infinitive? What conjugations are alike in the terminations of the future tense? How can one distinguish a future of the second conjugation from one of the first? A future of the third from one of the fourth? What time is denoted by the future tense? By the present? By the imperfect? Do these tenses have the same names in your English grammar? What are the differences, if any?

## XVII.

(a) 1. Servant; servābant; servābunt. 2. Perterrēbō; perterreō; perterrēbam. 3. Perterrēs; servābās; servās. 4. Servābis; perterrēbātis; servātis. 5. Eris; erunt; erant. 6. Erō; erimus; sumus. 7. Erit; erat; est.



8. Eritis; estis; erātis. 9. Erās; es; erant. 10. Sum; sunt; eram.

(b) Are the person-endings regular in the future tense of **sum**? In what conjugations is **-o** the ending of the first person singular in the future tense? In what forms is **eri-** the stem of the future of **sum**? In what form is it **eru-**? In what tenses of what conjugations is **-unt** found in the third person plural? In what forms of **sum** is it found? What position is occupied by **-que** in a Latin sentence? What is a word called which is so written?

### XVIII.

(a) 1. Erantne lēgēs plēbis Rōmānae bonae? 2. Dux cīvitātis mīlitēs perterrēbit. 3. Nōnne pīncipēs plēbem servābunt? 4. Dux māgnā vōce puerōs perterrēbat. 5. Plēbs bellum timet. 6. Itaque pācem petent. 7. Ducēs praemia mīlitibus dant. 8. Lēgibus bonīs salūtem cīvitātis nostrae servāmus. 9. Mīlītes bonum ducem petunt. 10. Nōnne pāx longa erit?

(b) Define consonant-stem; i-stem; base. What happens when **t** or **d** comes before **s** in Latin? **c** or **g**? **p** or **b**? How may we learn from the Vocabulary the stem of a noun of the third declension? Has the stem been the same as the base in the nouns of this declension studied thus far?

(c) Decline together the Latin words meaning *our state*; *good leader*; *Roman commons* (the last in the singular only).

### XIX.

(a) 1. Vident; vīdērunt; vidēbunt. 2. Oppūgnābam; oppūgnāvī; oppūgnābō. 3. Audit; audiet; audīvit.

4. Dedit; dabat; dedērunt. 5. Dēbuistis; dēbēs; dēbuistī. 6. Mīsimus; mittimus; mittēbam. 7. Mūnīvērunt; mūnīvēre; mūnient. 8. Expūgnāvērunt; liberāvistī; dēlēvit. 9. Gessimus; reliquit; relinquit. 10. Relinquimus; reliquimus; relinquis. 11. Reliquistī; relinquitis; reliquistis. 12. Contendis; continēbas; continuit. 13. Occupāvit; parāvērunt; posuī. 14. Tīmūistī; nōnne vēnit? nōnne venit? 15. Mānsērunt; manent; mānsī. 16. Invēnimus; invenīmus; mōvimus. 17. Movēmus; vāstāvit; perterruistī. 18. Servāvērunt; petīvērunt; complēvērunt. 19. Complēvit; complēvimus; complēmus; est; erit; erat; fuit. 20. Flet; flēvit; flēbatne?

(b) What tenses of the Latin verb are formed from the present stem? Give the stem-vowel of the present for each conjugation. (This vowel is called the Characteristic.) When is a long stem-vowel shortened? What two kinds of action are denoted by the perfect tense in Latin? Does the perfect in English have the same uses? Give the endings for the perfect tense. Are any of these the same as the person-endings previously learned for the other tenses? How is the perfect stem formed from the present in each of the four conjugations? How can one learn the perfect stem of a verb from its principal parts?

## XXI.

(a) 1. Laudem equitibus dederāmus. 2. Auctōritās prīncipum Gallōrum māgna fuerat. 3. Multī obsidēs vēnerant. 4. Vōcem mīlitis iam audīviram. 5. Pedēs equitum dēfessī nōn fuerant. 6. Poēta virtūtī mīlitum laudem māgnam dederat. 7. Petēbam; petent; petīverāmus. 8. Scrīpserās; scrībam; scrīpsistī. 9. Manēbat;

mānserat; mānserant. 10. Servāverātis; servāverāmus; servāveram.

(b) What time is indicated by the pluperfect tense? Do you know any other name for this tense in English? Conjugate in English the present, imperfect, future, perfect, and pluperfect tenses of *be*; *have*; *come*. What other tenses in the Latin verb have had *m* as the person-ending of the first person singular? What is the tense of each of the following?—I saw; you had seen; they were coming; we have been; they had had; they have had; they have; they have been; they were; they had; they had come; they came; they are coming; they will come; they come.

## XXII.

(a) 1. Caesar centuriōnem laudāvit. 2. Cōsulēs Rōmānī flōrēs vident. 3. Erantne mōrēs hominum bonī? 4. Imperātōris pater longam hiemem timet. 5. Hieme nōn multōs flōrēs vidēmus. 6. Mox multitudō flōrum in agrīs erit. 7. Rōs in flōribus pulcher est. 8. Frātrēs flōrēs pulchrōs mātrī dabunt. 9. Virtūs centuriōnum Rōmānōrum māgna erat. 10. Itaque poētae Rōmānī centuriōnēs Rōmānōs laudāvērunt.

(b) 1. Of Caesar; to the centurion; of the consuls. 2. With flowers; for the brothers; winter (nom. and acc.). 3. Men (nom. and acc.); of the commanders; for a mother; by custom. 4. In a multitude; for fathers; dew (nom. and acc.). 5. I am praising; you were praising; he will praise; we have praised; you had praised; they praised.

(c) In what consonants do liquid stems end? Name three nouns with stems in **r** and nominatives in **s**. How many nouns are there with stems in **m**? How do stems in **-in** form the nominative? Stems in **-ōn**? Stems in **-ter**? What nouns of declension II do these last resemble? What is the difference in meaning between **homō** and **vir**? What is the gender of **homō**?

### XXIII.

(a) 1. Equitēs mūrōs dēlent; mox portās dēlēverint. 2. Virī litterās scribunt; mox mittent (supply *them* as object). 3. Litterās iam scripsistī; cūr manēs? 4. Castra iam mōverant et agrōs vāstābant. 5. Obsidēs dederimus; in salūte erimus. 6. In agrīs erunt; flōrēs invēnerint. 7. Caesar bellum māgnū gesserat et virtūtem mīlitum laudābat. 8. Paucīs hōrīs oppidum expūgnāverimus. 9. Rōmānī puerōs Gallōrum perterruerunt et fēminae flent. 10. Dux puerōs servāverit; servī erunt Rōmānōrum.

(b) Give a synopsis (that is, the first form of each tense so far given) of the verbs **sum**, **laudō**, **moneō**, **petō**, **mūniō**, **veniō**. Give a synopsis in the second person singular of **videō**; in the third person singular of **dō**; in the first person plural of **mittō**; in the second person plural of **liberō**; in the third person plural of **gerō**.

(c) How do the endings of the future perfect differ from the future tense of **sum**? Do the endings of the pluperfect differ at all from the imperfect of **sum**? Which is commoner in English, the future or the future perfect? What is the difference in meaning between these two tenses?

## XXIV.

(a) 1. Prō Caesare; prō castrīs; prō populō; ante oppidum; prō amīcīs. 2. Dē locō; dē pāce; dē obsidibus vēnērunt; dē oppidō vēnimus. 3. Imperātor servōs ē castrīs mīsīt. 4. Sed servī prō castrīs manēbant. 5. Mox cum mīlitibus prō imperātōre Rōmānō pūgnābunt. 6. Prae multitudine Gallorum servī paucī sunt. 7. Prae nostrō numerō multī sunt. 8. Sine cōnsiliō imperātōris lēgātus nōn pūgnābit. 9. Nōn sine duce discēdent mīlitēs ā portīs. 10. Sine imperātōre in perīculō nōn manēbunt. 11. Sine tribūnīs populus Rōmānus in māgnō perīculō erat.

(b) When may *with* be translated by **cum**? Distinguish between the meaning of **ex** and that of **ab**. When must the forms **ā** and **ē** not be used? Give two meanings for **dē**. In sentence 1 in (a), what determines the meaning of **prō**? Does the same principle apply to any other sentences in (a)? Make an English sentence of your own containing a *with* expressing accompaniment; another containing a *with* expressing manner; another containing a *with* expressing means.

## XXVI.

(a) 1. Legiō ad oppidum venit. 2. Paucī iam in oppidō sunt. 3. Cum timōre in oppidō mānsimus. 4. Iam dē locō discessērunt. 5. Gallī lēgātīs in castra ad Caesarem dē pāce mittent. 6. Iam sub vāllō sunt. 7. Prō portīs cum ducibus nostrīs manēbunt. 8. Estne virtūs Gallōrum parva prae virtūte nostrā? 9. Nōn sine timōre in agrōs Gallōrum venīmus. 10. Sub monte manēbimus et prō liberīs pūgnābimus.

(b) 1. At the foot of the mountain. 2. To the foot of the wall. 3. In the ditches. 4. Into the ditches. 5. They came to Caesar. 6. They gave hostages to Caesar. 7. They sent hostages to Caesar. 8. We shall withdraw from the walls. 9. We were withdrawing from the town. 10. Do not the soldiers stay in camp in the winter?

(c) Explain the different uses of **in** and **sub**. Explain the difference between **in** and **ad**. Give two meanings of **prō**. Give a list of prepositions which take the ablative. Name the prepositions which are used with both ablative and accusative. With what case are all other prepositions used? What case do prepositions take in English?

## XXVII.

(a) 1. Dūceris; dūcis; dūcitur. 2. Dūcit; dūciminī; dūcitis. 3. Dūcor; dūcō; dūcimur. 4. Dūcimus; dūcitur; dūcuntur. 5. Dūcunt; dūcere; dūceris. 6. Appellāmur; appellāminī; appellantur. 7. Appellātur; appellāris; appellor. 8. Appellāre; mūnīre; mūnīris. 9. Invenior; invenītur; inveniuntur. 10. Invenīminī; invenīmur; contineor. 11. Tenētur; tenentur; tenēmur. 12. Perterrēmini; perterrēre; perterrēris.

(b) 1. We are saved; they are sought; they seek. 2. It is being filled; he is filling; he fills. 3. It is filled; we are being saved; they are being sought. 4. They are seeking; we are seen; we see. 5. Are we seen? are we not seen? do we not see? 6. They besiege; they do not besiege; do they not besiege? 7. Are they besieged? are they being besieged? are they besieging? 8. Are they not besieging? is it given? are they given? 9. We

are given ; you are given ; I am given. 10. The money is owed to the man ; you are being sent to Caesar ; the camp is being fortified.

(*c*) When an active sentence is changed to the passive form, what does the object become ? What does the subject become ? Explain the difference between means and agent. What auxiliary verb is used to form the passive in English ? Does the same thing happen in Latin ?

### XXVIII.

(*a*) 1. Impediēmus ; impediēmur. 2. Cōstituētur ; cōstituet. 3. Cōstituēbat ; cōstituēbātur. 4. Perterrēbō ; perterrēbor ; perterrēbar. 5. Impediēris ; impediris ; impediēre ; impediēs. 6. Impediētis ; impediēminī ; impediēbāminī. 7. Exspectantur ; exspectābantur ; exspectābar. 8. Cōstituēbat ; cōstituēbātur ; cōstituitur. 9. Impedit ; impediēt ; impediuntur. 10. Impediar ; impediam ; cōstituam ; cōstituar.

(*b*) 1. Exspectātur ; nōn impediētur ; mox veniet. 2. Equitēs sub monte cōstituentur. 3. Nōne de locō discēdēs ? Cūr nōn perterrēris ? 4. Armīs nostrīs, Caesar, et tū (*you*) et Rōma servābiminī. 5. Auxilium multitudinis nōminum habēbō ; animus non perterrēbitur. 6. Gallī ā Rōmānīs in agrō vidēbantur. 7. Multī flōrēs in agrīs ā puellīs inveniēbantur. 8. Paucae legiōnēs in castrīs ab imperātōre relinquiēbantur. 9. Tum ā Caesare ducēbamur. 10. Oppidum ā cōsule oppūgnābātur ; portae et mūrī dēlēbantur ; fossae complēbantur ; fēminae et puerī perterrēbantur et semper flēbant.

## XXIX.

(a) 1. We came to a broad river—to broad rivers.  
 2. The side of the camp is at the foot of a mountain.  
 3. In the sides of the camp are broad gates. 4. The fear of crimes is a good thing. 5. What is the name of the place? 6. We Romans have given our own name to the place: it is called Rome. 7. We are called by name Romans. 8. Do you fear the work of fortification? 9. The armies-on-the-march are led by Caesar's guides. 10. Of heads; in the body; in the rivers; of the broad side; for a great name (dative); works; by a great crime.

(b) What cases are alike in all neuter nouns? What cases of neuters of the third declension are the same as in other nouns of the same declension? How do neuters form the nominative singular? How is the stem modified to form the nominative when the stem ends in *-or-*? in *-er-*? in *-min-*? What is the stem of the word meaning *head*?

## XXXI.

(a) 1. The territories of the Gauls were narrow. 2. Do you see the boundary? 3. We fear great bloodshed. 4. We do not fear the enemy. 5. We fear our enemies. 6. By a tower we shall hold back the enemies' forces. 7. Why have you not placed the men in the first rank? 8. The place is narrow. 9. The places are narrow. 10. Will the Gauls hold the enemy back from [their] boundaries?

(b) Give the case and the stem of each of the following forms, and translate. 1. *Caedem*; *caede*; *caedēs*. 2. *Ōr-*



dinum; ōrdinem; ōrdinī. 3. Hostium; hostibus; hostēs. 4. Hostis; hostīs; hoste. 5. Turrim; turris; turri.

(c) Give the genitive and accusative plural, the gender, and the meaning of each of the following words: **finis**; **corpus**; **caedēs**; **flūmen**; **turris**; **ōrdō**; **caput**; **latus**. Decline together the Latin words meaning *high tower*; *narrow river*; *our boundary*. In what respect do i-stems differ from consonant stems?

## XXXII.

(a) 1. Datum est; data est; datus est; dedit. 2. Bellum gestum est; bella gesta sunt; multa bella gessī. 3. Castra in agrīs posita sunt; castra posuērunt; castra pōnentur. 4. Missī sumus; missus sum; nōn missus es. 5. Audītī estis; audītī sunt; audītus sum; audiēbar.

(b) 1. I have been led; I was being led; I shall be led. 2. The fields have been laid waste; were being laid waste; are being laid waste; were laid waste. 3. We have been alarmed; are alarmed; are alarming; have alarmed. 4. The camp has been broken; they have broken camp; camp will be broken soon. 5. You have been called Romans; you have been called women; you have been called a poet; you have been called poets; you have been called a soldier; have you not been a soldier?

(c) Name the three stems of the verb. Name the tenses formed from the present stem; from the perfect stem. What forms of the verb are taken to form the principal parts? What is the use of the principal parts?

## XXXIII.

(a) 1. Animadversum erat; animadverterat; animadversum erit. 2. Trāductī erunt; trāductus erat; trāductus

erō. 3. Dēlēctus est; dēlēctus erāt; dēlēgit; dēligit. 4. Dēspērātum erit; dēspērāmus; dēspērāverāmus. 5. Circumventī erātis; circumventus eris; circumventus est. 6. Dēfēnsī erant; dēfenderant; dēfenderint; dēfēnsī erunt; dēfendērunt. 7. Nōnne ēductī erunt? ēductus erat; estne ēductus? 8. Nōnne fuga hostium animadversa erat? 9. Erantne dēfēnsōrēs circumventī? 10. Animadvertī; animadverterās; animadvertit; animadversī erunt; animadvertērunt.

(b) 1. We see. 2. We are seen. 3. We shall see. 4. We shall be seen. 5. We shall have been seen. 6. We shall have seen. 7. You were sending.<sup>1</sup> 8. You are being sent.<sup>1</sup> 9. You were being sent.<sup>1</sup> 10. You had been sent.<sup>1</sup> 11. You have sent.<sup>1</sup> 12. I am hindered. 13. They are laying waste. 14. We have stationed. 15. They are alarmed. 16. It will be written. 17. The letters had been written. 18. They had not been written. 19. We have left. 20. We were leaving. 21. We were being left. 22. We were left. 23. We left. 24. We shall have left.

### XXXIV.

(a) 1. Pontem in (*over*) flūmine faciēmus. 2. Imperātor cohortem clientium accipit. 3. Partem urbis capiēs. 4. Ab hostibus nōn capiēminī. 5. Obsidēs ab imperātōre accipiuntur. 6. Prīma pars noctis est. 7. Mox cohortēs Rōmānae pontem longum trādūcentur. 8. Ab hostibus tēla accipientur. 9. Tēla in Rōmānōs iacientur ā parte

---

<sup>1</sup> Give both singular and plural.

hostium. 10. Rōmānī gladiīs māgnam partem Gallōrum interficiunt.

(b) 1. We receive; I am received; you receive. 2. We are captured; you are captured; I have captured. 3. You were doing; he was doing; it was being done. 4. They were thrown; they had been thrown; they have been thrown. 5. You were not being taken; we were not being taken; we were taking. 6. They were killing; we shall not kill; you will not kill. 7. We shall be received; you will be received; you had received. 8. It has been done; you have been received; we have been received. 9. I had captured; you will have captured; you will have been captured. 10. I shall have been received; you will have been received; they will have been received. 11. They have made; you had made; he had made. 12. We shall have made; you will have made; they will have made. 13. They had thrown; you had thrown; we had thrown. 14. I shall do; you are taken; they are throwing. 15. I have been received; I had been received; you will have been received.

(c) In what respects do verbs in *-iō* of the third conjugation differ from other verbs of the same conjugation?

### XXXVI.

(a) 1. Longō flūmine in mare venient audācēs Rōmānī. 2. Proeliō equestrī hostēs in fugam datī sunt (in *fugam dare*, *put to flight*). 3. Ācrēs militēs perīculum proeli equestris nōn timēbant. 4. Omnia calcāria equitum audācium in altō flūmine āmissa erant. 5. Ingēns et altum est mare et multōs hominēs perterret.

(b) 1. They gave spurs to the bold Roman. 2. Fear of the huge animals seized all the brave men. 3. There is a huge bridge over (in) the swift river. 4. The powerful leaders will be praised by all the commons. 5. There are powerful animals in the sea.

(c) Decline together the Latin words for *sharp spur*; *brave soldier*; *equestrian order*; *bold slave*; *active consul*. What is the ending of the nominative singular in neuter nouns which have i-stems? In what do the neuters of consonant stems end? Neuters of the second declension? What is peculiar in the declension of *celer*? What adjectives of the third declension are called Adjectives of Three Terminations? of Two Terminations? of One Termination? What is the Latin for *seem*? for *put to flight*?

### XXXVII.

(a) 1. Brevissimam aestātem; brevissimā aestāte; brevī aestāte. 2. Longior mūrus; longiōris mūrī; longiōrum mūrōrum. 3. In inīquiōre locō; in inīquiōra loca; in inīquiōribus locīs. 4. In inīquiōrem locum; cum certissimīs virīs; ā certissimō homine. 5. Ācriōrum calcārium; ācriōris calcāris; ācriōre calcāre.

(b) 1. In a deeper sea; of a shorter summer; with a swifter horse. 2. Of swifter ships; of very swift ships. 3. In a longer time; of the longest time; a long time. 4. To a braver man; to braver men; to the bravest men. 5. To the bravest boy; to brave boys; to a brave boy.

(c) 1. Imperātor potentior erat quam lēgātus. 2. Cicerō ācerrimus cōnsul urbem brevissimō tempore servāvit. 3. Hiems gravior aestāte est. 4. Equī celeriōrēs sunt

hominibus. 5. Lēgātum dē numerō hostium certiōrem faciēbās. 6. In oppidō fortius praesidium est quam in castrīs. 7. Praesidia fortiōra sunt quam cīvēs. 8. Brevisimō tempore militēs in locum inīquiōrem venient. 9. Illī certī hominēs nōn sine periculō in oppidum venient. 10. Celerrimās nāvēs hostium vīdimus.

## XXXVIII.

(a) 1. Corpora Rōmānōrum minōra erant quam Gallōrum. 2. Amīcī meliōrēs inimicīs sunt. 3. Plūs frūmentī est in oppidō quam in castrīs. 4. Plūra pericula in bellō quam in pāce sunt. 5. Māxima pars hostium dissimillima Rōmānīs<sup>1</sup> est. 6. Māiōrēs nostrī nōn erant Rōmānī. 7. Puer māior nātū est quam puella. 8. Frātrēs minōrēs nātū sunt sorōre. 9. Māiōre praesidiō urbem nostram dēfendēmus. 10. Nāvēs nostrae longiōrēs quam hostium erunt.

(b) Define positive degree; comparative degree; superlative degree. How is the comparative regularly formed in Latin? The superlative? How is the comparative declined? The superlative? How are nominatives in *-er* compared? When may *quam*, *than*, be omitted? Give the list of adjectives compared like *facilis*. Compare *ūtilis*, *useful*. What is peculiar in the use of *plūs*?

## XXXIX.

(a) 1. Gallī tum proximī Rōmānīs erant. 2. Prīmus ordō in summō monte collocātus erat. 3. Priōre nocte summus mōns ab hostibus captus erat. 4. Cohors in

<sup>1</sup> The dative is found with words meaning *like* or *unlike*.

mediam urbem vēnit. 5. Ad<sup>1</sup> extrēmās fossās erant altae turrēs. 6. In ūlteriōre Galliā est māximum praesidium Rōmānum. 7. Minōrēs nātū in postrēmō ōrdine sunt. 8. Prīmum āgmen sub collem vēnit. 9. Nautae fortēs ex ūltimīs locīs nāvibus vērunt. 10. Suntne animālia ingentia in īfīmō marī?

(b) 1. The rest of the men ; the middle of the field ; the top of the tower. 2. The ends of the walls ; the bottoms of the gates ; the van. 3. The nearer legions ; the legion next the camp ; mid-summer. 4. The end of summer ; at the end of summer ; at the end of winter. 5. In the following year ; the next year ; the place next the river is suitable for a camp.

## XL.

(a) 1. Gladiūs minus longīs nōn pūgnābimus. 2. Exteriōrēs mūnitiōnēs paulō propiōrēs sunt urbī quam castrīs. 3. Locus castrīs erat idōneus ; minus idōneus ; māximē idōneus ; minimē idōneus. 4. Estne aestās multō brevior quam hiems? 5. Maria multō altiōra sunt flūminibus. 6. Māter paulō pulchrior quam filia est. 7. Non omnēs filiae minus pulchrae mātribus sunt. 8. Vāllum multō minus altum erat quam mūrus. 9. Sed mūrī septem pedibus altiōrēs erant quam portae. 10. Multō māxima pars hostiū flūmen trāducta est.

(b) What kind of adjectives are regularly compared by **magis** and **māximē**? What part of speech is **magis**? What part of speech is **plūs**? Which, therefore, should one use in saying *more water?* *more favorable?* *more men?*

---

<sup>1</sup> With verbs of rest, **ad** may mean *near*.

*more suitable?* By what case is the degree of difference shown in Latin? Can you think of any expressions in English which resemble this use? Can you think of any reason why the ablative is used for this purpose?

## XLII.

(a) 1. Ab iīs auxiliū vōbīs datum erit. 2. Quid nōbīs pēius servitūte est? 3. Timōre nostrum prohibēbuntur hostēs. 4. Ā mē virtus, ā tē pecūnia laudātur. 5. Nōs cīvēs Rōmānī sumus; vōs servī estis et in servitūte manēbitis.

(b) 1. Of us; of them; of him. 2. To you (sing. and plur.). 3. You (acc.); us; her. 4. To me; to you; to him; to them; to her. 5. It; of that; by her; by them. 6. To us; to him; to it; to those. 7. We; you; they. 8. Them; those; him; her; it. 9. Me; you; us. 10. By me; by him; by it.

(c) Decline together the words meaning *that man; that city; that river*. How are we to determine the case of a pronoun? the number? the gender? Why are the personal pronouns seldom used in the nominative?

## XLIII.

(a) 1. Gladium hūius mīlitis habeō. 2. Illō annō māgnū bellū ā Rōmānīs gestū est. 3. Hūius praemium mihi dedistī. 4. Hōc praemium ā mē habēbitur. 5. Illud praemium ā tē nōn habēbitur. 6. Haec pīla nostra sunt. 7. Illī gladiī sunt hōrum mīlitū. 8. Nōmen illīus hominis Mārcus; nōmen hūius, Lūcius est. 9. Haec perīcula

māiōra sunt quam illa. 10. Illa perīcula pauciōra quam haec nōn erant.

(b) 1. This city was saved by that consul. 2. This brave consul saved our city from (a) the greatest danger. 3. The former despaired of safety, but the latter did not fear the danger. 4. We shall not see the great Caesar. 5. In these regions they found very great forests. 6. On that night they killed very many citizens. 7. Of this man; of these men; of those men. 8. Do you see that man? do you see those men? 9. This is Caesar; that is a lieutenant; the former I fear; the latter I do not fear. 10. They have given many books to us; to you; to me; to them.

(c) Decline together the Latin words meaning *this consul*; *this altar*; *this work*; *that body*; *that province*; *that poet*. What is the plural of *that* in English? of *this*?

#### XLIV.

(a) 1. Militēs apud imperātōrem suum cōsistent. 2. Tum imperātor cōpiās suās laudābit. 3. Illī laudem eius audient. 4. Nam is eis summam laudem dabit. 5. Hī tuam urbem numquam dēfendent. 6. Sed urbs eōrum mākīmā virtūte ab eis dēfendētur. 7. Fortēs virī oppidum suum dēfendēbant. 8. Nam illud oppidum ab hostibus eōrum oppūgnātum erat. 9. In illā silvā hostēs cōstitērunt. 10. Suamne urbem oppūgnābunt?

(b) 1. My book is a little longer than yours. 2. But yours is much wider than mine. 3. This region is ours; that one, yours. 4. I praise my friends, he praises his. 5. I do not praise his friends. 6. Cicero was a great man



among his [own] people. 7. The enemy will defend their [own] city. 8. [It was] his spurs the horseman lost, not mine. 9. I have not found his spurs, but I have lost their money. 10. They did not lose their money.

## XLVI.

(a) 1. The prisoner whom you saw ; the prisoners whom you saw ; the prisoners who saw you ; the prisoner who saw you. 2. The signal which was given ; the signals which were given ; the signals by which we were informed. 3. The winter quarters to which they were returning ; the winter quarters in which they were ; the winter quarters from which they had come. 4. The soldier whose sword I have ; the soldiers whose swords I had ; the soldiers to whom I gave the swords ; the soldier to whom I shall give the sword. 5. The place to which he is returning ; the places to which they are returning ; the place from which I come ; the places from which we come.

(b) How is the gender of a relative pronoun determined ? the number ? the case ? Review § 225. Does the rule of that section contradict in any respect the rule for the agreement of the relative ? What are pronouns used for ? Could we express our thoughts without them ? Try. Tell the case, and give all possible meanings of **quibus** ; **cūī** ; **quī** ; **quae** ; **quō** ; **quōrum** ; **cūius** ; **quod**. Give the complete nominative of the relative in English ; the possessive ; the objective. Is there any *that* in English which neither the relative nor the demonstrative will translate in Latin ? Tell the case, and give all possible meanings of **quem** ; **quārum** ; **quōs** ; **quā** ; **quās** ; **quam**.

## XLVII.

(a) 1. Aliquī hominēs sunt in castrīs. 2. Quisque gladium habet. 3. Cūius gladiō servus meus interfectus est? 4. Ā quōdam est interfectus quī gladium nōn habēbat. 5. Quis bellī perīcula nōn timet? 6. Ā quō liber puerō datus est? 7. Quibus sīgna ā captīvīs data erant? 8. Cūius erant sīgna quae habēbātis? 9. Quī imperātor cōpiās suās ex hibernīs ēduxit? 10. Quis ex urbe revertit? 11. Fēminam quandam videō. Quis est? 12. Quae fēmina est quam videō? 13. Quid vidēs? Aliquās videō puellās. 14. Quae sunt puellae quās vidēs? 15. Hae filiae sunt fēminārum quārundam quae ex urbe hostium obsidēs<sup>1</sup> filiōs suōs ad imperātōrem mīsērunt.

(b) 1. Did you not say something?<sup>2</sup> 2. Not everyone who says this<sup>2</sup> is my friend. 3. Certain signals were made by the prisoners. 4. What signals had they made? 5. At what city have we arrived now? 6. A certain part of these were (sing.) placed on the top of a hill. 7. Whose book is this? 8. It is someone's whom you have never seen. 9. Each one's work is very good. 10. At a certain time the prisoners will be killed. 11. I have given each one a large reward.

## XLVIII.

(a) 1. Equitēs sub montem sē recēpērunt. 2. Ipsī peditēs sīgna nōn vīderant. 3. Ipse in illīs montibus

<sup>1</sup> "As hostages" (agreeing with **filiōs**).

<sup>2</sup> The neuter of pronouns and adjectives often means *things* in distinction from *persons*, which are denoted by the masculine (or feminine).

saepe fuī. 4. Haec puella sē laudat; nōs eam numquam laudābimus. 5. Quīdam saepe ad ipsam urbem vērunt. 6. Ipsōs laudō quōs semper laudāvī. 7. Cīvēs sē ab hostibus dēfendent quōs ab murīs vident. 8. Ā portīs mūrōrum Gallōs prohibēbunt. 9. Fīnibus nostrīs ipsī Gallōs prohibēbimus. 10. Nostram pecūniam ipse nōbīs dedit. 11. Quis sibi praemia dat? 12. Quis suī habet timōrem? 13. Ipse hōc dīxistī. 14. Ipse illud numquam dīxī. 15. Quīdam id dīxit quem ipse numquam vīdī. 16. Aliquem vīdimus quī ipse hōc dīxit. 17. Eum nōn laudāmus quī ipse sē laudat. 18. Ipsī nōs nōn laudāmus. 19. Vōs nōn vōbis laudem dedistis. 20. Ille vōbis laudem dabit quī ipse vestra opera vīdit.

(b) Explain the difference in the use of **suī** and **ipse**. Which would you use in translating *He came himself?* in *He wounded himself?* How far can the case-endings of **ille** be used in inflecting **ipse**?

### XLIX.

(a) 1. Totius oppidī praesidium erat ūna legiō. 2. Ūlīne equitēs cum hīs erant? 3. Minimē (= *no*); solī peditēs ab imperātōre missī erant. 4. Uter frātrum similior est patrī? 5. Neuter est patrī similis, sed māior nātū simillima est mātī. 6. Ūnīus āgminis dux erat Caesar. 7. Alterum āgmen ā Cicerōne dūcēbatur. 8. Nūllae nāvēs in marī vīsae sunt. 9. In nūllō flūmine sunt plūrēs nāvēs quam in hōc. 10. Nūllīus māior erat auctōritās quam Caesaris.

(b) 1. Of another hill; to another sister; to another place. 2. With the other legions; with the rest of the

legion ; by the rest of the citizens. 3. At no time were we throwing stones. 4. One cohort will not attack the town. 5. They will not attack the city alone. 6. The whole legion will be led-across the bridge. 7. In one legion there were ten cohorts. 8. Which of the two sisters is like her mother? 9. Neither sister is like the mother. 10. Have they any brothers? They have no brothers.

## LI.

1. *Hi manebunt ; ceteri discendent.* 2. *Alii obsides mittebant, alii pacem petebant.* 3. *Alius aliud faciebat.* 4. *Alii alio loco constiterant.* 5. *Aliae legionēs alia oppida oppugnabant.* 6. *Alterius imperatoris copiae peditēs, alterius equitēs sunt.* 7. *Alterum opus facile, alterum difficile est.* 8. *Alii portas oppidi oppugnabant, alii equitēs hostium circumveniēbant.* 9. *Aliud agmen venit.* 10. *Alterum latus castrorum flumine lato, alterum collibus altis defenditur.* 11. *Alterius Gaius, alterius Lucius est nomen.* 12. *Alius ab alio impeditur.* 13. *Hi servitūtem timebant et discesserunt, sed ceteri maximā cum virtute manebant et pugnant.* 14. *Reliqua pars obsidum mox veniet.* 15. *Ille miles nonne multo fortior est quam reliqui?* 16. *Hic locus castris multo magis est idoneus quam ceteri.* 17. *Reliquo tempore eos non timebimus.* 18. *Tuum consilium optimum, reliquorum pessimum erat.* 19. *Et Gaius et Lucius audaces erant viri ; itaque alter a legato, alter ab imperatore laudatus est.* 20. *Alter alterum laudavit.*

## LII.

(a) 1. Quis dextrī cornūs dux erat? 2. Equitātuī prae-  
mia dabuntur. 3. Prīncipātus cīvitātis ā multīs petitur.  
4. Iī quī prīncipātum senātūs Rōmānī habēbant prīncipēs  
appellābantur. 5. Senātus populusque Rōmānus impetum  
hostium nōn timēbant. 6. Senātuī populōque Rōmānō  
laus ab omnibus data est. 7. Senātūs populīque Rōmānī  
exercitūs potentissimī erant. 8. Quid potentius erat senātū  
populōque Rōmānō? 9. Impetus Gallōrum ā peditātū  
sōlō sustinēbitur. 10. Exercitus commeātū interclūdētur  
ab hostium equitibus.

(b) 1. The Gaul defended himself with his left hand.  
2. With our own hands we will complete the work.  
3. Leaders of armies are called generals. 4. The wings  
of the army alone will withstand the attack of the cav-  
alry. 5. We had arrived at the right wing.

(c) Decline together the Latin words meaning *our arrival; greater army; left wing*. What case-endings in the fourth declension are the same as those of the third? of the second? What cases end in *-ūs*? what in *-us*? In what nouns in Latin is the vocative different from the nominative? Do any of the fourth declension nouns remind you of verb forms?

## LIII.

(a) 1. In the plain; of the plain; they see the plain.  
2. Of the days; in five days; the camp was besieged for five days. 3. On that day hostages will be sent into the plain. 4. However, the Gauls will not exchange hostages.

5. I will draw up the line of battle on the day of their arrival. 6. We shall exchange; you have exchanged. 7. Will you give us a pledge of safety? 8. In a few days we shall come under (into) your protection. 9. Caesar had the utmost (**summus**) confidence in (dat.) his legions. 10. For five days the army besieged the town.

(b) 1. Hostēs adventum classis Rōmānae timent. 2. Itaque in aciē sē instrūxērunt. 3. Quō diē venient? 4. Obsidēs inter nōs nōn damus. 5. Venientne in fidem nostram? 6. In plānitiem venient quam ex colle vīdis-tis. 7. Fossa multīs pedibus longior erat quam mūrus. 8. Classis in marī omnis instrūcta erat. 9. Diēs decem in hōc locō mānsimus. 10. Fossa decem pedēs alta est.

## LIV.

(a) 1. 29, 38, 47, 55. 2. 45, 33, 22, 31. 3. 43, 52, 32, 64. 4. 75, 84, 93, 27. 5. 65, 96, 85, 76. 6. 21, 62, 73, 87. 7. 92, 24, 46, 37. 8. 44, 53, 66, 78. 9. 1000 ships; of 4000 swords; to 5000 soldiers. 10. Six miles; of seven miles; of one mile.

(b) 1. Trēs et vīgintā nāvēs sunt in illō flūmine. 2. In ūnā nāve sunt nōnāgintā quīnque nautae. 3. Ille vir octōgintā octō servōs habet. 4. Septem et sexāgintā obsidēs datī sunt. 5. Ille vir ūnum et quadrāgintā annōs māior nātū est quam hīc puer. 6. Istī amīcī sex et quīn-quāgintā numerō (in number) sunt. 7. Cum duōbus et septūāgintā militibus ille tribūnus proeliō discessit. 8. Rēx cum mīlle nāvibus veniet. 9. Decem mīlia passuum iter faciet. 10. Tria mīlia cīvium in proeliō interfecta sunt.

## LVI.

(a) 1. Mille et sēscentōs annōs manēbat cīvitās Rōmāna. 2. Prīmō impetū nostrōrum hostēs perterriti sunt. 3. Alterius oppidī mūrus mille passibus longior est quam alterius. 4. Quattuor sunt in mūrō portae, quārum ūna vīgintī pedēs lāta est, alia duōbus pedibus angustior quam prīma, tertia autem tribus pedibus lātior quam secunda, quarta, quae minima est, septem pedibus angustior quam prīma. 5. Passus Rōmānus quīnque habēbat pedēs. 6. Vāllum quīngentōs passūs longum erit. 7. Nam mūnitiōnēs quās militēs faciunt centum pedibus sunt longiōrēs quam cēterae. 8. Quīngentī passūs duo mīlia et quīngentā pedēs habent. 9. Trīgintā mīlia passuum ex hibernīs ad quoddam oppidum iter fēcērunt. 10. Diē septimō quattuor mīlia quadringentī quadrāgintā quattuor militēs vērērunt.

(b) What is a cardinal numeral? an ordinal numeral? What numerals are not declined? When is the word for *one* in the plural? Give a rule for the case of **mille**, singular and plural. In what do most multiples of *ten* end? multiples of *a hundred*?

## LVII.

(a) 1. Aegrē sub montem nōs recēpimus. 2. Quisque opus suum optimē facit. 3. Nēmō dīligentius quam tū populum dēfendet. 4. Graviter dēfēnsōrēs in fossam hostīs iēcērunt. 5. Satis diū adventum tuum, amīce, exspectāvimus. 6. Māximē gladiīs in flūmine impedītī sumus. 7. Gallīne ācrius quam Rōmānī pūgnābunt? 8. Quisque audācissimē pūgnābit. 9. Lēgātī, quī dē pāce

vēnerant, diūtissimē apud imperātōrem clārum mānsērunt.  
10. Equitēs ācriter impetum fēcērunt.

(b) 1. The troops fought very sharply. 2. The town was bravely defended. 3. The gates were more easily destroyed than the walls. 4. I completed this with great difficulty. 5. Did you march very far? 6. Each one did his work carefully. 7. Some will do this better than we. 8. You do not come often enough. 9. Will you not stay with your friends a little longer? 10. The battle was heard far and wide.

### LVIII.

(a) 1. Rōmae multī erant servī. 2. Rōmam ex aliīs terrīs plūrimī servī vēnerant. 3. Rōmā in aliās terrās exercitūs Rōmānī iter facient. 4. Corinthus urbs pulcherrima erat. 5. Corinthī multae ārae deōrum erant omnium. 6. Paulus (*Paul*) ille Corinthum pervēnit et ārās ipse vīdit. 7. Quid hominibus dīxit quōs Corinthī invēnit? 8. “Nōn bene, anīcī, hōc fēcistis, nam ūnus est Deus. 9. Is autem omnia fēcit, et Corinthī et Athēnīs et Rōmae et in omnibus terrae regiōnibus.” 10. Corinthō in alia loca discessit, sed litterās Corinthum ad amicōs mīsīt suās quās ipsī saepissimē audīvimus.

(b) 1. Athens; at Athens; from Athens; to Athens. 2. At home; home; from home. 3. At Corinth; to Corinth; from Corinth. 4. From Carthage; to Carthage; at Carthage. 5. From the country; to the country; in the country. 6. In what country are we, and to what country are we marching? 7. Cures; at Cures; from Cures; to Cures. 8. In Italy; to Italy; from Italy.



9. In Gaul ; in a city of Gaul ; to a city of Gaul. 10. In a town ; to a town ; from a town.

## LIX.

(a) Add terminations to the adjectives and pronouns, and translate.

1. Altitudō ill- aggeris māgn- est. 2. Clāmōrēs nostr- ā senibus in ill- palūde audientur. 3. Bon- est celeritās in opere bon-. 4. Me- labōre urbem vestr- servāvī. 5. Vīrēs senum nōn māxim- sunt. 6. Quīdam virī morte su- libertātem cīvium su- servāvērunt. 7. Cicerōnis ōrātiōnēs optim- ab omnibus appellābantur. 8. Profectiō imperātōris ā Gallīs expectāt- est. 9. Ist- profectiō servitūte pessim- mē liberāvit. 10. Timōre māgn- vīrium vestr- continēmur.

(b) 1. We shall take the rewards by force. 2. I see the altar of the god Jupiter. 3. What was the custom of travelling (*iter*) in those days? 4. The gods had sent an easy death to the old men. 5. For they were not slain by violence. 6. We do not fear the violence of the king. 7. For our strength is greater than his. 8. I will give praise to the gods in return for my safety. 9. With great swiftmess we made an attack on the enemy in a marsh in which they defended themselves. 10. Their shout was heard by the god Jupiter.

## LXI.

(a) 1. Possumus ; poteram ; potestis. 2. Poterās ; poteris ; potueris. 3. Potuistī ; potuerim ; poterātis. 4. Poterant ; poterō ; poteritis. 5. Potuerō ; potuerāmus ;

potuimus. 6. Potuistis; potuit; possum. 7. Potuerint; potueris; potuerās. 8. Potuī; possunt; potes. 9. Potes-tis; poterat; poterant. 10. Poterimus; poterunt; potuērunt.

(b) 1. They ought to set out; you ought to follow. 2. We cannot dwell in that place. 3. The speech which you made (*had*) could not be heard by those who had come. 4. I shall set out; you are setting out; we were setting out. 5. They had set out; they will have set out; why have you not set out? 6. Soon we shall set out from the place in which we have been dwelling (*perf.*). 7. The shouts of the people encouraged the defenders. 8. Do you always try to encourage your friends? 9. I shall try to do my work with swiftness. 10. On the departure of the old men the others tried to set out.

(c) Give the rule for changing *t* to *s* in the inflection of *possum*. What do we have instead of *potfuī*? To what tenses does the principle of this last change apply? Does the English infinitive always have *to* as its sign? What part of the verb is *do* in *We can do this well*?

## LXII.

(a) 1. Est bonus. 2. Sit bonus. 3. Sīmus fortēs. 4. Nōne fortēs sumus? 5. Ōrātiōnēs longae nōn sunt. 6. Ōrātiōnēs tuae nē sint longae! 7. Hōc ōrātiōne vōs cohortor, ut fortissimī sītis. 8. Fortissimī estis, quī hanc ōrātiōnem audīvistis. 9. Erisne, amīce, domī? 10. Litterās ad tē mittam, ut domī sīs. 11. Proficīscī nōn possum. 12. Haec faciat, nē proficīscī possim. 13. Rūs amīcum sequor. 14. Rūs amīcum sequar! 15. Rūs amīcōs nostrōs sequā-

mini. 16. Rōmānī Gallōs sequī cōnantur. 17. Gallōs Rōmānī sequī cōnentur. 18. Domī manent fēminae. 19. Domī maneant et fēminae et puerī. 20. Rūs nē veniant.

(b) 1. All [men] are praising the gods. 2. Let all [men] praise the gods. 3. Let the gods be praised by all. 4. The old men will praise the gods, that the enemy may return home. 5. The signal is seen by the old men with difficulty. 6. The old men cannot see the signals. 7. I do all these things, that they may be able to see our signals. 8. I will do this (neuter) that your signal may be able to be seen. 9. Let your shouts be heard far and wide. 10. The shouts will be heard by the gods whom we are trying to praise.

(c) What person-endings are used in forming the present subjunctive? How is the stem of the present subjunctive formed in each of the four conjugations? What is the stem of the present subjunctive of *sum*? of *possum*?

### LXIII.

(a) 1. Haec omnia dīxī ut fortiter pūgnārētis. 2. Convenīmus ut proelium committāmus. 3. Conveniāmus ut proelium committāmus. 4. Conveniāmus ut proelium committātur. 5. Dēfēnsōrēs tēla coniciunt ut mūrōs dēfendant. 6. Mūrōs dēfendunt ut cīvitatē servent. 7. Mūrōs dēfendēbant ut cīvitatē servārent. 8. Cīvitatē servāvī ut vōs omnēs liberī essētis. 9. Exercitūs prōgressī sunt ut proelium committerent. 10. Rōmānī prōgrediēbantur ut proelium cum Gallīs committerent.

(b) 1. We are fighting that you may all be free. 2. We were fighting that they might be free. 3. Let us fight that we may save the women and children! 4. They fought to save them. 5. Let us follow the prisoners, that they may not be able to return home. 6. We returned to the country, that he might not be able to follow us—that he might not follow us. 7. Can you not learn the strength of the men? 8. Let us meet that we may learn the strength of this man. 9. They met to learn all the facts. 10. The facts which you have learned could not be ascertained by these old men, whom we encouraged to try (subjunctive) to understand (infinitive) them.

(c) Can the imperfect subjunctive of **sum** and **possum** be formed by adding person-endings to the present infinitive, as can be done in the case of regular verbs?

#### LXIV.

(a) 1. Unde conveniunt? Nesciō unde conveniant. 2. Nōnne mē rogābās unde convenīrent? 3. Ubi manet exercitus? Nēmō mihi dīxit ubi manēret. 4. Numquam tibi dīcam ubi maneat. 5. Cūr proelium nōn committunt? Nōn intellegō cūr proelium nōn committant. 6. Cūī imperātor dixit cūr proelium non committeret? 7. Quō militēs prōgrediēbantur? Quis scīvit quō prōgrederentur? 8. Cūr illud latus exercitūs apertum est? Nesciō cūr apertum sit. Nescīvī cūr apertum esset. 9. Cōgnōscere nōn possumus quid in castrīs faciant. 10. Quid facerent cōgnōscere cōnātī sumus.

(b) 1. Where do you live? 2. Why do you ask me where I live? 3. I will not tell you why I ask you where

you live. 4. They could not tell us who was asking where we were living. 5. I could not tell the old men where you were. 6. What is the height of that mound? I don't know what the height of the mound is. 7. He didn't know what the height was. 8. Let us draw up the line of battle. 9. Why are you drawing up a line of battle in that place? 10. Don't you understand why the line of battle is being drawn up?

(c) In which sentences of §§ 361 and 363 is the indirect question the object of the principal verb? In which (if any) is it the subject? Should an indirect question be called a substantive clause? Why? Should a clause of purpose be called a substantive clause? Examine all the exercises in this lesson, and see whether the indirect question always has an interrogative word (*who, why, etc.*) to introduce it. Can you make an indirect question in English without an interrogative word?

## LXVI.

(a) 1. Nesciō cūr veniās—vēneris. 2. Nescivī cūr venīret—vēnisset. 3. Quaerō ā tē quid cōgitēs—cōgitāveris. 4. Rogātus sum quid cōgitārem—cōgitāvīsem. 5. Nescīmus quot mīlitēs Rōmam dūcat—dūcantur—dūxerit—ductī sint. 6. Nescivērunt cūr tot obsidēs ex illō oppidō ēdūceret—ēductī essent—ēdūxisset—ēdūcerentur. 7. Quis scit quot tēla ā dēfēnsōribus coniecta sint? 8. Nēmō sciēbat quot coniecta essent. 9. Cūr quaeris quid sciam—scīveris? 10. Quis scit quid quaesītum sit—quaerātur?

(b) 1. I don't know why you follow me—have followed

me—are following me. 2. Why do you ask me what I am trying to do—was trying to do—have tried to do? 3. We will not tell you what we feared—had feared—were fearing—have feared—have been fearing. 4. We tell you what we fear. 5. Who told them what we feared? 6. How well did you know what we had feared? 7. No one knows what he can do. 8. No one knew what they could do. 9. Do you know where my books are—were—have been? 10. No one told me where they had been—were.

## LXVII.

(a) 1. Nōlunt; volunt; volēbant. 2. Mālunt; vīs; mā-vīs. 3. Nōn vīs; nōlēs; nōluistī. 4. Nōlō; nōlam; mālō. 5. Māluerō; volō; vult. 6. Nōn vult; nōluerit; māvult. 7. Mālle; māvultis; vultis. 8. Nōn vultis; velle; mālumus. 9. Volumus; nōlle; nōlumus. 10. Volēs; mālēbat; nōluērunt; nōluerant.

(b) 1. I do not wish to follow. 2. You do not know why I do not wish to follow. 3. We wished to set out. 4. We shall not tell you with whom we wished to set out. 5. No one asked you with whom you wished to fight. 6. No one knew why he had been unwilling to come. 7. Did you ask them why they preferred not to exchange hostages? 8. Why do they ask who wishes to be leader? 9. I did not ask who wished to be leader; I wished to know who had been unwilling to return home. 10. I freed you from slavery that you might be willing to follow me.

## LXVIII.

(a) 1. Fīt ut amīcī non sīnt. 2. Amīcī fīunt—fient—fiant. 3. Haec dixit ut amīcī fierētis. 4. Fīat pāx! 5. Inīmīcī fuerant; amīcī fiēbant. 6. Factum est ut conciliū convocārētur. 7. Cāsū accidit ut dē hāc rē certior nōn sit factus. 8. Numquam accidet ut nōs, Galba, inimīcī fiāmus. 9. Nē accidat ut vōs amīcī nōn fīant! 10. Tam amīcī factī sunt ut nēmō eōs inimīcōs facere possit.

(b) 1. Who informed you why the cavalry was coming? 2. I was informed of the cavalry's approach by a slave. 3. Let the slave inform the senate of the enemy's approach. 4. The senate has not been informed how many soldiers are coming with you. 5. They had not informed me of the arrival of the infantry. 6. We shall have been informed of the arrival of the fleet. 7. The man of whose arrival you have been informed is friendly to us all. 8. The sword which you see was made by a Gaul. 9. Peace will not be made by the Gauls. 10. They will not make peace, nor (**neque**) will they tell us why they have not sent ambassadors to Caesar.

## LXIX.

(a) 1. Ferō; feror; fers; ferimus. 2. Ferris; feriminī; ferre; feram; ferrī. 3. Fert; fertur; feruntur. 4. Ferimur; fertis; ferēbās. 5. Ferunt; tulērunt; ferent. 6. Tulerint; tulerant; lātī erant. 7. Lātus est; lātus erat; lātus erit. 8. Lātum est; lāta erat; tulistī. 9. Tulimus; lātī sumus; ferēbāmur. 10. Ferēmur; ferēmus; ferēris.

(b) 1. Let them bring swords. 2. You don't wish them to bring those swords, do you? 3. Didn't he ask why they were not bringing—had not brought—their swords? 4. We fought so bravely that the enemy retreated to the foot of a high mountain. 5. I don't know why you have not reported this to your king. 6. Let us bring together all the swords which we found in the city. 7. Your enemies have been removed by the brave consul. 8. He will remove our enemies so that they may not make war on us. 9. I will neither endure this, nor will I report our lack of supplies to the enemy. 10. We don't know why you are enduring all these things, and we do not wish you to endure [them].

(c) Name those forms of **ferō** which are irregularly formed from the present stem. Describe the other irregularities of **ferō**.

## LXXI.

(a) 1. Eunt; iī; ībat. 2. Eant; it; ierant. 3. Īs; ībit; ībunt. 4. Eāmus; īmus; iimus. 5. Īre; ut īret; ut eat. 6. Ībāmus; ībimus; ieram. 7. Ītis; ut eātis; ut irētis. 8. Ībitis; īstī; īstis. 9. Iit; ierat; ierit. 10. Eam; ībō; ierās.

(b) 1. They have gone; we are going; I was going. 2. You will have gone; we had gone; I am going. 3. You will go; they will have gone; you were going. 4. You had gone; I shall have gone; we shall have gone. 5. You had gone; let me go; let us go. 6. I don't know why he is going—went—has gone—goes. 7. We didn't know why you were going—had gone. 8. No one told



them why we had gone so many miles. 9. To go; they will go; they were going. 10. We will go through your province without mischief.

(c) What is the present stem of *eō*? Before what letters does it become *e-*? What is peculiar about the imperfect and future tenses of *eō*?

## LXXII.

(a) 1. Fer arma; feruntor gladii. 2. Ferte librōs, servī, ut eōs amīcīs ostendam. 3. Armāte vōs, mīlitēs; rem pūblicam dēfendite. 4. Ī, puer, domum; vix ante (*before*) noctem eō perveniēs. 5. Dīc mīhi, Gāi, ubi fueris. 6. Fortēs, mīlitēs, este. 7. Fortēs estis; hostium oppidum incendite. 8. Portās, lēgāte, dēlē; rem pūblicam servāre cōnāre. 9. Litterās ad mē plūrimās scribe. 10. Vāstāte agrōs Gallōrum.

(b) 1. Approach, slave; approach, slaves. 2. Follow me, Galba; follow Galba, soldiers. 3. Show me your letter, my son; show me your books, boys. 4. Arm the people, tribunes; arm yourself (*you*), Caesar. 5. Stay with me, Vergil; stay at home, girls. 6. Be good, girls; be brave and good, boys. 7. Throw your javelin at (*into*) the enemy, my brother; kill those who are trying to destroy our state, soldiers. 8. Lieutenant, make a bridge over (*in*) that river. 9. Lead out all the troops, Sabīnus. 10. Gauls, make war on the Romans; Caesar, make war on the Gauls.

(c) Which form of the imperative has no termination? From which stem is the imperative formed? Which

forms of the imperative resemble other forms of the verb? What letter must be added to the terminations of the future imperative active to produce the terminations of the same tense in the passive? Which form of the passive imperative is missing? Can you suggest how its place might be supplied? How may the punctuation help one to distinguish imperative forms from other forms of the verb spelled in the same way? What three different things may **monēre** mean? What two different things may **monēmini** mean?

## LXXIII.

(a) 1. Fugere; fūgisse. 2. Cōstituere; cōstituī; cōstituisse. 3. Cōstitūtum īrī; cōstitūtum esse; cōstitūtūrus esse. 4. Ausūrus esse; ausus esse; audēre. 5. Inceptūrus esse; incēpisse; coepisse. 6. Inceptum īrī; incepta esse; incipī. 7. Coepisse; armāre; armārī. 8. Armāvisse; armātus esse; armātum īrī. 9. Armātūrus esse; dēlētūrus esse; ostentūrus esse. 10. Dēlēvisse; tenuisse; vīdisse; vēnisse; ventūrās esse; vīsūrus esse; dēlētūrus esse; dēlētum īrī; dēlērī; dēlētus esse.

(b) 1. I say that you are destroying the state. 2. Do you say that I am destroying the state? 3. We say that you wish to destroy it. 4. He is not trying to set the city on fire. 5. They say that the Gauls are setting the cities on fire. 6. Do you not say that they are trying to set the house on fire? 7. You don't say that we are trying to follow them, do you? 8. Tell me why you wish to go. 9. They tell me that she does not wish to go with us. 10. Who says that we cannot fight bravely?

## LXXIV.

(a) 1. Perīculum māgnum est. 2. Dīcit perīculum māgnum esse. 3. Aedificia multa erant. 4. Dīxit aedificia multa esse. 5. Dīxit aedificia ōlim (*once*) plūrima fuisse, sed iam pauca esse, atque mox nūlla futūra esse. 6. Explōrātōrēs imperātōrem certīōrem fēcērunt collem ab hostibus tenērī. 7. Dīcit perīculum māximum fore (a shorter form for *futūrum esse*). 8. Dīxit auxilium ā Caesare missum īrī. 9. Dīxit imperātōrem auxilium missūrum esse. 10. Dīcunt plūrimās fēminās in oppidō vīsās esse.

(b) 1. They say that the enemy are fleeing—have fled. 2. They said that the enemy were fleeing—had fled. 3. I say that the soldiers are seeking—were seeking—will seek water. 4. They said that the boy was seeking—had sought—would seek water. 5. We said that you would be praised—had been praised—were praised. 6. Did you not say that all the buildings had been set on fire—would be set on fire—were being set on fire? 7. Who said that scouts were being sent—had been sent—would be sent? 8. Caesar was informed that the enemy were seen—had been seen—would soon be seen. 9. He told them that he could see the enemy. 10. He said they could be seen.

## LXXVI.

(a) 1. Dīcit se superāvīsse; vēnit ut superāret; superāre voluit. 2. Dīc mihī cūr hostēs pulsī sint, nam eōs pulsōs esse iam dīxistī. 3. Putāsne Rōmānōs calamitātem acceptūrōs esse? 4. Quot calamitātēs accēperint nesciō. 5. Quis cōsulis liberōs patriā pellī iussit? 6. Numquam

ego crēdēbam tē liberōs amīcī meī patriā pulsūrum esse.  
 7. Nōn vēnī ut eōs patriā pellerem; nōlō eōs pellerē.  
 8. Dīcit sē eōs pellerē patriā nōlle. 9. Dīxitne cūr hōc  
 facere nōllet? 10. Cōsul vōs haec beneficia accipere vult.

(b) 1. The scouts have already seen the redoubts.  
 2. Who says that they have seen the redoubts? 3. The  
 scouts themselves say that they have seen them. 4. Do  
 you know where they were seen? 5. I did not know that  
 they had been seen. 6. I did not come to see them.  
 7. Who bade you come here (hūc)? 8. I do not wish to  
 tell you who bade me come. 9. Tell me why you wished  
 to come. 10. I have already told you that I do not wish  
 to see you.

## LXXVII.

(a) 1. Sōlis videndī; sōlem videndī. 2. Patriam relin-  
 quendō; patriam relinquendī. 3. Patriā relinquendā;  
 ad patriam relinquendam. 4. Flūmina trānseundō; flū-  
 minis trānseundī. 5. Flūminibus trānseundīs; flūmine  
 trānseundō. 6. Flūmen trānseundō; fluminum trānse-  
 undōrum. 7. Ad flūmina trānseunda; ad flūmen trānse-  
 undum. 8. Multās rēs dīscendī; multās rēs dīscendō.  
 9. Multīs rēbus dīscendīs; ad multās rēs dīscendās vēnimus.  
 10. Ad hostīs superandās statim proficīscēmur.

(b) 1. By overcoming the enemy we shall save the  
 state. 2. We thanked the gods for (prō) the hope of see-  
 ing the sun. 3. Do you suppose that by crossing the  
 river we shall be free? 4. By giving favors the general  
 thinks he will be saved from (ā) disaster. 5. Do you think  
 we can conquer the Romans by routing one legion?

6. Of believing; for believing; by believing. 7. The danger of pitching camp in this place is very great. 8. We shall terrify the enemy by laying waste their fields. 9. By making good laws, the Romans became great. 10. The crime of making bad laws is a great [one].

## LXXVIII.

(a) 1. Mīlitēs mūros mūnientēs. 2. Mīlitum oppidum oppūgnantium. 3. Ā mīlitibus oppidum dēfendentibus hostēs videntur. 4. Mīlitibus pūgnantibus multa vulnera dabuntur. 5. Equitī pūgnantī vulnus dabātur. 6. Lēgātō salūtem dēspērantī haec dicta sunt. 7. Galba equitēs dūcēns ā Gallō interfectus est. 8. Impetum faciāmus in Rōmānōs fugientēs! 9. Vulnera eōrum pūgnantium plūrima erant. 10. Scūtum Rōmānī fugientis ab hoste captum est.

(b) 1. A ship coming; ships coming. 2. An animal coming; animals coming. 3. We see the citizens arming—the citizen arming. 4. With seeing eyes; with the seeing eye. 5. We were informed of this by the men making war—by a man following us. 6. The soldiers setting out from home raised a shout. 7. Do you hear the shouts of the children coming home? 8. We hear the shout[ing] of the army pursuing the enemy. 9. The man doing the work was praised by all. 10. Those hindering you will be hindered themselves.

## LXXIX.

(a) 1. Vir liberōs docēns multa dē Rōmānīs dixit. 2. Liberī ā fēminā bonā doctī multa dīscēbant quae ante

(here adverb) *nōn cōgnōverant*. 3. *Puerī questī sunt*. 4. *Puerī querentēs ā patribus audītī sunt*. 5. *Puerī questī quod dīscere nōn volunt ā nūllō laudābuntur*. 6. *Missī lēgātī pācem postulābunt*. 7. *Obsidibus retentīs, lēgātī ab imperātōre nōn audientur*. 8. *Lēgātī hīs condiōnibus pācis postulātīs discessērunt*. 9. *Pāce, lēgātī, factā, discēdite*. 10. *Lēgātī primā lūce discēdentēs ā nūllō vidēbantur*.

(*b*) 1. Having announced this fact, all withdrew. 2. Having complained because the Roman people had suffered disaster, the ambassador withdrew. 3. Setting out at daybreak, we reached Rome before night. 4. They died [while] fleeing from the danger which they feared. 5. Having routed the Germans, the Gauls returned home. 6. [While] trying to take a town, many of them were killed. 7. Having tried to take the town, whose defenders they could not conquer, the brave Gauls returned to their native land. 8. Crossing a wide and deep river, we at once came to the enemy's camp. 9. The defenders of this (pl.), seeing us, immediately began to throw missiles from the walls. 10. Leaving the women and old men at home, let us set out at daybreak for the place where the enemy have pitched their camp.

### LXXXI.

1. *Catīlīna sententiā senātūs veritus urbem reliquit*. 2. *Urbe relictā, cōnātū nōn dēstitit*. 3. *Catīlīnā vīvō, cīvēs, māgnō in perīculō eritis*. 4. *Sociīs victīs, cōnātū nostrō dēsistāmus*. 5. *Fēminae mortem veritae omnēs fūgerant*. 6. *Caesar dē sententiā Gallōrum certior*

factus concilium sociōrum convocāvit. 7. Sententiīs eōrum rogātīs, multa dē malā fidē Gallōrum questus est. 8. Multa questus de calamitāte quam accēperat populus Rōmānus, quaesīvit cūr nōn omnēs ad concilium convēnissent. 9. Rōmā conditā, multīs sē circumvenīri perīculīs Rōmānī cōgnōvērunt. 10. Hīs condiōnibus nūntiātīs, lēgātiō domum profectus est. 11. Profectiō eōrum cōgnitā, multī rogābant cūr discēderent. 12. Oppidīs incēnsīs agrīsque vāstātīs Rōmānī dē Galliā discēdere cōstituērunt. 13. Hostibus pulsīs Gallī sē Rōmānōs superrāre posse putāvērunt. 14. Nōs patriā pulsī ad vōs fūgimus. 15. Nostrī ēruptiōne duābus portīs factā Gallōs pellere cōnābantur. 16. Exercitus domum revertit, māgnā calamitāte acceptā. 17. Nostrīs primā lūce profectīs, hostēs eōs castra reliquisse crēdidērunt. 18. Subsidiō nōn missō, castra expūgnāta sunt. 19. Hī nōn ausī flūmen transīre, et ab equitatū captī, omnēs interfectī sunt. 20. Dē iniuriā questus quam intulerant (*cause*) Gallī, Caesar negāvit sē pācem esse factūrum. 21. Cīvibus armātīs atque omnibus rēbus ad bellum parātīs, accidit ut subitō pācem populi facerent.

## LXXXII.

(a) 1. Adiēns ; aditūrus ; adibit ; aditūrus est. 2. Effectus ; efficiēns ; efficiendum est ; effectum est. 3. Captīvī reductī sunt—redūcendī sunt. 4. Captīvōs reductūrus est—reductūrī sunt. 5. Caesar dixit sē gentēs Gallicās oppressūrum esse. 6. Gentēs eī opprimendae sunt. 7. Gentēs oppressūrus est. 8. Scīsne cur Gallōs oppressūrus sit? 9. Quis rogāvit cūr opprimendī essent? 10. Rogō quis eōs

oppressūrus sit. 11. Rogātus sum quis eōs oppressūrus esset.

(b) 1. Tell me what you will promise them. 2. I told you what I would promise them. 3. We must leave off fighting. 4. We had to cross the river. 5. We shall have to cross more rivers. 6. You must protect your rights, Romans. 7. We are going to protect our rights and [those] of our children. 8. Do you know why the Roman people is going to give the military command to Pompey? 9. It must not be given to him. 10. You must give it to a greater man than (to) Pompey, citizens.

### LXXXIII.

(a) 1. Venī; venīte; veniat; veniant. 2. Nē veniat; nē veniant; nōlī venīre; nōlīte venīre. 3. Utinam veniat; utinam veniant; nē vēnerit; nē vēnerint; utinam nē veniat! 4. Utinam venīret—vēnīssēt—nē veniant! 5. Utinam polliceāris—pollicitus esset—pollicērētur! 6. Nōlī pollicērī; nōlīte pollicērī; nē pollicitus sīs. 7. Pollicēre; pollicēminī; pollicentor. 8. Polliceātur; nē polliceāmur. 9. Fīt; fīet; fīat; utinam fīat; nē fīat; utinam nē fīat! 10. Vetā; vetāte; nōlīte vetāre; nē vetueris; nē vetēs; utinam vetent; utinam nē vetuissēmus!

(b) 1. Don't delay. 2. May we all be present! 3. O that you may not forbid us to cease from this attempt! 4. Let him not destroy the Gauls. 5. O that we were going to the Rhine! 6. Would that you had conquered! 7. If only they would leave off fighting! 8. Don't complain! 9. Would that Caesar were defending our rights! 10. Would that that city had never been founded!



## LXXXIV.

(*a*) 1. Vēnērunt urbem vīsum. 2. Gallī lēgātōs mittunt questum quod iniūriās accēpērunt. 3. Ad Pompēium eāmus quaesītum cūr domī herī nōn fuerit. 4. Dīxī eum interfectum īrī. 5. Facile factū est hōc oppidum expūgnāre. 6. Mirābile vīsū erat quam fortiter pūgnārent. 7. Proficīscāmur ad hostīs īnsequendōs. 8. In ūnum locum convēnērunt armōrum trādendōrum causā. 9. Omnēs adsumus ōrātiōnis tuae audiendae causā. 10. Nōne est in Galliā Gallōrum opprimendōrum causā?

(*b*) Substitute for the expressions of purpose in the above sentences others, as indicated by the letters in parentheses, which refer to § 474. 1. (*a*), (*b*), (*c*). 2. (*a*), (*b*), (*d*), (*e*). 3. (*a*), (*b*), (*e*). 7. (*a*), (*b*), (*c*), (*e*). 8. (*a*), (*b*), (*e*). 9. (*a*), (*b*), (*c*), (*e*). 10. (*a*), (*b*), (*e*).

## LXXXVI.

(*a*) 1. Quis nihil timet? 2. Quis nōn timet nē bona amittat? 3. Nōne timēbas nē linguam Latīnam numquam dīscere possēs? 4. Nunc autem num timēs ut eam dīscās? 5. Vōs hortor, puerī, ut bonī sītis. 6. Senex adulēscentēs hortātus est nē fortiter nōn pūgnārent. 7. Senex militēs hortātus ut fortissimē prō patriā pūgnārent: nōn veritus est nē fugerent. 8. Timēsne nē scutīs amissīs Rōmānī dē proeliō discēdant? 9. Vōs moneō, militēs, ut prō patriā pūgnētis. 10. Multō magis est timendum nē audācius (too boldly) hostīs īnsequantur quam nē fortiter nōn pūgnent.

(b) 1. I am afraid<sup>1</sup> he will not come. 2. I am afraid he has not come. 3. We were afraid that you would not come. 4. We were afraid that you had not come. 5. I urged him to fear nothing less than death. 6. He does not fear that he may die. 7. I am afraid that the baggage is not there. 8. Are you afraid that he has become accustomed to delay? 9. I am not afraid that you will delay. 10. I was afraid that you had lingered there.

## LXXXVII.

1. I have persuaded them to go out. 2. I had persuaded them to set out. 3. They commanded him to go (express in two ways). 4. I shall forbid you to come. 5. Shall you not harm those who have harmed your friends? 6. You cannot please those whom you wish to harm. 7. The Roman people is about to make war on the Gauls. 8. Do you know why they are going to make war on us? 9. Tell us who will be in command of the army. 10. They say that Caesar has been placed in command of that army. 11. Can you not persuade him to help us? 12. He does not wish to harm you, but he is afraid that you will make war on his allies. 13. The trusty allies never hesitate to pursue those who have tried to harm us. 14. Children, obey your fathers and mothers. 15. O that I had never injured my friends! 16. O that they may not harm our brothers! 17. Don't you believe me? 18. I believe you, but I will not help you. 19. Persuade him to believe you. 20. I can't persuade them to make war on your allies.

---

<sup>1</sup> The absence of the *that* does not affect the translation.

21. Who is in command of the army which has been sent to make war on our enemies?

## LXXXVIII.

(a) 1. Mox Galliā potiēminī. 2. Hinc mox proficiscēmur. 3. Amīcīs nostrīs fruāmur. 4. Militēs in proeliō et gladiīs et scutīs ūtī cōnsūevērunt. 5. Quis nescit quibus rēbus vēscantur equī? 6. Dic mihi, puer, quibus rēbus ad scribendum utī cōsuēveris. 7. Gladiīs ad pūgnandum, nōn ad scribendum ūtimur. 8. Imperātor terrā potītus est cūius cīvēs sē Rōmānōs superāre posse putaverant. 9. Quō obsidēs mittentur? 10. Captīvī eō mittentur unde numquam hūc revertere poterunt.

(b) 1. Where is he? 2. Where have they come from? 3. Where are you going? 4. There we found nothing. 5. I shall go there to-morrow. 6. We came from there yesterday. 7. Come here, my friend. 8. Here is a new book which I wish you to see. 9. We shall all set out from here at daybreak. 10. You have performed a service by which you have pleased the senate.

## LXXXIX.

(a) 1. Dum eum adiuvāre cōnor, ipse in māgnō periculō eram. 2. Quamquam tibi persuādēre nōn possum ut mēcum veniās, volō tamen tē audire quid dictūrus sim. 3. Postquam Galliā potītus est, in aliās terrās est profectus. 4. Ubi eō pervēnī, bene intellegēbam numquam me inde revertere posse sine auxiliō tuō. 5. Nisi nōs tē relinquere vīs, ante lūcem non proficiscēmur. 6. Cum pater filium

hortātus esset ut ibi manēret, is tamen patrī nōn pārūt.

7. Cum eō pervēnissem, timēbam ut revertere possem.

8. Sī amīcīs meīs nocēbis, ego tibi numquam aderō.

9. Caesar ut intellēxit sociōs sibi nōn pāruisse, prīncipēs eōrum ad colloquium convocāvit. 10. Prīncipēs ad colloquium vērunt, ut audirent quid imperātor dīcere vellet.

(b) 1. While I was obeying you, you were trying to harm me. 2. Although they do not use swords, yet we know that they are brave. 3. After the general had performed great services for his country, he died in the town where he had been accustomed to live. 4. Although they have no (not) fear of death, yet they are not braver than other men. 5. Because you do not know where I came from, do you think that you are braver than I? 6. We use the things that we have. 7. While the enemy were bravely resisting in one place, some of our men attacked the camp at another place. 8. While I am present, I wish to hear your speech. 9. While I am enjoying this power, I wish to help you all. 10. While some were handing over the arms, others were trying to escape.

## FORMS

The constructive method employed in the treatment of inflections makes it undesirable and unnecessary to give all paradigms in full. The system here adopted is designed to facilitate reviews, without neutralizing the effect of the Exercises.

### I. NOUNS.

Declension I.			
SING.		PLUR.	
<i>Nom.</i>	} -a	} -ae	
<i>Voc.</i>	} -a		
<i>Gen.</i>	-ae	-ārum	
<i>Dat.</i>	-ae	-īs	
<i>Acc.</i>	-am	-ās	
<i>Abl.</i>	-ā	-īs	

Declension II.					
SING.			PLUR.		
M.		N.	M.		N.
<i>Nom.</i>	-us (—)	} -um	} -ī	} -a	
<i>Voc.</i>	-e, -ī (—)				
<i>Gen.</i>	-ī	-ī	-ōrum	-ōrum	
<i>Dat.</i>	-ō	-ō	-īs	-īs	
<i>Acc.</i>	-um	-um	-ōs	-a	
<i>Abl.</i>	-ō	-ō	-īs	-īs	

## Declension III.

MASCULINES AND FEMININES.		NEUTERS.	
SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
<i>N. V.</i> -s (—)	-ēs	—	-a (-ia)
<i>Gen.</i> -is	-um (-ium)	-is	-um (-ium)
<i>Dat.</i> -ī	-ibus	-ī	-ibus
<i>Acc.</i> -em (-im)	-ēs (-īs)	—	-a (-ia)
<i>Abl.</i> -e (-ī)	-ibus	-e (-ī)	-ibus

## Declension IV.

MASCULINES AND FEMININES.		NEUTERS.	
SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
<i>N. V.</i> -us	-ūs	-ū	-ua
<i>Gen.</i> -ūs	-uum	-ūs	-uum
<i>Dat.</i> -uī (-ū)	-ibus (-ubus)	-ū	-ibus (-ubus)
<i>Acc.</i> -um	-ūs	-ū	-ua
<i>Abl.</i> -ū	-ibus (-ubus)	-ū	-ibus (-ubus)

## Declension V.

	SING.	PLUR.
<i>N. V.</i>	-ēs	-ēs
<i>Gen.</i>	-eī (-ēī)	-ērum
<i>Dat.</i>	-eī (-ēī)	-ēbus
<i>Acc.</i>	-em	-ēs
<i>Abl.</i>	-ē	-ēbus

## IRREGULAR NOUNS.

Domus. See § 317.

Senex. See § 321.

Vis. See § 319.

Iuppiter. See § 325

Deus. See § 320.

## II. ADJECTIVES.

## First and Second Declensions.

## (a) Nominative Singular in -us, -a, -um.

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>N. V.</i>	-us, -e	-a	-um	-ī	-ae	-a
<i>Gen.</i>	-ī	-ae	-ī	-ōrum	-ārum	-ōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	-ō	-ae	-ō	-īs	-īs	-īs
<i>Acc.</i>	-um	-am	-um	-ōs	-ās	-a
<i>Abl.</i>	-ō	-ā	-ō	-īs	-īs	-īs

## (b) Nominative Singular in -er, -era, -erum.

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>N. V.</i>	-er	-er-a	-er-um	-er-ī	-er-ae	-er-a
<i>Gen.</i>	-er-ī	-ae	-ī	-ōrum	-ārum	-ōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	-ō	-ae	-ō	-īs	-īs	-īs
<i>Acc.</i>	-um	-am	-um	-ōs	-ās	-a
<i>Abl.</i>	-ō	-ā	-ō	-īs	-īs	-īs

## (c) Nominative Singular in -er, -ra, -rum.

The same as (b), but with the e dropped except in the forms ending in -er. Thus,

pulch er

pulchr a

pulchr um, etc.

## ADJECTIVES—Continued.

Third Declension.						
(a) Three Terminations.						
	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>N. V.</i>	ācer	ācr-is	ācr-e	ācr-ēs	ācr-ēs	ācr-ia
<i>Gen.</i>	ācr-is	-is	-is	-ium	-ium	-ium
<i>Dat.</i>	-ī	-ī	-ī	-ibus	-ibus	-ibus
<i>Acc.</i>	-em	-em	-e	-īs (-ēs)	-īs (-ēs)	-ia
<i>Abl.</i>	-ī	-ī	-ī	-ibus	-ibus	-ibus

(b) Two Terminations.					
	SINGULAR.		PLURAL.		
	M. & F.	N.	M. & F.	N.	
<i>N. V.</i>	brev-is	brev-e	brev-ēs	brev-ia	
<i>Gen.</i>	-is	-is	-ium	-ium	
<i>Dat.</i>	-ī	-ī	-ibus	-ibus	
<i>Acc.</i>	-em	-e	-īs (-ēs)	-ia	
<i>Abl.</i>	-ī	-ī	-ibus	-ibus	

(c) One Termination.					
	SINGULAR.		PLURAL.		
	M. & F.	N.	M. & F.	N.	
<i>N. V.</i>	audāx	audāx	audāc-ēs	audāc-ia	
<i>Gen.</i>	audāc-is	audāc-is	-ium	-ium	
<i>Dat.</i>	-ī	-ī	-ibus	-ibus	
<i>Acc.</i>	-em	audāx	-īs (-ēs)	-ia	
<i>Abl.</i>	-ī (-e)	audāc-ī (-e)	-ibus	-ibus	



## IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES.

	M.	F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	sōl-us	sōl-a	sōl-um
<i>Gen.</i>	sōl-īus	sōl-īus	sōl-īus
<i>Dat.</i>	sōl-ī	sōl-ī	sōl-ī, etc.

(The other forms are regular.)

## PRESENT ACTIVE PARTICIPLE.

	SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
	M. & F.	N.	M. & F.	N.
<i>N. V.</i>	-n s		-nt ēs	-nt ia
<i>Gen.</i>	-nt is		-nt ium	
<i>Dat.</i>	-nt ī		-nt ibus	
<i>Acc.</i>	-nt em	-n s	-nt ēs (īs)	-nt ia
<i>Abl.</i>	-nt e (ī)		-nt ibus	

## COMPARATIVES.

	SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
	M. & F.	N.	M. & F.	N.
<i>N. V.</i>	melior	melius	meliōr-ēs	meliōr-a
<i>Gen.</i>	meliōr-is		-um	
<i>Dat.</i>	-ī		-ibus	
<i>Acc.</i>	-em	melius	-ēs (-īs)	-a
<i>Abl.</i>	meliōr-e (-ī)		-ibus	

---

	N.	M. & F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	plūs	plūr-ēs	plūr-a
<i>Gen.</i>	plūr is	plūr-ium	plūr-ium
<i>Dat.</i>	—	plūr-ibus	plūr-ibus
<i>Acc.</i>	plūs	plūr-is, -ēs	plūr-a
<i>Abl.</i>	(plūr-e <sup>1</sup> )	plūr-ibus	plūr-ibus

## III. PRONOUNS.

## (a) Personal.

	SING.	PLUR.		SING.	PLUR.
<i>Nom.</i>	ego	nōs		tū	vōs
<i>Gen.</i>	meī	nostrī, nostrum		tuī	vestrī, vestrum
<i>Dat.</i>	mihi	nōbīs		tibi	vōbīs
<i>Acc.</i>	mē	nōs		tē	vōs
<i>Abl.</i>	mē	nōbīs		tē	vōbīs

## (b) Demonstrative.

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MAS.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	is	ea	id	iī, eī	eae	ea
<i>Gen.</i>	ēius	ēius	ēius	eōrum	eārum	cōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	eī	eī	eī	iīs (eīs)	iīs (eīs)	iīs (eīs)
<i>Acc.</i>	eum	eam	id	eōs	eās	ea
<i>Abl.</i>	eō	eā	eō	iīs (eīs)	iīs (eīs)	iīs (eīs)

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	hīc	haec	hōc	hī	hae	haec
<i>Gen.</i>	hūius	hūius	hūius	hōrum	hārum	hōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	huīc	huīc	huīc	hīs	hīs	hīs
<i>Acc.</i>	hunc	hanc	hōc	hōs	hās	haec
<i>Abl.</i>	hōc	hāc	hōc	hīs	hīs	hīs

## PRONOUNS—Continued.

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	ille	illa	illud	illī	illae	illa
<i>Gen.</i>	illius	illius	illius	illōrum	illārum	illōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	illī	illī	illī	illis	illis	illis
<i>Acc.</i>	illum	illam	illud	illōs	illās	illa
<i>Abl.</i>	illō	illā	illō	illis	illis	illis

*Ipse.* See § 251.

*Iste.* See § 259.

*Idem.* See § 260.

## (c) Relative.

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	quī	quae	quod	quī	quae	quae
<i>Gen.</i>	cūius	cūius	cūius	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	cuī	cuī	cuī	quibus	quibus	quibus
<i>Acc.</i>	quem	quam	quod	quōs	quās	quae
<i>Abl.</i>	quō	quā	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

## (d) Interrogative.

*Quis.* See § 245.

## (e) Indefinite.

*Aliquis; Quīdam; Quisque.* See § 248.

## IV. VERBS.

## (a) Regular Verbs.

## ACTIVE VOICE.

## INDICATIVE.

PRESENT.				
	I.	II.	III.	IV.
Sing.	1. -ō	-eō	-ō (-iō)	-iō
	2. -ās	-ēs	-is	-īs
	3. -at	-et	-it	-it
Plur.	1. -āmus	-ēmus	-imus	-īmus
	2. -ātis	-ētis	-itis	-ītis
	3. -ant	-ent	-unt (-iunt)	-iunt

IMPERFECT.				
Sing.	1. -ābam	-ēba	-ēbam (-iēbam, etc.)	-iēbam
	2. -ābās	-ēbās	-ēbās	-iēbās
	3. -ābat	-ēbat	-ēbat	-iēbat
Plur.	1. -ābāmus	-ēbāmus	-ēbāmus	-iēbāmus
	2. -ābātis	-ēbātis	-ēbātis	-iēbātis
	3. -ābant	-ēbant	-ēbant	-iēbant

FUTURE.				
Sing.	1. -ābō	-ēbō	-am (-iam, etc.)	-iam
	2. -ābis	-ēbis	-ēs	-iēs
	3. -ābit	-ēbit	-et	-iet
Plur.	1. -ābimus	-ēbimus	-ēmus	-iēmus
	2. -ābitis	-ēbitis	-ētis	-iētis
	3. -ābunt	-ēbunt	-ent	-ient

## ACTIVE VOICE—Continued.

PERFECT.					
	1.	-āvī	-uī (-ēvī, etc.)	-(s)ī <sup>1</sup>	-īvī (-iī, etc.)
Sing.	2.	-āvistī	-uistī	-(s)istī	-īvistī
	3.	-āvit	-uit	-(s)it	-īvit
Plur.	1.	-āvimus	-uimus	-(s)imus	-īvimus
	2.	-āvistis	-uistis	-(s)istis	-īvistis
	3.	{ -āvērunt { -āvēre	{ -uērunt { -uēre	{ -(s)ērunt { -(s)ēre	{ -īvērunt { -īvēre

<sup>1</sup> For perfect stem of third conjugation, see § 108.

PLUPERFECT.					
	1.	-āveram	-ueram (-ēve- ram, etc.)	-(s)eram	-īveram (-ieram, etc.)
Sing.	2.	-āverās	-uerās	-(s)erās	-īverās
	3.	-āverat	-uerat	-(s)erat	-īverat
Plur.	1.	-āverāmus	-uerāmus	-(s)erāmus	-īverāmus
	2.	-āverātis	-uerātis	-(s)erātis	-īverātis
	3.	-āverant	-uerant	-(s)erant	-īverant

FUTURE PERFECT.					
	1.	-āverō	-uerō (-ēverō, etc.)	-(s)erō	-īverō (-ierō, etc.)
Sing.	2.	-āveris	-ueris	-(s)eris	-īveris
	3.	-āverit	-uerit	-(s)erit	-īverit
Plur.	1.	-āverimus	-uerimus	-(s)erimus	-īverimus
	2.	-āveritis	-ueritis	-(s)eritis	-īveritis
	3.	-āverint	-uerint	-(s)erint	-īverint

## ACTIVE VOICE—Continued.

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.					
	1.	-em	-eam	-am (-iam, etc.)	-iam
Sing.	2.	-ēs	-eās	-ās	-iās
	3.	-et	-eat	-at	-iat
Plur.	1.	-ēmus	-eāmus	-āmus	-iāmus
	2.	-ētis	-eātis	-ātis	-iātis
	3.	-ent	-eant	-ant	-iant

IMPERFECT.					
	1.	-ārem	-ērem	-erem	-īrem
Sing.	2.	-ārēs	-ērēs	-erēs	-irēs
	3.	-āret	-ēret	-eret	-iret
Plur.	1.	-ārēmus	-ērēmus	-erēmus	-irēmus
	2.	-ārētis	-ērētis	-erētis	-irētis
	3.	-arent	-ērent	-erent	-irent

PERFECT.					
	1.	-āverim	-uerim (-ēverim, etc.)	-(s)erim	-īverim (-ierim, etc.)
Sing.	2.	-āverīs	-uerīs	-(s)erīs	-īverīs
	3.	-āverit	-uerit	-(s)erit	-īverit
Plur.	1.	-āverīmus	-uerīmus	-(s)erīmus	-īverīmus
	2.	-āverītis	-uerītis	-(s)erītis	-īverītis
	3.	-āverint	-uerint	-(s)erint	-īverint

## ACTIVE VOICE—Continued.

## PLUPERFECT.

	1.	-āvissem	-uissem (-ēvissem, etc.)	-(s)issem	-īvissem (-iissem, etc.)
Sing.	2.	-āvissēs	-uissēs	-(s)issēs	-īvissēs
	3.	-āvisset	-uisset	-(s)isset	-īvisset
Plur.	1.	-āvissēmus	-uissēmus	-(s)issēmus	-īvissēmus
	2.	-āvissētis	-uissētis	-(s)issētis	-īvissētis
	3.	-āvissent	-uissent	-(s)issent	-īvissent

## IMPERATIVE.

## PRESENT.

	Sing.	Plur.	Sing.	Plur.	Sing.	Plur.	Sing.	Plur.
2.	-ā	-āte	-ē	-ēte	-e	-ite	-ī	-īte

## FUTURE.

2.	-ātō	-ātōte	-ētō	-ētōte	-itō	-itote	-itō	-itote
3.	-ātō	-antō	-ētō	-entō	-itō	-untō (-iuntō)	-itō	-iuntō

## INFINITIVE.

	I.	II.
PRESENT.	-āre	-ēre
PERFECT.	-āvisse	-uisse (-ēvisse)
FUTURE.	-ātūrus, -a, -um esse	-itūrus (-ētūrus), -a, -um esse

	III.	IV.
PRESENT.	-ere	-īre
PERFECT.	-(s)isse	-īvisse (-iisse)
FUTURE.	-tūrus (-sūrus), -a, -um esse	-itūrus, -a, -um esse

## ACTIVE VOICE—Continued.

## PARTICIPLES.

	I.	II.
PRESENT.	-āns	-ēns
FUTURE.	-ātūrus, -a, -um	-itūrus (-ētūrus), -a, -um

	III.	IV.
PRESENT.	-ēns (-iēns)	-iēns
FUTURE.	-tūrus (-sūrus), -a, -um	-itūrus, -a, -um

## GERUND.

	I.	II.	III.	IV.
<i>Gen.</i>	-andī	-endī	-endī (-iendī, etc.)	-iendī
<i>Dat.</i>	-andō	-endō	-endō	-iendō
<i>Acc.</i>	-andum	-endum	-endum	-iendum
<i>Abl.</i>	-andō	-endō	-endō	-iendō

## SUPINE

<i>Acc.</i>	-ātum	-itum (-ētum)	-tum (-sum)	-itum
<i>Abl.</i>	-ātū	-itū (-ētū)	-tū (-sū)	-itū



## PASSIVE VOICE.

## INDICATIVE.

PRESENT.				
	I.	II.	III.	IV.
1.	-or	-eor	-or (-ior, etc.)	-ior
Sing. 2.	{ -āris	{ -ēris	{ -eris	{ -iris
	{ -āre	{ -ēre	{ -ere	{ -ire
3.	-ātur	-ētur	-itur	-itur
Plur. 1.	-āmur	-ēmur	-imur	-imur
	2. -āminī	-ēminī	-iminī	-iminī
	3. -antur	-entur	-untur (-iuntur)	-iuntur

IMPERFECT.				
1.	-ābar	-ēbar	-ēbar (-iēbar, etc.)	-iēbar
Sing. 2.	{ -ābāris	{ -ēbāris	{ -ēbāris	{ -iēbāris
	{ -ābāre	{ -ēbāre	{ -ēbāre	{ -iēbāre
3.	-ābātur	-ēbātur	-ēbātur	-iēbātur
Plur. 1.	-ābāmur	-ēbāmur	-ēbāmur	-iēbāmur
	2. -ābaminī	-ēbaminī	-ēbaminī	-iēbaminī
	3. -ābantur	-ēbantur	-ēbantur	-iēbantur

FUTURE.				
1.	-ābor	-ēbor	-ar (-iar, etc.)	-iar
Sing. 2.	{ -āberis	{ -ēberis	{ -ēris	{ -iēris
	{ -ābere	{ -ēbere	{ -ēre	{ -iēre
3.	-ābitur	-ēbitur	-ētur	-iētur
Plur. 1.	-ābimur	-ēbimur	-ēmur	-iēmur
	2. -ābiminī	-ēbiminī	-ēminī	-iēminī
	3. -ābuntur	-ēbuntur	-entur	-ientur

## PASSIVE VOICE—Continued.

PERFECT.					
Sing.	1.	-ātus sum,	-itus (-ētus) sum, etc.	-tus (-sus) sum, etc.	-ītus sum, etc.
	2.	-ātus es			
	3.	-ātus est			
Plur.	1.	-ātī sumus			
	2.	-ātī estis			
	3.	-ātī sunt			

PLUPERFECT.					
Sing.	1.	-ātus eram	-itus (-ētus) eram, etc.	-tus (-sus) eram, etc.	-ītus eram, etc.
	2.	-ātus erās			
	3.	-ātus erat			
Plur.	1.	-ātī erāmus			
	2.	-ātī erātis			
	3.	-ātī erant			

FUTURE PERFECT.					
Sing.	1.	-ātus erō	-itus (-ētus) erō, etc.	-tus (-sus) erō, etc.	-ītus erō, etc.
	2.	-ātus eris			
	3.	-ātus erit			
Plur.	1.	-ātī erimus			
	2.	-ātī eritis			
	3.	-ātī erunt			

## PASSIVE VOICE—Continued.

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

## PRESENT.

	1.	-er	-ear	-ar (-iar, etc.)	-iar
Sing.	2.	{ -ēris	{ -eāris	{ -āris	{ -iāris
		{ -ēre	{ -eāre	{ -āre	{ -iāre
	3.	-ētur	-eātur	-ātur	-iātur
Plur.	1.	-ēmur	-eāmur	-āmur	-iāmur
	2.	-ēminī	-eāminī	-āminī	-iāminī
	3.	-entur	-eantur	-antur	-iantur

## IMPERFECT.

	1.	-ārer	-ērer	-erer	-īrer
Sing.	2.	{ -ārēris	{ -ērēris	{ -erēris	{ -irēris
		{ -ārēre	{ -ērēre	{ -erēre	{ -irēre
	3.	-ārētur	-ērētur	-erētur	-irētur
Plur.	1.	-ārēmur	-ērēmur	-erēmur	-irēmur
	2.	-ārēminī	-ērēminī	-erēminī	-irēminī
	3.	-ārentur	-ērentur	-erentur	-irentur

## PERFECT.

	1.	-ātus sim	-itus (-ētus) sim,	-tus (-sus) sim,	-itus sim,
Sing.	2.	-ātus sis	etc.	etc.	etc.
	3.	-ātus sit			
	1.	-ātī sīmus			
Plur.	2.	-ātī sītis			
	3.	-atī sint			

## PASSIVE VOICE—Continued.

## PLUPERFECT.

	1.	-ātus essem	-itus (-ētus)	-tus (-sus)	-itus essem,
Sing.	2.	-ātus essēs	essem, etc.	essem, etc.	etc.
	3.	-ātus esset			
	1.	-ātī essēmus			
Plur.	2.	-ātī essētis			
	3.	-ātī essent			

## IMPERATIVE.

## PRESENT.

	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
2.	-āre	-āminī	-ēre	-ēminī	-ere	-iminī	-īre	-īminī

## FUTURE.

	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
2.	-ātor	(want- ing)	-ētor	(want- ing)	-itor	(want- ing)	-itor	(want- ing)
3.	-ātor	-antor	-ētor	-entor	-itor	-untor (-iuntor)	-itor	-iuntor

## INFINITIVE.

	I.	II.
PRESENT.	-ārī	-ēre
PERFECT.	-ātus, -a, -um esse	-ītus (-ētus), -a, -um esse
FUTURE.	-ātum īrī	-itum (-ētum) īrī
	III.	IV.
PRESENT.	-ī	-īrī
PERFECT.	-tus (-sus), -a, -um esse	-ītus, -a, -um esse
FUTURE.	-tum (-sum) īrī	-ītum īrī

## PASSIVE VOICE—Continued.

## PARTICIPLES.

PERFECT.			
-ātus, -a, -um	itus (-ētus), -a, -um	-tus (-sus), -a, -um	-ītus, -a, -um

GERUNDIVE.			
-andus, -a, -um	-endus, -a, -um	-endus (-iendus), -a, -um	-iendus, -a, -um

## (b) IRREGULAR VERBS.

sum, *be*

PRINCIPAL PARTS: sum, esse, fuī, futūrus

## INDICATIVE.

PRESENT.		IMPERFECT.		FUTURE.	
SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
sum	sumus	eram	erāmus	erō	erimus
es	estis	erās	erātis	eris	eritis
est	sunt	erat	erant	erit	erunt
PERFECT.		PLUPERFECT.		FUTURE PERFECT.	
fuī, etc.		fueram, etc.		fuerō, etc.	

## IRREGULAR VERBS—Continued

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.	IMPERFECT.
sim, etc. See § 342.	essem, etc. See § 358.
PERFECT.	PLUPERFECT.
fuerim, etc.	fuissem, etc.

## IMPERATIVE.

PRESENT.
es, etc. See § 398.

## INFINITIVE.

## PARTICIPLE.

PRES. esse	futūrus, -a, -um
PERF. fuisse	
FUT. futūrus esse or fore	

possum, *be able, can*

PRINCIPAL PARTS: possum, posse, potuī

## INDICATIVE.

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

SINGULAR.	SINGULAR.
PRES. possum, etc. See §§ 332 and 334.	possim, etc.
IMPF. poteram, etc.	possem, etc.
FUT. poterō, etc.	_____
PERF. potuī, etc.	potuerim, etc.
PLUP. potueram, etc.	potuissem, etc.
F. P. potuerō, etc.	_____

## IRREGULAR VERBS—Continued.

## INFINITIVE.

PRES. posse

PERF. potuisse

prōsum, *benefit.*

PRINCIPAL PARTS: prōsum, prōdesse, prōfuī, prōfutūrus

## INDICATIVE.

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRES.	SING.	PLUR.	SING.
	prōsum	prōsumus	prōsim, etc.
	prōdes	prōdestis	prōsīs
	prōdest	prōsunt	prōsit
IMPF.	prōderam, etc.		prōdessem, etc.
FUT.	prōderō, etc.		_____
PERF.	prōfuī, etc.		prōfuerim, etc.
PLUP.	prōfueram, etc.		prōfuissem, etc.
F. P.	prōfuerō, etc.		_____

## IMPERATIVE.

PRES. prōdes, prōdeste

FUT. prōdestō, prōdestōte

## INFINITIVE.

PRES. prōdesse

PERF. prōfuisse

FUT. prōfutūrus esse

## PARTICIPLE.

FUT. prōfutūrus, -a, -um

## IRREGULAR VERBS—Continued.

	volō, nōlō, mālō	
PRINCIPAL PARTS:	}	volō, velle, voluī, <i>wish.</i>
		nōlō, nōlle, nōluī, <i>be unwilling.</i>
		mālō, mälle, māluī, <i>prefer.</i>

## INDICATIVE.

SINGULAR.			
PRES.	volō vīs vult	nōlō nōn vīs nōn vult	mālō māvīs māvult
PLURAL.			
	volumus vultis volunt	nōlumus nōn vultis nōlunt	mālumus māvultis mālunt
IMPF.	volēbam, etc.	nōlēbam, etc.	mālēbam, etc.
FUT.	volam, volēs, etc.	nōlam, nōlēs, etc.	mālam, mālēs, etc.
PERF.	voluī, etc.	nōluī, etc.	māluī, etc.
PLUP.	volueram, etc.	nōlueram, etc.	mālueram, etc.
F. P.	voluerō, etc.	nōluerō, etc.	māluerō, etc.

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
PRES.	velim velis velit	velimus velitis velint	nōlim nōlis nōlit	nōlīmus nōlītis nōlint	mālim mālis mālit	mālīmus mālītis mālint
IMPF.	vellem, etc.		nōllem, etc.		māllem, etc.	
PERF.	voluerim, etc.		nōluerim, etc.		māluerim, etc.	
PLUP.	voluissē, etc.		nōluissē, etc.		māluissem, etc.	



## IRREGULAR VERBS—Continued.

## IMPERATIVE.

PRES.	—————	nōlī, etc. See § 397.	—————
-------	-------	-----------------------	-------

## INFINITIVE.

PRES.	velle	nōlle	mālle
PERF.	voluisse	nōluisse	māluisse

## PARTICIPLES.

PRES.	volēns	nōlēns	—————
-------	--------	--------	-------

ferō, *bear*.

PRINCIPAL PARTS : ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum.

## INDICATIVE

	ACTIVE.	PASSIVE.
PRES.	ferō, etc. See § 385.	feror, etc.
IMPF.	ferēbam, etc.	ferēbar, etc.
FUT.	feram, etc.	ferar, etc.
PERF.	tulī, etc.	lātus sum, etc.
PLUP.	tuleram, etc.	lātus eram, etc.
F. P.	tulerō, etc.	lātus erō, etc.

## IRREGULAR VERBS—Continued.

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRES.	feram, etc.	ferar, etc.
IMPF.	ferrem, etc.	ferrer, etc.
PERF.	tulerim, etc.	lātus sim, etc.
PLUP.	tulisset, etc.	lātus essem, etc.

## IMPERATIVE.

PRES.	fer, etc. See § 398.	ferre, etc.
-------	----------------------	-------------

## INFINITIVE.

PRES.	ferre	ferri
PERF.	tulisse	lātus esse
FUT.	lātūrus esse	lātum iri

## PARTICIPLES.

PRES.	ferēns	PRES.	_____
FUT.	lātūrus	GER.	ferendus
PERF.	_____	PERF.	lātus

## GERUND.

	<i>Gen.</i>	ferendī
	<i>Dat.</i>	ferendō
	<i>Acc.</i>	ferendum
	<i>Abl.</i>	ferendō

## IRREGULAR VERBS—Continued.

eō, *go*

PRINCIPAL PARTS: eō, ire, ii (ivī), itum

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

IMPERATIVE.

PRES.	eō, etc. See § 391.	eam, etc.	PRES.	ī	ite
IMPF.	ibam, etc.	irem, etc.	FUT.	) itō	itōte
FUT.	ibō, etc.				( itō
PERF.	ii, etc.	ierim, etc.			
PLUP.	ieram, etc.	issem (iissem,			
F. P.	ierō, etc.	ivissem), etc.			

INFINITIVE.

PARTICIPLES.

PRES.	ire	iēns, euntis
PERF.	isse (iisse, ivisse)	—————
FUT.	itūrus, -a, -um esse	itūrus, -a, -um

GERUND.

SUPINE.

Gen.	eundī, etc.	Acc.	itum
		Abl.	itū

## IRREGULAR VERBS—Continued.

*fiō, be made, become, happen*PRINCIPAL PARTS: *fiō, fierī, factus sum*

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

IMPERATIVE.

PRES.	<i>fiō, etc. See § 376.</i>	<i>fiam, etc.</i>	<i>fī</i>	<i>fite</i>
IMPF.	<i>fiēbam, etc.</i>	<i>fierem, etc.</i>		
FUT.	<i>fiam, etc.</i>			
PERF.	<i>factus sum, etc.</i>	<i>factus sim, etc.</i>		
PLUP.	<i>factus eram, etc.</i>	<i>factus essem, etc.</i>		
F. P.	<i>factus erō, etc.</i>			

INFINITIVE.

PARTICIPLES.

PRES.	<i>fieri</i>	GER.	<i>faciendus</i>
PERF.	<i>factus esse</i>	PERF.	<i>factus</i>
FUT.	<i>factum iri</i>		

## SPECIAL VOCABULARIES

The numbers correspond with the numbers of the Lessons.

### II.

amicus, -ī,<sup>1</sup> m., *friend*.  
lēgātus, -ī, m., *lieutenant*.  
mūrus, -ī, m., *wall* (of a town).  
nōn, *not*.

oppidum, -ī, n., *town*.  
porta, -ae, f., *gate*.  
puella, -ae, f., *girl*.

### III.

altus, -a, -um,<sup>2</sup> *high, deep*.  
et, *and*.  
fossa, -ae, f., *ditch*.  
gladius, -ī, m., *sword*.  
habēō, habēre, habuī, habitum,<sup>3</sup>  
*have*.  
lātus, -a, -um, *wide, broad*.  
longus, -a, -um, *long*.

\* māgnus, -a, -um, *large, great*.  
multus, -a, -um, *much*; in pl.  
*many*.  
parvus, -a, -um, *little, small*.  
paucī, -ae, -a, *few*.  
Rōmānus, -ī, m., *Roman*.  
vidēō, vidēre, vidī, vīsum, *see*.

### IV.

cōpia, -ae, f., *supply*.  
fīlia, -ae, f., *daughter*.  
frūmentum, -ī, n., *grain*.  
inopia, -ae, f., *lack, want*.  
numerus, -i, m., *number*.

oppūgnō, oppūgnāre, oppūgnāvī,  
oppūgnātum, *besiege*.  
pecūnia, -ae, f., *money*.  
prōvincia, -ae, f., *province*.  
tēlum, -ī, n., *missile*.

<sup>1</sup> The nominative singular of nouns is given, followed by the termination of the genitive singular.

<sup>2</sup> The nominative masculine, feminine, and neuter of adjectives is given.

<sup>3</sup> The forms of the verb here given are called the Principal Parts. Their use will be explained later (§§ 41, 107, 170), but they should be memorized for each verb as soon as it occurs.

## (V.)

New words occurring in the Reading Lessons must be looked for in the General Vocabulary.

## VI.

audiō, audīre, audīvī, auditum, <i>hear.</i>	mittō, mittere, mīsī, missum, <i>send.</i> mūniō, mūnīre, mūnīvī, mūnitum, <i>fortify.</i> praemium, -i, n., <i>reward.</i> <hr style="width: 20%; margin: 5px auto;"/> ambassador, see <i>lieutenant</i> , Voc. I. weapon, see <i>missile</i> , Voc. IV.
dō, dare, dedī, datum, <i>give.</i>	
dēbeō, dēbere, dēbuī, dēbitum, <i>owe.</i>	
filius, -ī, m., <i>son.</i>	
Gallus, -ī, m., <i>a Gaul.</i>	
inimīcus, -ī, m., <i>enemy.</i>	

## VII.

annus, -ī, m., <i>year.</i>	pilum, -ī, n., <i>javelin.</i> populus, -ī, m., <i>people, nation.</i> pūgnō, pūgnāre, pūgnāvī, pūgnā- tum, <i>fight.</i> quattuor, indeclinable, <i>four.</i> <hr style="width: 20%; margin: 5px auto;"/> troops, forces, pl. of cōpia. See Voc. IV.
bellum, -ī, n., <i>war.</i>	
expūgnō, expūgnāre, expūgnāvī, expūgnātum, <i>take (by besieging).</i>	
liberō, liberāre, liberāvī, liberātum, <i>free.</i>	
perīculum, -ī, n., <i>danger.</i>	

## VIII.

castra, -ōrum, n. pl., <i>camp.</i>	littera, -āe, f., <i>letter.</i> (In the singular, littera means a letter of the alphabet; in the plural, an epistle.) nūntius, -ī, m., <i>messenger.</i>
cum, prep. w. abl., <i>with.</i>	
cūr, <i>why.</i>	
hōra, -ae, f., <i>hour.</i>	
in, prep. w. abl., <i>in.</i>	

## IX.

et . . . et, <i>both . . . and.</i>	relinquō, relinquere, reliquī, relic- tum, <i>leave.</i> vāllum, -ī, n., <i>rampart.</i>
gerō, gerere, gessī, gestum, <i>wage,</i> <i>conduct, carry on.</i>	
quid, <i>what.</i>	

## XI.

contendō, contendere, contendī, contentum, <i>hasten.</i>	pōnō, pōnere, posuī, positum, <i>place; castra pōnō, pitch a camp.</i>
contineō, continēre, continuī, contentum, <i>restrain.</i>	rēgnum, -ī, n., <i>kingdom.</i>
occupō, occupāre, occupāvī, occupātum, <i>seize.</i>	teneō, tenēre, tenuī <sup>1</sup> , <i>hold.</i>
parō, parāre, parāvī, parātum, <i>prepare, prepare for.</i>	timeō, timēre, timuī <sup>1</sup> , <i>fear, be afraid (of).</i>
	veniō, venīre, vēnī, ventum, <i>come.</i>

## XII.

bonus, -a, -um, <i>good.</i>	proelium, -ī, n., <i>battle.</i>
dēfessus, -a, -um, <i>wearied, tired.</i>	servus, -ī, m., <i>slave.</i>
fēmina, -ae, f., <i>woman.</i>	sum, esse, fuī, futūrus, <i>be.</i>
poēta, -ae, m., <i>poet.</i>	

## XIII.

ager, agrī, m., <i>field.</i>	noster, -tra, -trum, <i>our, ours.</i>
cōnsilium, -ī, n., <i>plan, advice, design.</i>	puer, puerī, m., <i>boy.</i>
crēber, crēbra, crēbrum, <i>frequent.</i>	Vergilius, Vergilī, m., <i>Vergil, a Roman poet.</i>
dea, deae, f., <i>goddess.</i>	vir, virī, m., <i>man.</i>
liber, libera, liberum, <i>free.</i>	
liber, librī, m., <i>book.</i>	<i>message, same word as messenger, Voc. VIII.</i>
meus, mea, meum, <i>my, mine.</i>	

## XIV.

āra, -ae, f., <i>altar.</i>	scribō, scribere, scripsī, scriptum, <i>write.</i>
maneō, manēre, mānsī, mānsūm, <i>stay, remain.</i>	tribūnus, -ī, m., <i>tribune.</i>
pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum, <i>beautiful.</i>	tum, <i>then.</i>

<sup>1</sup> Some verbs do not have all the principal parts.

## XVI.

idōneus, -a, -um, *suitable*.  
 inveniō, invenīre, invēnī, inventum,  
*find*.  
 locus, -ī, m. (pl. loca, -ōrum, n.),  
*place*.  
 moveō, movēre, mōvī, mōtum,  
*move*; castra moveō, *break camp*.  
 mox, *soon*.

nam, conj., *for*.  
 puerī, -ōrum, m. pl., *children*.  
 (Children of free parents are  
 called liberī; puerī is a general  
 word.)  
 Rōmānus, -a, -um, *Roman*.  
 vāstō, vāstāre, vāstāvī, vāstātum,  
*lay waste*.

## XVII.

itaque, *and so; therefore; accord-*  
*ingly*.  
 perterreō, perterrēre, perterrūī, per-  
 territum, *terrify*.  
 -que, *and*. This word is always

translated *before* the word which  
 precedes it, and is an enclitic,  
 like -ne. See § 25.  
 servō, servāre, servāvī, servātum,  
*save, preserve*.

## XVIII.

cīvitās, -tātis, f., *state*.  
 dux, ducis, m., *leader*.  
 lēx, lēgis, f., *law*.  
 mīles, -itis, m., *soldier*.  
 pāx, pācis, f., *peace*.

petō, petere, petīvī, petītum, *seek*.  
 plēbs, plēbis, f., *commons*.  
 prīnceps, -ipis, m., *chief*.  
 salūs, -ūtis, f., *safety*.  
 vōx, vōcis, f., *voice, word*.

## XIX.

compleō, complēre, complēvī, com-  
 plētum, *fill up, fill*.  
 dēleō, dēlēre, dēlēvī, dēlētum, *de-*  
*stroy*.

fleō, flēre, flēvī, flētum, *weep*.  
 semper, *always*.

## XXI.

auctōritās, -tātis, f., *influence*.  
 eques, -itis, m., *horseman, knight*.  
 iam, *now, already*.  
 laus, laudis, f., *praise*.

obses, -idis, m., *hostage*.  
 pēs, pedis, m., *foot*.  
 servitūs, -tūtis, f., *slavery*.  
 virtūs, -tūtis, f., *courage*.



## XXII.

Caesar, -aris, m., *Caesar*.  
 centuriō, -ōnis, m., *centurion*.  
 cōsul, -ulis, m., *consul*.  
 flōs, flōris, m., *flower*.  
 frāter, frātris, m., *brother*.  
 hiems, hiemis, f., *winter*.  
 homō, hominis, m. and f., *man*.  
 Homō means man considered as a human being, while vir is man as distinguished from woman, and sometimes means *hero*. The pl., **hominēs**, may mean *people*

(in general), as distinguished from *populus*, *people* (a nation).  
 imperātor, -ōris, m., *commander, general*.  
 laudō, laudāre, laudāvī, laudātum, *praise*.  
 māter, mātris, f., *mother*.  
 mōs, mōris, m., *custom*.  
 multitudō, -dinis, f., *multitude, large number*.  
 pater, patris, m., *father*.  
 rōs, rōris, m., *dew*.

No new words in XXIII.

## XXIV.

ā, ab, prep. with abl., *away from, from*.  
 ante, prep. with acc., *before, in front of*.  
 dē, prep. with abl., *down from, from, about*.  
 discēdō, discēdere, discessī, discessum, *withdraw*.

ē, ex, prep. with abl., *out of, from*.  
 prae, prep. with abl., *in comparison with*.  
 prō, prep. with abl., *in front of, in behalf of, for*.  
 sine, prep. with abl., *without*.

## XXVI.

ad, prep. with acc., *to, towards, for, near*.  
 in, prep. with abl., *in, on, at; with acc., into, to*.  
 legiō, -ōnis, f., *legion*.

mōns, montis, m., *mountain*.  
 sub, prep. with abl., *under, at the foot of; with acc., under, to the foot of*.  
 timor, -ōris, m., *fear*.

## XXVII.

ā, ab, prep. with abl., *by, from*.  
 appellō, appellāre, appellāvī, appellātum, *call*.  
 dūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductum, *lead*.

mūnitiō. -ōnis, f., *fortification*.  
 ———  
 guide, see *leader*, Voc. XVIII.

## XXVIII.

animus, -ī, m., *mind*.  
 arma, -ōrum, n. pl., *arms*.  
 auxilium, -i, n., *aid, help*.  
 cōstituō, cōstituere, cōstituī,  
 cōstitutum, *station*.

expectō, expectāre, expectāvī,  
 expectātum, *await*.  
 impediō, impedire, impedivī, im-  
 peditum, *hinder*.  
 perterreō, perterrere, perterrui, per-  
 territum, *alarm, terrify*.

## XXIX.

āgmen, -minis, n., *army (on the  
 march)*.  
 caput, capitis, n., *head*.  
 corpus, -oris, n., *body*.  
 flūmen, -minis, n., *river*.

latus, -eris, n., *side*.  
 nōmen, -minis, n., *name*.  
 opus, -eris, n., *work*.  
 scelus, -eris, n., *crime*.  
 sed, *but*.

## XXXI.

āmitto, āmittere, āmisi, āmissum,  
*lose*.  
 angustus, -a, -um, *narrow*.  
 caedēs, -dis, f., *bloodshed, slaughter*.  
 collocō, collocāre, collocāvī, col-  
 locātum, *place, station*.  
 fīnis, -is, m., *end, boundary*. In  
 pl., *territories, lands, country*.  
 hostis, -is, m. (generally found in

pl.), *enemy (public, while inimī-  
 cus is a personal enemy)*.  
 ōrdō, -dinis, m., *rank*.  
 p̄rimus, -a, -um, *first*.  
 prohibeō, prohibere, prohibuī, pro-  
 hibitum, *hold back, check*.  
 reliquus, -a, -um, *remaining, rest of*.  
 turris, -is, f., *tower*.

No new words in XXXII.

## XXXIII.

animadvertō, animadvertere, ani-  
 madvertī, animadversum, *notice*.  
 circumveniō, circumvenire, circum-  
 vveni, circumventum, *surround*.  
 dēfendō, dēfendere, dēfendi, dēfēn-  
 sum, *defend*.  
 dēfēnsor, -ōris, m., *defender*.  
 dēligō, dēligere, dēlēgī, dēlēctum,  
*choose*.

dēspērō, dēspērāre, dēspērāvī, dē-  
 spērātum, *despair of*.  
 ēdūcō, ēdūcere, ēdūxī, ēductum,  
*lead out*.  
 fuga, -ae, f., *flight*.  
 trādūcō, trādūcere, trādūxī, trā-  
 ductum, *lead across*.

## XXXIV.

accipiō, accipere, accēpī, acceptum, <i>receive.</i>	iaciō, iacere, iēcī, iactum, <i>throw.</i>
capiō, capere, cēpī, captum, <i>take, capture.</i>	interficiō, interficere, interfēcī, interfectum, <i>kill, slay.</i>
cliēns, -entis, m., <i>client.</i>	nox, noctis, f., <i>night.</i>
cohors, -hortis, f., <i>cohort.</i>	pars, partis, f., <i>part.</i>
faciō, facere, fēcī, factum, <i>do, make.</i>	pōns, pontis, m., <i>bridge.</i>
	urbs, urbis, f., <i>city.</i>

## XXXVI.

ācer, ācris, ācre, <i>sharp, keen, active.</i>	fuga, -ae, f., <i>flight; in fugam dare, put to flight.</i>
animal, -ālis, n., <i>animal.</i>	ingēns, -entis, <i>huge.</i>
audāx, -ācis, <i>bold.</i>	mare, -is, n., <i>sea.</i>
calcar, -āris, n., <i>spur.</i>	omnis, -e, <i>all.</i>
celer, celeris, celere, <i>swift.</i>	potēns, -entis, <i>powerful.</i>
equester, -tris, -tre, <i>cavalry (adj.), equestrian.</i>	
fortis, -e, <i>brave.</i>	<i>order, see rank, Voc. XXXI.</i>

## XXXVII.

aestās, -tātis, f., <i>summer.</i>	inīquus, -a, -um, <i>unfavorable.</i>
brevis, -e, <i>short.</i>	gravis, -e, <i>heavy, severe.</i>
certus, -a, -um, <i>trusty, certain.</i>	nāvis, -is, f., <i>ship.</i>
cīvis, -is, m., <i>citizen.</i>	praesidium, -ī, n., <i>garrison, force.</i>
equis, -ī, m., <i>horse.</i>	tempus, temporis, n., <i>time.</i>

## XXXVIII.

difficilis, -e, <i>difficult.</i>	malus, -a, -um, <i>bad.</i>
dissimilis, -e, <i>unlike.</i>	minor, minus, <i>less, smaller; minor nātū, younger.</i>
facilis, -e, <i>easy.</i>	plūs, plūris, n., <i>more.</i>
māior, māius, <i>greater; māior nātū, older (literally, greater in respect to birth); māiōrēs, ancestors.</i>	similis, -e, <i>like.</i>
	soror, -ōris, f., <i>sister.</i>

## XXXIX.

collis, -is, m., <i>hill.</i>	-um, <i>first.</i> <i>primum agmen, the van (of an army).</i>
exterior, -ius, <i>outer; sup. extrēmus, -a, -um, outmost, end of.</i>	propior, -ius, <i>nearer; sup. proximus, -a, -um, nearest.</i>
inferior, -ius, <i>lower; sup. infimus and imus, -a, -um, lowest, bottom of.</i>	superior, -ius, <i>higher, former; sup. suprēmus and summus, -a, -um, highest, top of.</i>
posterior, -ius, <i>latter; sup. postrēmus, -ā, -um, last.</i>	ūterior, -ius, <i>farther; sup. ūltimus, -a, -um, farthest.</i>
prior, -ius, <i>former; sup. primus, -a,</i>	

## XLI.

decem, indecl., <i>ten.</i>	novem, indecl., <i>nine.</i>
magis, adv. comp., <i>more; sup. māximē, most.</i>	octō, indecl., <i>eight.</i>
minus, adv. comp., <i>less; sup. minimē, least.</i>	paulō, with comparatives, <i>a little.</i>
multō, with comparatives, <i>much.</i>	quīnque, indecl., <i>five.</i>
	septem, indecl., <i>seven.</i>
	sex, indecl., <i>six.</i>

## XLII.

ego, meī, <i>I.</i>	silva, -ae, f., <i>wood, forest.</i>
is, ea, id, <i>he, she, it, that.</i>	tū, tuī, <i>thou, you (sing.).</i>
regiō, -ōnis, f., <i>region.</i>	

## XLIII.

hīc, haec, hōc, <i>this, this one, this man, etc.; the latter.</i>	ille, illa, illud, <i>that, that one, man, etc.; the former, he, she, it.</i>
--	---

## XLIV.

apud, prep. with acc., <i>before, near, in the presence of, among.</i>	cōsisto, -sistere, -stiti, -stitum, <i>stand still, halt.</i>
Cicerō, -ōnis, m., <i>Cicero.</i>	meus, -a, -um, <i>my, mine.</i>
	noster, -tra, -trum, <i>our, ours.</i>

numquam, *never*.

Rōma, -ae, f., *Rome*.

suus, -a, -um, *his, her, hers, its, their, theirs*.

tuus, -a, -um, *your, yours (sing.), thy, thine*.

vester, -tra, -trum, *your, yours (pl.)*.

great (of persons), summus, -a, -um. See Voc. XXXIX.

## XLVI.

captivus, -ī, m., *prisoner*.

clārus, -a, -um, *illustrious, famous*.

hīberna, -ōrum, n. pl., *winter-quarters*.

nēmō (nēmīnis), m. and f., *no one*.

(For the genitive singular of this word nūllius is regularly

used, and for the ablative singular, nūllō. See Lesson XLIX.)

quī, quae, quod, rel. pron., *who, which, what, that*.

revertō, revertere, revertī, revert-sum, *return*.

signum, -ī, n., *signal, standard*.

## XLVII.

aliquis (aliquī), aliquae, aliquid (aliquod), indef. pron., *some, someone, something*.

dīcō, dicere, dīxī, dictum, *say, tell*.

pervenīō, pervenīre, pervēnī, perventum, *arrive (at), with ad and acc.*

quīdam, quaedam, quiddam (quod-

dam), indef. pron., *a certain, a certain one, some, someone*.

quis (quae), quid, interr. pron., *who? which? what?*

quisque (quīque), (quaeque), quidque (quodque), indef. pron., *each, everyone*.

## XLVIII.

decimus, -a, -um, *tenth*.

dīmīttō, dīmītere, dīmīsī, dīmīsum, *send away*.

ipse, -a, -um, intensive pron., *self*.

pedes, peditis, m., *foot soldier; in pl., infantry*.

recipiō, recipere, recēpī, receptum,

*take back, recover; with reflexives, retreat*.

rēx, rēgis, m., *king*.

saepe, *often*.

suī, reflexive pron. of third pers., *of himself, herself, itself, or themselves*.

## XLIX.

alius, -a, -ud, *other, another*.  
 alter, -era, -erum, *the other* (of two).  
 cōficiō, cōficere, cōfēcī, cōfec-  
 tum, *complete*.  
 idem, eadem, idem, *the same*.  
 iste, ista, istud, *that of yours*.  
 libertās, -tātis, f., *freedom, liberty*.

neuter, -tra, -trum, *neither*.  
 nūllus, -a, -um, *no, none*.  
 sōlus, -a, -um, *alone, only*.  
 tōtus, -a, -um, *the whole* (of).  
 ūllus, -a, um, *any*.  
 ūnus, -a, -um, *one, alone*.  
 uter, -tra, -trum, *which* (of two).

## LI.

(cēterus), -a, -um, *the other, the rest* (of). (Form cēterus not found in classical Latin.)  
 dexter, -tra, -trum, and -tera, -terum, *right*.

interclūdō, interclūdere, interclūsī, interclūsum, *cut off*, with abl. of separation.  
 rīpa, -ae, f., *bank*.  
 sinister, -tra, -trum, *left*.

## LII.

aditus, -ūs, m., *approach*.  
 adventus, -ūs, m., *arrival*.  
 commeatus, -ūs, m., *supplies*.  
 cornū, -ūs, n., *horn, wing* (of an army).  
 equitātus, -ūs, m., *cavalry*.  
 exercitus, -ūs, m., *army*.  
 impetus, -ūs, m., *attack*; impetum

facere in, with acc., *make an attack on*.  
 manus, -ūs, f., *hand, band, company*.  
 peditātus, -ūs, m., *infantry*.  
 principātus, -ūs, m., *leadership*.  
 senātus, -ūs, m., *senate*.  
 sustineō, sustinēre, sustinūī, sustentum, *withstand*.

## LIII.

aciēs, -eī, f., *line of battle*.  
 autem, *but, however* (postpositive; that is, placed after one or more words of the sentence or clause).  
 classis, -is, f., *fleet*.  
 diēs, -eī, m. and f., *day*.  
 fidēs, -eī, f., *confidence, faith, protection, pledge*.  
 Gallia, -ae, f., *Gaul* (the country).

instruō, instruere, instrūxī, instrūctum, *draw up*.  
 inter, prep. with acc., *between, among*.  
 inter sē dare, *exchange*.  
 plānitīēs, -eī, f., *plain*.  
 rēs, reī, f., *thing, fact*.  
 before (of position), *in return for*, see *in front of*, Voc. XXIV.

## LIV.

ūnus, -a, um, *one*.  
 duo, -ae, -o, *two*.  
 trēs, tria, *three*.  
 quattuor, *four*.  
 quīnque, *five*.  
 sex, *six*.  
 septem, *seven*.  
 octō, *eight*.  
 novem, *nine*.

decem, *ten*.  
 centum, *a hundred*.  
 mīlle, *a thousand*.  
 iter faciō, facere, fēcī, factum,  
*march (literally make a journey)*.  
 passus, -ūs, m., *pace (five Roman  
 feet)*; mīlle passūs, pl., mīlia  
 passuum, *mile*.

## LVII.

aegrē, *with difficulty*.  
 audācter, *boldly*.  
 bene, *well*, comp. melius, *better*,  
 sup. optimē, *best*.  
 diligenter, *carefully*.  
 diū, *long*.  
 facile, *easily*.  
 lātē, *far and wide, widely*.  
 longē, *far*.  
 multum (with comparatives multō),

*much*, comp. magis, *more*, sup.  
 maximē, *most*.  
 satis, *enough, sufficiently*.

bravely,  
 certainly,  
 impetuously,  
 heavily,  
 sharply,  
 severely, } see § 305.

## LVIII.

Athēnae, -ārum, f. pl., *Athens*.  
 Carthāgō, -ginis, f., *Carthage*.  
 Corinthus, -ī, f., *Corinth*.  
 Curēs, -ium, m. pl., *Cures*.  
 domī, loc., *at home*.  
 domum, acc., *home, homewards*.

domō, abl., *from home*.  
 Ītalia, -ae, f., *Italy*.  
 rūš, rūris, n., *the country (as dis-  
 tinguished from the city)*.  
 terra, -ae, f., *land, country (geo-  
 graphical division)*.

## LIX.

agger, aggeris, m., *mound*.  
 altitūdō, -dinis, f., *height*.  
 celeritās, -tātis, f., *swiftness*.  
 clāmor, -ōris, m., *shout*.

cōnsuētūdō, -dinis, f., *habit, custom*.  
 deus, deī, m., *a god*.  
 iter, itineris, n., *journey, march*.  
 Iuppiter, Iovis, m., *Jupiter*.

labor, -ōris, m., *toil*.  
 mors, mortis, f., *death*.  
 ōrātiō, -ōnis, f., *speech*.  
 palūs, -ūdis, f., *marsh*.

profectiō, -ōnis, f., *departure*.  
 senex, -is, m., *old man*.  
 vīs (vīs), f., *force, violence*; in pl.,  
 vīrēs, *strength*.

## LXI.

cohortor, cohortārī, cohortātus sum,  
*encourage*.  
 cōnor, cōnārī, cōnātus sum, *try*.  
 habitō, habitāre, habitāvī, habitā-  
 tum,  *dwell, live*.  
 possum, posse, potuī, *can, be able*.

proficīscor, proficīscī, profectus sum,  
*set out, go*.  
 sequor, sequī, secūtus sum, *follow*.  
 —————  
*finish, see complete, Voc. LIV.*  
*ought, the same as owe, Voc. VI.*

## LXII.

nē, *lest, that not, in order that not*. | ut, *that, in order that*.

## LXIII.

apertus, -a, -um, *open, exposed*.  
 cōgnōscō, cōgnōscere, cōgnōvī, cō-  
 gnitum, *learn, ascertain*.  
 committō, committere, commīsī,  
 commissum, *join*.  
 coniciō, conicere, coniciēcī, coniec-  
 tum, *throw, hurl*.  
 conveniō, convenire, convēnī, con-  
 ventum, *come together, meet*.

intelligō, intelligere, intellēxī, in-  
 tellēctum, *understand*.  
 prōgredior, prōgredi, prōgressus  
 sum, *advance*.  
 —————  
*fact, see thing, Voc. LIII.*  
*keep back, see hold back, Voc.*  
 XXXIV.

## LXIV.

nesciō, nescire, nescivī, nescitum,  
*not know, be ignorant*.  
 quō, *whither, to what place, where*  
 (with verbs of motion).  
 rogō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *ask*.

sciō, scire, scivī, scitum, *know*.  
 ubi, *where, in what place* (with  
 verbs of rest).  
 unde, *whence, from where, from*  
*what place*.



## LXVI.

cōgitō, cōgitāre, cōgitāvī, cōgitātum, <i>think about, meditate.</i>	quaerō, quaerere, quaesivī, quaesitum, <i>ask, inquire.</i>
dēducō, dēducere, dēdūxī, dēduc-tum, <i>lead away or from.</i>	quam, <i>how (with adjs. and advs.).</i>
incendō, incendere, incendi, incēn-sum, <i>set on fire.</i>	quot, <i>how many.</i>
	— <i>reach, see arrive at, Voc. XLVII.</i>

## LXVII.

mālō, mālle, mālui, <i>prefer, would rather.</i>	nōlō, nōlle, nōlui, <i>be unwilling.</i>
	volō, velle, volui, <i>wish, be willing.</i>

## LXVIII.

accidō, accidere, accidī, <i>happen.</i>	fiō, fierī, factus sum, <i>become, happen, be made, be done.</i>
amicus, -a, -um, <i>friendly.</i>	inimicus, -a, -um, <i>hostile.</i>
cāsus, -ūs, m., <i>accident, misfortune.</i>	sic, <i>in such a way, so, thus.</i>
certiōrem (-ēs) faciō, facere, fēcī, factum, <i>inform (literally, "make more certain").</i>	tam, <i>so (with adjs. and advs.).</i>
commūnis, -e, <i>common, general.</i>	— <i>design, see plan, Voc. XIII.</i>
concilium, -ī, n., <i>council, meeting.</i>	form (a plan), <i>see take, Voc. XXXVIII.</i>
convocō, convocāre, convocāvī, convocātum, <i>call together, call (with such words as concilium).</i>	manage, <i>see wage, Voc. IX.</i>
	matter, <i>see thing, Voc. XLIX.</i>

## LXIX.

adferō, adferre, attulī, adlātum, <i>bring to, report.</i>	ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum, <i>bear, bring, carry.</i>
atque, <i>and, and also.</i> atque emphasizes what follows, while et emphasizes neither part.	inferō, inferre, intulī, illātum, <i>bring in or on; bellum inferre, with dat., make war on; signa inferre, advance (literally, bear on the standards).</i>
cōnferō, cōnferre, contulī, collatum, <i>bring together, gather.</i>	nam, <i>for.</i> Another word is enim, which is always postpositive.
dēferō, dēferre, dētulī, dēlātum, <i>bring away, report.</i>	

neque, and . . . *not*. neque . . .  
neque, neither . . . *nor*. This  
is also spelled *nec*, except  
before a vowel or *h*.  
perferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum, *bear*,  
*suffer*, *endure*.  
referō, referre, rettulī, relātum,  
*bring back*. pedem referre, *re-*

*trek* (sē recipere is used when  
the place to which the retreat is  
made is mentioned; while *pedem*  
*referre* denotes the backward  
movement when overpowered  
by an attack).  
tollō, tollere, sustulī, sublātum,  
*raise*, *remove*.

## LXXI.

crās, *to-morrow*.  
eō, ire, ii, itum, *go*.  
herī, *yesterday*.  
hodiē, *to-day*.  
iniūria, -ae, f., *mischief*, *harm*.  
per, prep. with acc., *through*.

postridiē eius diēi, *on the next or*  
*following day*.  
nātūra, -ae, f., *nature*, *character*.  
undique, *from all sides*, *on all sides*.  
vix, *scarcely*, *with difficulty*.  

---

hem in, see *restrain*, Voc. XI.

## LXXII.

armō, armāre, armāvī, armātum,  
*arm*.  
appropinquō, appropinquāre, appro-

pinquāvī, appropinquātum, *ap-*  
*proach*.  
ostendō, ostendere, ostendī, os-  
tentum (and ostēnsium), *show*.

## LXXIII.

audeō, audēre, ausus sum, semi-  
deponent, *dare*.  
cōstituō, -stituere, -stitui, -stitū-  
tum, *decide*, *determine*.  
incipiō, incipere, incepī, inceptum,  
*begin*. Instead of the perfect,  
the verb coepī, coepisse, coeptus,  
*began*, is generally used. Coepī

lacks the tenses formed from the  
present stem.  
ēruptiō, -ōnis, f., *sortie*, *sally*.  
grātiās agō, agere, ēgī, āctum,  
*thank*, *return thanks* (with dat.).  
fugiō, fugere, fūgī, *flee*, *fly*.  
vulnus, vulneris, n., *wound*.

## LXXIV.

aedificium, -i, n., *building*.  
aqua, -ae, f., *water*.  
explōrātor, -ōris, m., *scout*.  
subsidiū, -i, n., *reinforcements*.

via, viae, f., *way*, *road*.  

---

occupy, see *hold*, Voc. XI.

## LXXVI.

accipiō, accipere, accēpi, acceptum, <i>receive, suffer.</i>	liberī, -ōrum, m. pl., <i>children.</i> (See Voc. XVI.)
adolēscēns, -centis, m., <i>youth.</i>	patria, -ae, f., <i>native land, country.</i>
beneficium, -ī, n., <i>favor, kindness.</i>	pellō, pellere, pepulī, pulsum, <i>roul.</i>
calamitās, -tātis, f., <i>disaster.</i>	putō, putāre, putāvī, putātum, <i>think.</i>
castellum, -ī, n., <i>redoubt.</i>	superō, superāre, superāvī, superātum, <i>conquer.</i>
crēdō, crēdere, crēdidī, crēditum, <i>suppose, believe.</i>	

## LXXVII.

dīscō, dīscere, didicī, <i>learn.</i>	statim, <i>immediately.</i>
oculus, -ī, m., <i>eye.</i>	trānseō, trānsire, transiī, transitum, <i>cross.</i>
sōl, sōlis, m., <i>eye.</i>	

No new words in LXXVIII.

## LXXIX.

condiciō, -ōnis, f., <i>terms</i> (in pl.).	queror, querī, questus sum, <i>complain.</i>
doceō, docēre, docuī, doctum, <i>teach, show, tell.</i>	quod, <i>because.</i>
lūx, lūcis, f., <i>light</i> ; primā lūce, abl., <i>at daybreak.</i>	retineō, retinēre, retinuī, retentum, <i>keep back.</i>
moriōr, morī, mortuus sum, <i>die.</i>	—————
nūntiō, nūntiāre, nūntiāvī, nūntiātum, <i>announce.</i>	<i>accept, see receive, Voc. LXXVII.</i>
postulō, postulāre, postulāvī, postulātum, <i>demand.</i>	<i>beg, see seek, Voc. VIII.</i>

## LXXXI.

Catilīna, -ae, m., <i>Catiline</i> , a Roman conspirator.	Pisō, -ōnis, m., <i>Piso.</i>
cōnātus, -ūs, m., <i>attempt.</i>	sententia, -ae, f., <i>opinion.</i>
condō, condere, condidī, conditum, <i>found.</i>	socius, -ī, m., <i>ally.</i>
dēsistō, dēsistere, dēstitī, dēstitum, <i>cease, desist.</i>	tantus, -a, -um, <i>so great, such.</i>
lēgātīō, -ōnis, f., <i>embassy</i>	vereor, verērī, veritus sum, <i>fear, reverence.</i>
novus, -a, -um, <i>new.</i>	vīvus, -a, -um, <i>alive, living.</i>
	vincō, vincere, vicī, victum, <i>conquer, subdue.</i>

## LXXXII.

adeō, adīre, adīi, aditum, <i>go to</i> , with ad and acc.	opprimō, opprimere, oppressi, op- pressum, <i>crush, destroy.</i>
efficiō, efficere, effēcī, effectum, <i>bring to pass.</i>	polliceor, pollicērī, pollicitus sum, <i>promise.</i>
Gallicus, -a, -um, <i>Gallic.</i>	Pompēius, -ī, m., <i>Pompey.</i>
gēns, gentis, f., <i>tribe.</i>	redūcō, redūcere, redūxī, reductum, <i>lead back, bring back.</i>
imperium, -ī, n., <i>military command,</i> <i>empire.</i>	Rhēnus, -ī, m., <i>the Rhine.</i>
intermittō, intermittere, intermīsī, intermissum, <i>leave off.</i>	—————
iūs, iūris, n., <i>right, law.</i>	<i>protect, see defend, Voc. XXXIII.</i>

## LXXXIII.

adsum, adesse, adfui, adfuturus, <i>be</i> <i>present, be at hand.</i>	lingua, -ae, f., <i>tongue, language.</i>
colloquium, -ī, n., <i>conference, con-</i> <i>versation.</i>	moror, morārī, morātus sum, <i>delay,</i> <i>linger.</i>
Latinus, -a, -um, <i>Latin.</i>	utinam, <i>O that! would that! if only!</i>
	vetō, vetāre, vetuī, vetitum, <i>forbid.</i>

## LXXXIV.

dubitō, dubitāre, dubitāvī, dubitā- tum, <i>doubt, hesitate.</i>	quoque, <i>also</i> (placed after the im- portant word).
insequor, insequi, insecūtus sum, <i>pursue.</i>	resistō, resistere, restitī, <i>resist.</i>
mīrābilis, -e, <i>wonderful.</i>	scūtum, -ī, n., <i>shield.</i>
nunc, <i>now.</i>	tālis, -e, <i>such.</i>
	trādō, trādere, trādīdī, trāditum, <i>hand over, give up.</i>

## LXXXVI.

cōnsuēscō, cōnsuēscere, cōnsuēvī, cōnsuētum, <i>become accustomed;</i> <i>in perf., be accustomed.</i>	ibi, <i>there.</i>
hortor, hortārī, hortātus sum, <i>urge.</i>	impedimentum, -ī, n., <i>hindrance;</i> <i>in pl., baggage.</i>
	nihil, indecl., n., <i>nothing.</i>

## LXXXVII.

adiuvō, adiuvāre, adiūvī, adiūtum, <i>help, aid, with acc.</i> Another word for <i>help</i> is <i>adsum</i> , which takes the <i>dat.</i>	pāreo, parēre, paruī, <i>obey.</i>
dēlectō, dēlectāre, dēlectāvī, dēlectātum, <i>please, charm, with acc.</i>	persuādeō, persuādēre, persuāsī, persūasum, <i>persuade.</i>
exeō, exīre, exiī, exitum, <i>go out.</i>	placeō, placēre, placuī, placitum, <i>please.</i>
noceō, nocēre, nocuī, nocitum, <i>injure, harm.</i>	praeficiō, praeficere, praefēcī, praefectum, <i>place in command of.</i>
	praesum, praeesse, praefuī, praefutūrus, <i>be in command of.</i>

## LXXXVIII.

eō, <i>thither, to that place, there</i> (with verbs of motion).	ibi, <i>there, in that place.</i>
fruo, fruī, fructus sum, <i>enjoy.</i>	mūnus, mūneris, <i>n., service.</i>
fungor, fungī, fūctus sum, <i>perform.</i>	potior, potirī, potitus sum, <i>gain possession of, become master of.</i>
hīc, <i>here, in this place.</i>	quō, <i>whither, to what place, where</i> (with verbs of motion).
hinc, <i>hence, from this place, from here.</i>	ubi, <i>where, in what place.</i>
hūc, <i>hither, to this place, here</i> (with verbs of motion).	unde, <i>whence, from what place, from where.</i>
	vēscor, vēscī, <i>use for food, eat.</i>

## LXXXIX.

dum, <i>while; until; provided that.</i>	tamen, <i>nevertheless, yet.</i>
metus, -ūs, <i>m., fear.</i>	ubi, <i>when, where.</i>
nisi, <i>if not, unless, except.</i>	ut, <i>that, in order that, as, when.</i>
postquam, <i>after.</i>	
quamquam, <i>although.</i>	gerō in the passive may mean <i>to go on</i> (of actions).
sī, <i>if.</i>	

## XCI.

careō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, <i>lack.</i>	ūsus, -ūs, <i>m., use, advantage.</i>
cūra, -ae, <i>f., care.</i>	
dēspoliō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, <i>rob.</i>	<i>protection, see garrison, Voc.</i>
nūdō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, <i>strip.</i>	XXXVII.
privō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, <i>deprive.</i>	<i>sajeguard, see safety, Voc. XVIII.</i>

# LISTS OF WORDS FOR REVIEW

## VOCABULARIES II-IV.

### NOUNS.

#### Decl. I.

cōpia  
filia  
fossa  
inopia

pecūnia  
porta  
prōvincia  
puella

#### Decl. II.

amicus  
frūmentum  
gladius  
lēgātus  
mūrus

numerus  
oppidum  
Rōmānus  
tēlum

### ADJECTIVES.

altus  
lātus

longus,  
māgnus

multus  
parvus

paucī

### VERBS.

Conj. I.  
oppūgnō

Conj. II.  
habeō  
videō

### ADVERB.

nōn

### CONJUNCTION.

et

## VOCABULARIES VI-XVI.

NOUNS.	Vergilius	moveō
<b>Decl. I.</b>	vir	teneō
āra		timeō
dea	PRONOUN.	<b>Conj. III.</b>
fēmina	quid	contendō
littera	ADJECTIVES.	gerō
poēta	bonus	mittō
<b>Decl. II.</b>	crēber	pōnō
ager	dēfessus	relinquō
annus	liber	scribō
bellum	meus	<b>Conj. IV.</b>
castra	noster	audiō
cōnsilium	pulcher	inveniō
filius	quattuor	mūniō
Gallus	Rōmānus	veniō
inimīcus	VERBS.	<b>Irregular.</b>
locus	<b>Conj. I.</b>	sum
nūntius	dō	ADVERBS.
perīculum	expūgnō	cūr
pīlum	liberō	mox
populus	occupō	tum
praemium	parō	PREPOSITIONS.
proelium	pūgnō	cum
puer	vāstō	in
rēgnum	<b>Conj. II.</b>	CONJUNCTIONS.
servus	dēbeō	et . . . et
tribūnus	maneō	
vāllum		

## VOCABULARIES XVII-XXVII.

NOUNS.	obses	<b>Conj. III.</b>
<b>Decl. III.</b>	pater	discēdō
auctōritās	pāx	dūcō
Caesar	pēs	petō
centuriō	plēbs	ADVERBS
cīvitās	prīnceps	iam
cōsul	rōs	semper
dux	salūs	PREPOSITIONS.
eques	servitūs	ā, ab
flōs	tīmor	ad
frāter	virtūs	dē
hiems	vōx	ē, ex
homō	VERBS.	in
imperātor	<b>Conj. I.</b>	prae
laus	appellō	prō
legiō	laudō	sine
lēx	servō	sub
māter	<b>Conj. II.</b>	CONJUNCTIONS.
mīles	complēō	itaque
mōns	dēleō	-que
mōs	fleō	
multitūdō	perterreō	
mūnitio		



## VOCABULARIES XXVIII XXXVIII.

## NOUNS.

**Decl. I.**

fuga

**Decl. II.**

animus

arma

auxilium

equus

præsidium

**Decl. III.**

aestās

āgmen

animal

caedēs

calcar

caput

cīvis

cliēns

cohors

corpus

dēfēnsor

flūmen

hostis

latus

mare

nāvis

nōmen

nox

opus

ōrdō

pars

pōns

scelus

soror

tempus

turris

urbs

## ADJECTIVES.

ācer

angustus

audāx

brevis

celer

certus

difficilis

dissimilis

equester

facilis

fortis

gravis

ingēns

inīquus

omnis

malus

potēns

prīmus

reliquus

similis

## VERBS.

**Conj. I.**

collocō

dēspero

exspectō

**Conj. II.**

perterreō

prohibeō

**Conj. III.**

accipiō

āmitto

animadvertō

capiō

cōstituō

dēfendō

dēligō

educō

faciō

iaciō

interficiō

trādūcō

**Conj. IV.**

circumvenio

impediō

## CONJUNCTION.

sed

## VOCABULARIES XXXIX-XLIX.

NOUNS.	noster	sex
<b>Decl. I.</b>	quī	sōlus
Rōma	quīdam	superior
silva	quis	tōtus
<b>Decl. II.</b>	quisque	ūllus
captīvus	sui	ūlterior
hīberna	suus	ūnus
sīgnum	tū	uter
<b>Decl. III.</b>	tuus	VERBS.
Cicerō	vester	<b>Conj. III.</b>
collis	ADJECTIVES.	cōnficiō
libertās	alius	cōnsistō
nēmō	alter	dīmittō
pedes	clārus	dīcō
regiō	decem	recipiō
rēx	decimus	revertō
PRONOUNS.	exterior	<b>Conj. IV.</b>
aliquis	īnferior	pervenīō
ego	novem	ADVERBS.
hīc	neuter	magis
īdem	nūllus	minus
ille	octō	multō
ipse	posterior	numquam
is	prior	paulō
iste	propior	PREPOSITION.
meus <sup>1</sup>	quīnque	apud
	septem	

<sup>1</sup> **Meus, tuus, etc.**, are sometimes called possessive adjectives.

## VOCABULARIES LI-LXI.

## NOUNS.

**Decl. I.**

Athēnac  
 deus  
 Gallia  
 Italia  
 rīpa  
 terra

**Decl. II.**

{ domī  
 { domō  
 { domum

**Decl. III.**

agger  
 altitūdō  
 Carthāgō  
 celeritās  
 clāmor  
 classis  
 cōnsuētudō  
 Curēs  
 iter  
 Iuppiter  
 labor  
 mors  
 ōrātiō  
 palūs  
 profectiō  
 rūš  
 senex  
 vīs

**Decl. IV.**

aditus  
 adventus  
 commeātus  
 equitātus  
 exercitus  
 impetus  
 manus  
 passus  
 peditātus  
 prīncipātus  
 senātus  
 cornū

**Decl. V.**

aciēs  
 diēs  
 fidēs  
 plānitiēs  
 rēs

## ADJECTIVES.

centum  
 (cēterus)  
 dexter  
 duo  
 mille  
 sinister  
 trēs  
 ūnus

## VERBS.

**Conj. I.**  
 cohortor

cōnor  
 habitō

**Conj. II.**

sustineō

**Conj. III.**

interclūdō  
 ĩnstruō  
 proficīscor  
 sequor

**Irregular.**

possum

## ADVERBS.

ācritēr  
 aegrē  
 audācter  
 bene  
 certē  
 diligenter  
 diū  
 facile  
 fortiter  
 graviter  
 lātē  
 longē  
 multum  
 multō  
 satis  
 vehementer

## PREPOSITION.

inter

## VOCABULARIES LXII-LXXII.

NOUNS.	cōgnōscō	referō
<b>Decl. I.</b>	committō	tollō
nātūra	coniciō	volō
<b>Decl. II.</b>	dēdūcō	ADVERBS.
concilium	incendō	crās
<b>Decl. IV.</b>	intellegō	herī
cāsus	ostendō	hodiē
ADJECTIVES.	prōgredior	postrīdiē eius
amicus	quaerō	diēi
apertus	<b>Conj. IV.</b>	quam
commūnis	conveniō	quō
inimicus	nesciō	sic
quot	sciō	tam
VERBS.	<b>Irregular.</b>	ubi
<b>Conj. I.</b>	adferō	undique
appropinquō	cōnferō	vix
armō	dēferō	PREPOSITION.
cōgitō	ferō	per
convocō	fīō	CONJUNCTIONS.
rogō	īnferō	atque
<b>Conj. III.</b>	mālō	nam
accidō	nōlō	neque
	perferō	

## VOCABULARIES LXXIII-LXXXIII.

## NOUNS.

**Decl. I.**

aqua  
 Catilīna  
 grātia  
 lingua  
 patria  
 sententia  
 via

**Decl. II.**

aedificium  
 beneficium  
 castellum  
 colloquium  
 imperium  
 liberī  
 oculus  
 Pompēius  
 Rhēnus  
 socius  
 subsidium

**Decl. III.**

adulēscēns  
 calamitās  
 condiciō  
 ēruptiō  
 explōrātō  
 gēns

iūs  
 lēgatiō  
 lūx  
 Pīsō  
 vulnus

**Decl. IV.**

cōnātus

## ADJECTIVES.

Gallicus  
 Latīnus  
 novus  
 tantus  
 vīvus

## VERBS.

**Conj. I.**

moror  
 nūntiō  
 postulō  
 putō  
 superō  
 vetō

**Conj. II.**

audeō  
 polliceor  
 retineō  
 vereor

**Conj. III.**

accipiō  
 coepī  
 condō  
 cōstituō  
 erēdō  
 dēsistō  
 discō  
 efficiō  
 incipiō  
 intermittō  
 morior  
 opprimō  
 pellō  
 queror  
 redūcō  
 vincō

**Irregular.**

adeō  
 adsum  
 trānseō

## ADVERBS.

statim  
 utinam

## PREPOSITION.

ante

## CONJUNCTION.

quod

## VOCABULARIES LXXXIV-XCI.

NOUNS.	dubitō	<b>Irregular.</b>
<b>Decl. I.</b>	hortor	exeō
cūra	nūdō	praesum
<b>Decl. II.</b>	prīvō	ADVERBS.
impedimentum	<b>Conj. II.</b>	eō
scūtum	careō	hīc
<b>Decl. III.</b>	noceō	hīnc
mūnus	pāreō	hūc
<b>Decl. IV.</b>	persuādeō	hunc
metus	placeō	ibi
ūsus	<b>Conj. III.</b>	quoque
<b>Indeclinable.</b>	cōnsuēscō	nunc
nihil	fruor	tamen
ADJECTIVES.	fungor	CONJUNCTIONS.
mīrābilis	īnsequor	dum
tālis	praefficiō	nisi
VERBS.	resistō	postquam
<b>Conj. I.</b>	trādō	quamquam
adiuvō	vēscor	sī
dēlectō	<b>Conj. IV.</b>	ubi
dēspoliō	potior	ut

## LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY

### A.

- ā, ab**, prep. with abl., *away from, from, by*.  
**accidō, -cidere, -cidī**, *happen*.  
**accipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum**, *receive, suffer*.  
**ācer, ācris, ācre**, *sharp, keen, active, fierce*.  
**aciēs, -ēī**, f., *line of battle*.  
**ācritēr**, *sharply, fiercely*.  
**ad**, prep. with acc., *to, for, near, at, before*.  
**adeō, -īre, -iī, -itum**, *go to, reach*, with ad and acc., or acc. alone.  
**adferō, adferre, attulī, adlātum**, *bring to, report*.  
**adsciscō, -sciscere, -scivī, -scitum**, *take to oneself, accept*.  
**aditus, -ūs**, m., *approach*.  
**adsum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus**, *be present, be at hand, help* (with dat.).  
**adulēscēns, -centis**, m., *young man*.  
**adveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventum**, *arrive*.  
**adventus, -ūs**, m., *arrival*.  
**adversus, -a, -um**, *unfavorable*.  
**aedificium, -ī**, n., *building*.  
**aedificō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum**, *build, construct*.
- Aeduus, -a, -um**, *Aeduan*; as noun, **Aeduus, -ī**, m., *an Aeduan*.  
**aegrōtus, -a, -um**, *sick, ill*.  
**aēneus, -a, -um**, *of bronze, bronze*.  
**aegrē**, *with difficulty*.  
**āēr, āeris**, m., *air*.  
**aestās, -tātis**, f., *summer*.  
**ager, agrī**, m., *field, territory*.  
**agger, aggeris**, m., *mound*.  
**āgmen, -minis**, n., *army on the march*.  
**agitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum**, *drive, ply*.  
**āgnus, -ī**, m., *lamb*.  
**agricola, -ae**, m., *farmer*.  
**āla, -ae**, f., *wing*.  
**albus, -a, -um**, *white*.  
**aliquis** (adj. **aliquī**), **aliqua, aliquid** (adj. **aliquod**), pron. indef., *some, someone, something*.  
**alius, -a, -ud**, *other, another*.  
**Alphēus, -ī**, m., *the Alpheus*, a river of Elis in central Greece.  
**alter, -tera, -terum**, *other of two, the other, second*.  
**altitudō, -dinis**, f., *height*.  
**altus, -a, -um**, *high, lofty, deep*.  
**amīcitiā, -ae**, f., *friendship*.  
**amīcus, -a, -um**, *friendly*; as noun, **amīcus, -ī**, m., *friend*.  
**āmittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum**, *lose*.  
**amō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum**, *love*.

amoenus, -a, -um, *pleasant*.  
 amplius, adv., *more*.  
 animadvertō, -vertere, -vertī, -ver-  
 sum, *notice*.  
 angustia, -ae, f. (generally in pl.),  
*narrow place, defile*.  
 angustus, -a, -um, *narrow*.  
 anima, -ae, f., *breath, life*.  
 animal, -ālis, n., *animal*.  
 animus, -ī, m., *mind, spirit, courage*.  
 annus, -ī, m., *year*.  
 ante, prep. with acc., *before, in*  
*front of*.  
 antiq̄uus, -a, -um, *ancient*.  
 Apollō, -īnis, m., the name of the  
 god of prophecy, music, and  
 healing.  
 appello, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *call*.  
 apportō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *bring*.  
 appropinquō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum,  
*draw near, approach, with dat.*  
 aptus, -a, -um, *suited*.  
 apud, prep. with acc., *before, near,*  
*in the presence of, among*.  
 aqua, -ae, f., *water*.  
 Aquitānus, -ī, m., *an Aquitanian*.  
 āra, -ae, f., *altar*.  
 arātrum, -ī, n., *plough*.  
 argentum, -ī, n., *silver*.  
 arma, -ōrum, n. pl., *arms*.  
 armātus, -a, -um (part. of armō),  
*armed*.  
 armō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *arm*.  
 arō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *plough*.  
 ars, -artis, f., *art, skill; in pl.,*  
*science, learning*.  
 artifex, -ficis, m., *artist*.  
 asper, -era, -erum, *rough, austere*.  
 Athēnae, -ārum, f. pl., *Athens*.  
 atque, *and, and also*.  
 attentus, -a, -um, *attentive*.

Attica, -ae, f., *Attica, a division of*  
*Greece*.  
 auctōritās, -tātis, f., *influence*.  
 audācia, -ae, f., *boldness, daring*.  
 audācter, *boldly*.  
 audāx, -ācis, *bold*.  
 audeō, audēre, ausus sum, semi-  
 deponent, *dare, venture*.  
 audiō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum, *hear*.  
 augustus, -a, -um, *august, majestic*.  
 aureus, -a, -um, *golden*.  
 aurum, -ī, n., *gold*.  
 autem, postpositive, *but*.  
 auxilium, -ī, n., *aid, help; in pl.,*  
*auxiliary troops*.  
 avus, -ī, m., *grandfather*.

## B.

baculum, -ī, n., *stick, staff*.  
 barba, -ae, f., *beard*.  
 beatus, -a, -um, *happy, prosperous*.  
 Belga, -ae, m., *a Belgian*.  
 bellicōsus, -a, -um, *warlike*.  
 bellum, -ī, n., *war*.  
 bene, *well; comp. melius, better;*  
*sup. optimē, best*.  
 beneficium, -ī, n., *favor, kindness*.  
 benevolentia, -ae, f., *good-will,*  
*kindness (the quality; while*  
*beneficium means a kind act)*.  
 benīgnus, -a, -um, *kind*.  
 bēstia, -ae, f., *beast, animal*.  
 biennium, -ī, n. (period of) *two*  
*years*.  
 bonus, -a, -um, *good; comp. melior,*  
*-ius, better; sup. optimus, -a,*  
*um, best. bona, -ōrum, n. pl.,*  
*goods, possessions*.  
 brevis, -e, *short*.



## C.

- cadō, cadere, cecidī, cāsum, *fall*.  
 caedēs, -is, f., *slaughter, massacre*.  
 caelum, -ī, n., *sky, heaven*.  
 Caesar, -aris, m., *Caesar*.  
 calamitās, -tātis, f., *disaster*.  
 calcar, -āris, n., *spur*.  
 campus, -ī, m., *plain*.  
 canto, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *sing, chant*.  
 caper, caprī, m., *a he-goat*.  
 capillus, -ī, m., *hair*.  
 capiō, capere, cēpī, captum, *take, capture; with cōnsilium, form*.  
 capra, -ae, f., *a she-goat*.  
 captivus, -ī, m., *prisoner*.  
 caput, capitis, n., *head*.  
 careō, carēre, caruī, caritum, *lack, with abl.*  
 carmen, -minis, n., *song, ode*.  
 carrus, -ī, m., *cart*.  
 Carthāgō, -ginis, f., *Carthage*.  
 castellum, -ī, n., *redoubt*.  
 castigō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *punish*.  
 castra, -ōrum, n. pl., *camp*.  
 casus, -ūs, m., *accident, misfortune*.  
 Catilīna, -ae, m., *Catiline*.  
 causa, -ae, f., *cause, reason; ob eam causam, on this account*.  
 cautus, -a, -um, *wary, cautious*.  
 celer, celeris, celere, *swift*.  
 celeritās, -tātis, f., *swiftness*.  
 Celta, -ae, m., *a Celt*.  
 cēra, -ae, f., *wax*.  
 certāmen, -minis, n., *contest, (athletic) game*.  
 certē, *certainly*.  
 certus; -a, -um, *trusty, certain, unerring. certiōrem facere, inform*.  
 cervā, -ae, f., *deer, hind*.  
 (cēterus), -a, -um, *the other, all other* (nom. sing. masc. not found).  
 cibāria, -ōrum, n. pl., *food; molita cibāria, meal* (see molō).  
 Cimbri, -ōrum, m., pl., *the name of a Germanic tribe*.  
 circumveniō, -venire, -vēnī, -ventum, *surround*.  
 cīvis, -is, m., *citizen*.  
 civitās, -tātis, f., *state*.  
 clādēs, -is, f., *destruction, loss, massacre*.  
 clāmōr, -ōris, m., *shout, shouting*.  
 clārus, -a, -um, *illustrious, famous*.  
 classis, -is, f., *fleet*.  
 cliēns, -entis, m., *client*.  
 clipeus, -ī, m., (round) *shield*.  
 coēmō, -emere, -ēmī, -ēptum, *buy up*.  
 coepī, coepisse, *began*.  
 cōgitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *think (about), meditate*.  
 cōgnōscō, -gnōscere, -gnōvi, -gnitum, *learn, ascertain*.  
 cōgō, cōgere, coēgī, coāctum, *collect, compel*.  
 cohors, -hortis, f., *cohort*.  
 cohortor, -ārī, -ātus sum, *encourage*.  
 collis, -is, m., *hill*.  
 collocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *place*.  
 colloquium, -ī, n., *conference*.  
 color, -ōris, m., *color*.  
 columna, -ae, f., *column, pillar*.  
 combūrō, comburere, combūssī, combūstum, *burn up*.  
 commeātus, -ūs, m., *supplies*.  
 commeō, -meāre, -meāvī, -meātum, *go and come, make frequent visits*.  
 committō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum, *join*.

- commodum, -ī, n., *gain, advantage*.  
 commūniō, -mūnīre, -mūnīvī, -mūnītum, *fortify* (on all sides), *secure, barricade, intrench*.  
 commūnis, -e, *common, general*.  
 comparō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *prepare, collect*.  
 comparo, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *compare*.  
 compleō, -plēre, -plēvī, -plētum, *fill, fill up*.  
 complūrēs, -a or -ia, *several, a number, many*.  
 cōnātus, -ūs, m., *attempt*.  
 concēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum, *yield, grant*.  
 concilium, -ī, n., *meeting, council*.  
 concursus, -ūs, m., *running together, gathering*.  
 condiciō, -ōnis, f., *condition; in pl., terms*.  
 condō, -dere, -didī, -ditum, *found*.  
 cōnferō, cōnferre, contuli, collātum, *bring together, gather*.  
 cōnficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum, *complete, accomplish*.  
 cōnfirmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *assure, establish*.  
 coniciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum, *throw, hurl*.  
 coniūctus, -a, um (part. of coniungō), *joined, connected*.  
 coniungō, -iungere, -iūnxī, -iūnctum, *join*.  
 coniūratiō, -ōnis, f., *conspiracy*.  
 cōnor, -ārī, -ātus sum, *try*.  
 cōnsecrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *consecrate, devote*.  
 cōnservātus, -a, -um (part. of cōnservō), *preserved*.  
 cōnservō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *preserve, save*.  
 cōnsilium, -ī, n., *plan, advice, design*.  
 cōnsistō, -sistere, -stitī, -stitum, *halt*.  
 cōnstantia, -ae, f., *firmness*.  
 cōnstituō, -stituere, -stituī, -stitūtum, *station, set, determine*.  
 cōnsuēscō, -suēscere, -suēvī, -suētum, *become accustomed*.  
 cōnsuētūdō, -dinis, f., *habit*.  
 cōnsul, -ulis, m., *consul*.  
 contendō, -tendere, -tendī, -tentum, *hasten; contend, fight*.  
 continenter, *continually*.  
 contineō, -tinere, -tinuī, -tentum, *restrain, hem in*.  
 conveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventum, *meet, come together*.  
 convīvium, -ī, n., *banquet*.  
 convocō, -vocāre, -vocāvī, -vocātum, *call together, summon*.  
 cōpia, -ae, f., *supply; in pl., forces, troops*.  
 Corinthus, -ī, f., *Corinth*.  
 cornū, -ūs, n., *horn, wing* (of an army).  
 corōna, -ae, f., *crown, wreath*.  
 corpus, corporis, n., *body*.  
 cotīdiānus, -a, -um, *daily*.  
 crās, *to-morrow*.  
 crēdō, -dere, -didī, -ditum, *believe, suppose*.  
 creō, creāre, creāvī, creātum, *elect*.  
 Curēs, -ium, m. pl., *Cures*.  
 crēber, -bra, -brum, *frequent*.  
 crūdēlis, -e, *cruel*.  
 cultus, -ūs, m., *civilization*.  
 cum (1), prep. with abl., *with, together with*.

cum (2). conj., *when, while, since, although.*

cūr, *why.*

cūra, -ae, f., *care.*

cūstōs, -ōdis, m., *guardian.*

## D.

Dānuvius, -ī, *the Danube.*

dē, prep. with abl., *down from, from, about, concerning.*

dea, -ae, f., *goddess.*

ōbeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, *owe, ought.*

decimus, -a, -um, *tenth.*

dēdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxi, -ductum, *lead away, lead from.*

dēfendō, -fendere, -fendī, -fēsum, *defend, protect.*

dēfēnsor, -ōris, m., *defender.*

dēferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum, *bring away, report.*

dēfessus, -a, -um, *wearied.*

dēlectō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *please, delight.*

dēleō, -ēre, -ēvī, -ētum, *destroy.*

dēlētus, -a, -um (part. of dēleō), *destroyed.*

dēligō, -ligere, -lēgī, -lēctum, *choose.*

Dēlius, -a, -um, *of or in Delos, Delian.*

Dēlus, -ī, f., *Delos, an island in the Ægean Sea.*

Delphicus, -a, -um, *of or at Delphi (a city in Greece), Delphic.*

dēnsus, -a, -um, *thick, dense.*

dēplōrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *lament.*

dēpopulō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *lay waste.*

dēsistō, -sistere, -stitī, -stitum, *desist, cease.*

dēspērō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *despair of.*

dēspoliō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *rob.*

deus, -ī, m., *god.*

dexter, -tra, -trum, and -tera, -trum, *right.* As noun, *dextra, -ae, f., the right hand.*

dīcō, dīcere, dīxi, dictum, *say, tell.*

dictiō, -ōnis, f., *pleading.*

diēs, diēi, m. and f., *day.*

differō, differre, distulī, dilātum, *differ.*

difficilis, -e, *difficult.*

diligenter, *carefully.*

dīmīttō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum, *send away.*

discēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum, *go away, withdraw.*

dīsciplīna, -ae, f., *training.*

dīscipulus, -ī, m., *pupil.*

dīscō, dīscere, didicī, *learn.*

discordia, -ae, f., *dissension.*

dispōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positum, *arrange, dispose.*

dissimilis, -e, *unlike.*

diū, adv., *long.*

diūturnus, -a, -um, *long, prolonged.*

dīves, dīvitis, sup. dītissimus, -a, -um, *rich.*

dīvidō, -videre, -visī, -visum, *divide, separate.*

dīvinus, -a, -um, *of the gods, divine.*

dīvitiae, -ārum, f. pl., *riches, wealth.*

dō, dare, dedī, datum, *give; in fugam dare, put to flight; inter sē dare, exchange.*

doceō, docēre, docuī, doctum, *teach, show, inform.*

doctus, -a, -um (part. of doceō), *learned, scholarly.*

domus, -ūs, f., *home, house.* domī,

loc., *at home*. **domum**, acc., *home*. **domō**, abl., *from home*.  
**dōnō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *present, give*.  
**dōnum**, -ī, n., *gift*.  
**dracō**, -ōnis, m., *serpent, dragon*.  
**dubitō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *hesitate*.  
**dūcō**, dūcere, dūxī, ductum, *lead*.  
**Dumnorix**, -īgis, m., the name of an Æduan nobleman.  
**dūrus**, -a, -um, *hard, tough, rude*.  
**dux**, ducis, m., *leader, guide*.

## E.

**ē**, **ex** (always **ex** before a vowel or **h**), *out of, from*.  
**ebur**, -oris, n., *ivory*.  
**ēdūcō**, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum, *lead out*.  
**effēminō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *weaken, enervate*.  
**effērō**, efferre, extulī, ēlātum, *carry out*.  
**efficiō**, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum, *bring to pass*.  
**efflō**, -flāre, -flāvī, -flātum, *breathe out; animam efflāre, die*.  
**ego**, **meī**, I.  
**ēlegāns**, -antis, *polished, refined*.  
**ēmigrō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *emigrate, move away*.  
**enim**, postpositive, *for*.  
**ēnūntiō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *disclose, divulge, betray*.  
**eō**, *thither, to that place*.  
**eō**, ire, iī, itum, *go*.  
**eques**, -itis, m., *horseman, knight; in pl., cavalry*.

**equester**, -tris, -tre, *cavalry (adj.), equestrian*.  
**equitātus**, -ūs, m., *cavalry*.  
**equus**, -ī, m., *horse*.  
**ēripiō**, -ripere, -ripiū, reptum, *rescue*.  
**ēruptiō**, -ōnis, f., *sortie, sally*.  
**et**, *and*. **et . . . et**, *both . . . and*.  
**etiam**, *even; also*.  
**ex**, see **ē**.  
**exeō**, -īre, -iī, -itum, *go out*.  
**exercitus**, -ūs, m., *army*.  
**explicō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *unfold, disclose*.  
**explōrātor**, -ōris, m., *scout*.  
**exportō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *carry from or out of*.  
**expūgnō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *take (by storm)*.  
**exsequor**, -sequī, -secūtus sum, *follow up, enforce*.  
**expsectō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *await*.  
**exterior**, -ius, *outer*. Sup. **extrēmus**, -a, -um, *outmost, end of*.

## F.

**facile**, *easily*.  
**facilis**, -e, *easy*.  
**faciō**, facere, fēcī, factum, *do, make*.  
**fallō**, fallere, fefelli, falsum, *deceive*.  
**fatigātus**, -a, -um (part. of **fatigō**), *wearied, harassed*.  
**fatigō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *weary, harass*.  
**fēcundus**, -a, -um, *fruitful*.  
**fēlix**, -īcis, *fortunate, happy*.  
**fēmina**, -ae, f., *woman*.  
**ferē**, *nearly, almost*.  
**ferreus**, -a, -um, *of iron, iron*.

ferrum, -ī, n., *iron*.  
 fertilis, -e, *fertile*.  
 ferus, -a, -um, *wild, fierce*.  
 fidēs, -eī, f., *confidence, faith, pledge, protection*.  
 figūra, -ae, f., *form*.  
 filia, -ae, f., *daughter*.  
 filius, -ī, m., *son*.  
 finis, -is, m., *end, limit, boundary; in pl., territories, country*.  
 finitimus, -a, -um, *bordering upon, adjoining, neighboring; As noun, finitimus, -ī, m., neighbor*.  
 fiō, fierī, factus sum, *become, happen, be made, be done*.  
 firmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *strengthen*.  
 firmus, -a, -um, *strong*.  
 flamma, -ae, f., *flame*.  
 fleō, flēre, flēvī, fletum, *weep*.  
 flōs, flōris, m., *flower*.  
 flūmen, -minis, n., *river*.  
 fluvius, -ī, m., *river*.  
 fortis, -e, *brave*.  
 fortiter, *bravely*.  
 fortitūdō, -dinis, f., *courage, endurance*.  
 fortūna, -ae, f., *lot, fortune, destiny*.  
 fossa, -ae, f., *ditch, water-course*.  
 frāter, -tris, m., *brother*.  
 frequentō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *visit frequently, throng*.  
 frigidus, -a, -um, *cold*.  
 frūmentārius, -a, -um, *of grain; rēs frūmentāria, grain-supply*.  
 frūmentum, -ī, n., *grain*.  
 fruor, fruī, frūctus sum, *enjoy (with abl.)*.  
 fuga, -ae, f., *flight; in fugam dare, put to flight*.  
 fugiō, fugere, fugī, *flee, fly, avoid*.

fugō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *put to flight, chase away*.  
 fulmen, -minis, n., *thunderbolt, lightning*.  
 fūmus, -ī, m., *smoke*.  
 furor, -ōris, m., *madness*.

## G.

galea, -ae, f., *helmet*.  
 Gallia, -ae, f., *Gaul (the country)*.  
 Gallicus, -a, -um, *Gallic*.  
 Gallus, -ī, m., *a Gaul*.  
 gallus, -ī, m., *cock, domestic cock*.  
 Garumna, -ae, m. or f., *the river Garonne*.  
 Genāva, -ae, f., *Geneva*.  
 gēns, gentis, f., *tribe*.  
 genus, generis, n., *kind, sort; race*.  
 Germānia, -ae, f., *Germany*.  
 Germānus, -ī, m., *a German*.  
 gerō, gerere, gessi, gestum, *wage, manage, carry on*.  
 gladius, -ī, m., *sword*.  
 glōria, -ae, f., *glory, fame*.  
 gracilis, -e, *slender*.  
 Graecia, -ae, f., *Greece*.  
 Graecus, -a, -um, *Greek; as noun, Graecus, -ī, m., a Greek*.  
 grātia, -ae, f., *favor, thanks*.  
 grātiās agō, agere, ēgī, āctum, *thank, return thanks (with dat.)*.  
 grātus, -a, -um, *pleasing, welcome; thankful*.  
 gravis, -e, *heavy, severe*.  
 graviter, *heavily, severely*.  
 gubernō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *direct, govern*.

## H.

habeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, *have, hold.*

habitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *live, dwell.*

hasta, -ae, f., *spear.*

Helvētīi, -ōrum, m. pl., *Helvetians.*

herba, -ae, f., *plant.*

herī, *yesterday.*

hiberna, -ōrum, n. pl., *winter-quarters.*

hīc, haec, hōc, *this, the latter.*

hīc, adv., *here, in this place.*

hiems, hiemis, f., *winter.*

hinc, *hence, from this place.*

hodiē, *to-day.*

Homērus, -ī, m., *the poet Homer.*

homō, hominis, m. and f., *man, human being; in pl., people (in general, as distinguished from populus, people, a nation).*

honōs, -ōris, m., *honor, reputation.*

hōra, -ae, f., *hour.*

horribilis, -e, *terrible.*

hortor, -ārī, -ātus sum, *urge, encourage.*

hospes, -itis, m., *stranger.*

hostis, -is, m., *enemy (public).*

hūc, *hither, here, to this place.*

hūmānitās, -tātis, f., *refinement.*

humilis, -e, *low.*

## I.

ibi, *there, in that place.*

īdem, eadem, idem, *the same.*

idōneus, -a, -um, *suitable.*

ignāvis, -e, *cowardly.*

ignis, -is, m., *fire.*

ignōminia, -ae, f., *disgrace.*

ille, -a, -ud, *that, the former, he, she,*

*it; the great or well known (when following the word with which it agrees).*

illūstrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *light up, illuminate.*

imāgō, -ginis, f., *image, statue.*

imber, -bris, m., *rain, shower.*

immolō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *sacrifice.*

impediō, -īre, -ivī, -itum, *hinder.*

impedimentum, -ī, n., *hindrance; in pl., baggage.*

imperātor, -ōris, m., *commander, general.*

imperium, -ī, n., *sovereignty, empire, military command.*

impetus, -ūs, m., *attack.*

impetrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *gain one's end, obtain (a privilege).*

implōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *invoke, beseech.*

importō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *bring in, import.*

in, prep. with abl., *in, on, at; with acc., into, to.*

incautus, -a, -um, *unwary, off (one's) guard.*

incendō, -cendere, -cendī, -cēsum, *set on fire.*

incipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum, *begin.* Instead of the perfect tenses, coepī is generally used.

incitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *rouse, inspire.*

incola, -ae, m. and f., *inhabitant.*

incolō, -colere, -coluī, *dwell, inhabit.*

inde, *thence, from that place.*

indiciūm, -ī, n., *information.*

infēlix, -īcis, *unfortunate, unhappy.*

inferior, -ius, *lower.* Sup. *īnīmus* and *īmus*, *lowest, bottom of.*

- inferō, inferre, intulī, illātum, bring on; bellum inferre, with dat., make war on; signa inferre, advance (to an attack).**  
**inflammō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, set fire to.**  
**in fugam dare, put to flight.**  
**ingēns, -gentis, huge, enormous, great.**  
**inimicus, -a, -um, hostile; as noun, inimicus, -ī, m., enemy (personal).**  
**iniquus, -a, -um, unfavorable.**  
**iniūria, -ae, f., mischief, wrong.**  
**inopia, -ae, f., lack, want.**  
**insequor, -sequī, -secūtus sum, pursue.**  
**institūtum, -ī, n., institution, custom.**  
**instruō, -struere, -strūxī, -strūctum, draw up.**  
**insula, -ae, f., island.**  
**intellegō, -legere, -lēxī, -lēctum, understand, perceive.**  
**inter, prep. with acc., between, among.**  
**intereā, meanwhile.**  
**interclūdō, -clūdere, -clūsī, -clūsum, cut off.**  
**interficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum, kill.**  
**intermittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -mīs-sum, leave off.**  
**inter sē dare, exchange.**  
**intrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, enter.**  
**inveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventum, find.**  
**invisus, -a, -um, hateful, displeasing.**  
**invītus, -a, -um, unwilling.**  
**invius, -a, -um, pathless.**
- ipse, ipsa, ipsum, self.**  
**is, ea, id, he, she, it, that.**  
**iste, ista, istud, that of yours.**  
**Ītalia, -ae, f., Italy.**  
**ita, so.**  
**itaque, and so, therefore, accordingly.**  
**iter, itineris, n., way, route, march, journey; iter facere, to march.**  
**iterō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, repeat.**  
**iubeō, iubēre, iussī, iussum, command, bid, order.**  
**iūcundus, -a, -um, pleasant, pleasing.**  
**iūdicium, -ī, n., trial.**  
**iugum, -ī, n., yoke.**  
**iumentum, -ī, n., beast of burden.**  
**iungō, gere, iūnxī, iūnctum, join.**  
**Iuppiter, Iovis, m., Jupiter.**  
**Iūra, -ae, f., the Jura mountains.**  
**iūs, iūris, n., right, law.**
- L.**
- labor, -ōris, m., toil.**  
**lacus, -ūs, m., lake.**  
**laetus, -a, -um, glad, happy.**  
**lātē, widely, far and wide.**  
**latebra, -ae, f., hiding-place.**  
**Latīnus, -a, -um, Latin.**  
**lātus, -a, -um, wide, broad.**  
**latus, lateris, n., side.**  
**laudō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, praise, commend.**  
**laurea, -ae, f., the laurel-tree.**  
**laus, laudis, f., praise.**  
**lavō, -āre, lāvī, lautum, lōtum, or lavātum, wash, bathe.**  
**lēgātiō, -ōnis, f., embassy.**  
**lēgātus, -ī, m., lieutenant, ambassador.**

legiō, -ōnis, f., *legion*.  
 Lemannus, -ī, m., *Lake Geneva*.  
 lēx, lēgis, f., *law*.  
 liber, -brī, m., *book*.  
 liber, -era, -erum, *free*; as noun,  
 liberī, -ōrum, m. pl., *children* (of  
 free parents).  
 liberō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *free, liber-*  
*ate*.  
 libertās, -tātis, f., *freedom, liberty*.  
 ligneus, -a, -um, *wooden*.  
 lingua, -ae, f., *tongue, language*.  
 littera, -ae, f., *letter* (of the alpha-  
 bet). in pl., *a letter* (epistle),  
*literature*.  
 locus, -ī, m. (pl., loca, -ōrum, n.),  
*place*.  
 longē, adv., *far*.  
 longitūdō, -dīnis, f., *length*.  
 longus, -a, -um, *long*.  
 loquor, loquī, locūtus sum, *speak*.  
 lōrica, -ae, f., *leather cuirass, corse-*  
*let*.  
 lūdus, -ī, m., *play*; in Lesson XXV,  
*school*.  
 lūna, -ae, f., *the moon*.  
 lūx, lūcis, f., *light*. Primā lūce,  
 abl., *at daybreak*.  
 lyra, -ae, f., *lyre*.

## M.

magis, see multum.  
 magister, -trī, m., *master, school-*  
*teacher*.  
 magistra, -ae, f., *mistress*.  
 māgnitūdō, -dīnis, f., *size, great-*  
*ness*.  
 māgnus, -a, -um, *large, great*;  
 comp. māior, -ius, sup. māximus,

-a, -um; māiōrēs, *ancestors*;  
 māior nātū, *older*.  
 māiestās, -tātis, f., *majesty*.  
 malefīcium, -ī, n., *mischiefs*.  
 mālō, mälle, mālui, *prefer, would*  
*rather*.  
 malus, -a, -um, *bad, evil*.  
 maneō, manēre, mānsī, mānsūm,  
*stay, remain*.  
 manus, -ūs, f., *hand; band, com-*  
*pany*.  
 mare, maris, n., *sea*.  
 marmoreus, -a, -um, *marble*.  
 māter, mātris, f., *mother*.  
 Matrona, -ae, f., *the river Marne*.  
 māximē, see multum.  
 māximus, see māgnus.  
 medicīna, -ae, f., *medicine, healing*.  
 medicus, -ī, m., *physician, doctor*.  
 melior, see bonus.  
 melius, see bene.  
 membrum, -ī, n., *limb*; in pl. often  
*bodies*.  
 memoria, -ae, f., *memory*.  
 mēnsis, -is, m., *month*.  
 mercātor, -ōris, m., *trader, mer-*  
*chant*.  
 metus, -ūs, m., *fear*.  
 meus, -a, -um, *my, mine*.  
 migrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *migrate,*  
*go away, move*.  
 mīles, -itis, m., *soldier*.  
 Minerva, -ae, f., *Minerva, goddess*  
*of wisdom*.  
 minimē, see minus.  
 minor, -us, and minimus, see  
 parvus.  
 minus, *less*; sup. minimē, *least*.  
 mīrābilis, -e, *wonderful*.  
 mittō, mittere, mīsī, missum, *send*.  
 modus, -ī, m., *manner*.



- mollis, -e, *soft, gentle, effeminate.*  
 molō, molere, moluī, molitum, *grind.*  
 moneō, monēre, monuī, monitum, *advise, warn.*  
 mōns, montis, m., *mountain.*  
 mōnstrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *point out, teach.*  
 morbus, -ī, m., *disease.*  
 morior, morī, mortuus sum, *die.*  
 moror, -ārī, -ātus sum, *delay, linger.*  
 mors, mōrtis, f., *death.*  
 mōs, mōris, m., *custom, manner.*  
 moveō, movēre, movī, mōtum, *move. With castra, break.*  
 mox, *soon.*  
 multitudō, -dinis, f., *great number, multitude.*  
 multum and (with comparatives) multō, *much; comp. magis, more; sup. m̄ximē, most.*  
 multus, -a, -um, *much; in pl., many; comp. plūs, n., more; sup. plūrimus, -a, -um, most, very many.*  
 mundus, -ī, m., *the world, the universe.*  
 mūnītus, -a, -um (part. of mūniō), *fortified.*  
 mūniō, -īre, -ivī, -ītum, *fortify.*  
 mūnitiō, -ōnis, f., *fortification, strength.*  
 mūnus, -eris, n., *service, reward.*  
 mūrus, -ī, m., *wall.*
- N.
- nam, conj., *for.*  
 nātūra, -ae, f., *nature, character.*  
 nauta, -ae, m., *sailor.*  
 nāvīgium, -ī, n., *vessel, ship.*  
 nāvīgō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *sail, cruise.*  
 nāvis, -is, f., *ship, boat.*  
 nē, *that not, lest.*  
 -ne, interrogative enclitic, attached to the emphatic word in a question not containing another interrogative.  
 nec, see neque.  
 necō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *kill.*  
 negō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *deny, say (that) . . . not.*  
 nēmō, (nēminis), m., *no one.*  
 nemus, nemoris, n., *grove.*  
 Neptūnus, -ī, m., *Neptune, god of the sea.*  
 neque, and not; neque . . . neque, *neither . . . nor.* (Also spelled nec; but always neque before a vowel or h.)  
 nesciō, -scīre, -scivī, -scitum, *not know, be ignorant.*  
 neuter, -tra, -trum, *neither.*  
 niger, -gra, -grum, *black.*  
 nihil, n., indeclinable, *nothing.*  
 nihilō minus, *none the less.*  
 nōbilis, -e, *distinguished.*  
 nōbilitās, -tātis, f., *the nobility, aristocracy.*  
 noceō, -ēre, -ui, -itum, *harm, injure.*  
 noctū, *by night.*  
 nōlō, nōlle, nōluī, *not wish, be unwilling.*  
 nōmen, -minis, n., *name.*  
 nōnnūllus, -a, -um, *some.*  
 Nōricus, -a, -um, *of the Norici.*  
 noster, -tra, -trum, *our, ours.*  
 nota, -ae, f., *mark, sign.*  
 notō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *mark, write down.*

novus, -a, -um, *new*.  
 nox, noctis, f., *night*.  
 nūbēs, -is, f., *cloud*.  
 nūdō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *strip*.  
 nullus, -a, -um, *no, none*.  
 num, *whether* (in indirect questions; in direct questions, it suggests that a negative answer is expected).  
 numerus, -ī, m., *number; rhythm, verse*.  
 numquam, *never*.  
 nunc, *now*.  
 nūntio, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *announce*.  
 nūntius, -ī, m., *messenger, message*.

## O.

ob, prep. with acc., *on account of, because of*.  
 obscūrus, -a, -um, *dim, shady, unintelligible*.  
 obses, obsidis, m., *hostage*.  
 obtineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentum, *hold*.  
 occupō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *seize*.  
 oculus, -ī, m., *eye*.  
 odor, -ōris, m., *scent, odor*.  
 ōlim, *at some time, formerly, hereafter*.  
 olīva, -ae, f., *olive*.  
 Olympius, -a, -um, *Olympic*.  
 Olympus, -ī, m., *Olympus, home of the gods*.  
 omnis, -e, *all, every*.  
 opīniō, -ōnis, f., *reputation*.  
 oppidum, -ī, *town*.  
 opprimō, -primere, -pressī, -pressum, *crush*.  
 oppugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *besiege*.

optimē, see *bene*.  
 optimus, see *bonus*.  
 opus, operis, n., *work*.  
 ōra, -ae, f., *coast, shore*.  
 ōrāculum, -ī, n., *oracle*.  
 ōrātiō, -ōnis, f., *speech*.  
 ōrdō, -dīnis, m., *rank, order*.  
 Orgetorīx, -īgis, m., the name of a Helvetian noble.  
 ōrnātus, -a, -um (part. of ōrnō), *adorned*.  
 ōrnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *adorn, supply*.  
 ostendō, -tendere, tendī, tentum and -tēnsūm, *show*.

## P.

palūs, -ūdis, f., *marsh*.  
 parātus, -a, -um (part. of parō), *ready, prepared*.  
 pāreō, -ēre, -uī, *obey* (with dat.).  
 parō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *prepare, prepare for*.  
 pars, partis, f., *part, direction*.  
 parvus, -a, -um, *small, little; comp. minor, less, smaller; minor nātū, younger; sup. minīmus, -a, -um, smallest, least*.  
 passus, -ūs, m., *pace; mille passūs, pl., milia passuum, mile*.  
 pāstor, -ōris, m., *shepherd*.  
 pateō, -ēre, -uī, *lie open; extend*.  
 pater, -tris, m., *father*.  
 patientia, -ae, f., *endurance*.  
 patior, patī, passus sum, *suffer, permit, allow*.  
 patria, -ae, f., *native land, country*.

- patrius, -a, -um, *of a father, a father's, fatherly.*
- paucī, -ae, -a, *few.*
- paulisper, *a little while.*
- paulō, with comparatives, *a little.*
- pāx, pācis, f., *peace.*
- pecūnia, -ae, f., *money.*
- pedes, -ditis, m., *foot soldier.* In pl., *infantry.*
- pedester, -tris, -tre, *on foot; pedes-trēs cōpiae, infantry.*
- peditātus, -ūs, m., *infantry.*
- pellō, pellere, pepulī, pulsum, *rout, defeat.*
- Peloponnēsus, -ī, f., *the Peloponnese, the southern part of Greece, now called Morea.*
- penetrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *enter, penetrate.*
- per, prep. with acc., *through, by means of.*
- perducō, -ducere, -dūxī, -ductum, *lead through, carry.*
- perferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum, *suffer.*
- perficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum, *finish, accomplish.*
- periculōsus, -a, -um, *dangerous.*
- periculum, -ī, n., *danger, peril.*
- perītus, -a, -um, *skillful.*
- perniciōsus, -a, -um, *destructive.*
- perrumpō, -rumpere, -rūpī, ruptum, *break through, force a passage.*
- Persa, -ae, m., *a Persian.*
- persuadeō, -suādēre, -suāsī, -suāsum, with dat., *persuade.*
- perterreō, -terrēre, -terruī, -territum, *alarm, terrify.*
- pervenio, -venire, -vēnī, -ventum, with ad and acc., *arrive at, reach.* With domus, rūs, names of towns and of small islands, ad is omitted.
- pēs, pedis, m., *foot.*
- petō, petere, petivī, petitum, *seek, beg, ask.*
- pharetra, -ae, f., *quiver.*
- piger, -gra, -grum, *lazy.*
- pigritia, -ae, f., *laziness, idleness.*
- pīlum, -ī, n.,  *javelin.*
- pius, -a, -um, *devoted, devout, good.*
- placeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, *please,* with dat.
- placidus, -a, -um, *calm, quiet, mild.*
- plācō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *appease, win the favor of.*
- plāga, -ae, f., *blow.*
- plānitiēs, -ēī, f., *plain.*
- plēbs, plēbis, f., *commons.*
- plēnus, -a, -um, *full.*
- plūs, plūris, n. (in pl. adj., plūrēs, plūra), *more.*
- poēta, -ae, m., *poet.*
- polliceor, -licērī, -licitus sum, *promise.*
- pōmum, -ī, n., *fruit, orchard-fruit.*
- pōnō, pōnere, posuī, positum, *place;* with castra, *pitch.*
- pōns, pontis, m., *bridge.*
- populus, -ī, m., *people, nation.*
- porcus, -ī, m., *pig.*
- porta, -ae, f., *gate.*
- porto, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *carry, bring.*
- possum, posse, potuī, *can, be able.*
- post, prep. with acc., *after.*
- postea, *afterwards.*
- posterior, -ius, *latter;* sup. postrēmus, *last.*
- postrīdiē ēius diēi, *on the following day.*
- postulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *demand.*

potēns, -entis, *powerful*.  
 potestās, -tātis, f., *power*.  
 potior, -īri, -ītus sum, with abl.,  
*get or gain possession of*.  
 prae, prep. with abl., *before, in  
 comparison with*.  
 praecēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum,  
*excel, surpass*.  
 praeclārus, -a, -um, *very famous*.  
 praeda, -ae, f., *booty, prey*.  
 praedicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *assert,  
 relate; praise*.  
 praeficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum,  
*place in command of, with dat.*  
 praemium, -ī, n., *reward*.  
 praesidium, -ī, n., *guard, garrison,  
 protection*.  
 praesum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus, *be in  
 command of, with dat.*  
 pretiōsus, -ā, -um, *costly*.  
 primum, adv., *first*.  
 prius, see *prior*.  
 princeps, -cipis, m., *chief*.  
 principātus, -ūs, m., *leadership*.  
 prior, prius, *former*. Sup. prīmus,  
 -a, -um, *first*.  
 privatus, -a, -um, *private*.  
 privō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *deprive*.  
 prō, prep. with abl., *in front of,  
 before, for, in return for, in behalf  
 of*.  
 proelium, n., *battle*.  
 profectiō, -ōnis, f., *departure*.  
 proficiscor, proficiscī, profectus sum,  
*set out, go*.  
 prōgredior, -gredi, -gressus sum,  
*advance*.  
 prohibeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, *hold or  
 keep back, check, prevent*.  
 prōiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum,  
*throw before*.

prōnūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *pro-  
 claim*.  
 prope, prep. with acc., *near*.  
 propinquus, -a, -um, *near, related;*  
 as noun, propinquus, -ī, m.,  
*kinsman*.  
 propior, -ius, *nearer*. Sup. proxi-  
 mus, -a, -um, *nearest, next*.  
 propitius, -a, -um, *gracious, kind*.  
 prōvincia, -ae, f., *province*.  
 proximus, see *propior*.  
 prūdēns, -entis, *foreseeing, saga-  
 cious*.  
 puella, -ae, f., *girl*.  
 puer, pueri, m., *boy; in pl., chil-  
 dren (the general word; chil-  
 dren of free parents are called  
 liberī)*.  
 pūgnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *fight*.  
 pulcher, -chra, -chrum, *beautiful*.  
 pulchritūdō, -dinis, f., *beauty*.  
 pulsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *beat, beat  
 upon, strike*.  
 pūrus, -a, -um, *pure, clear*.  
 Pŷthia, -ae, f., *the Pythoness, title  
 of the priestess of Apollo at  
 Delphi*.

## Q.

quā, *by what way, where*.  
 quaerō, quaerere, quaesivī, quaesi-  
 tum, *ask, inquire, request*.  
 quam, *how, than*.  
 quattuor, indeclinable, *four*.  
 -que, enclitic, *and*.  
 queror, querī, questus sum, *com-  
 plain*.  
 quī, quae, quod, *who, which, what,  
 that*.

quid, n., *what*.

quidam, quaedam, quiddam (and  
adj., quoddam), *some, a certain*.

quis, quid, interr., *who? which? what?*

quisquam, quicquam (quidquam),  
*any, any one*.

quisque, quaeque, quidque (adj.,  
quodque), *each, each one, every,  
everyone*.

quō, *whither, where, to what place*.

quod, *because*.

quoque, *also*.

quot, *how many*.

## R.

raptō, raptāre, raptāvī, raptātum,  
*carry off*.

ratis, -is, f., *raft*.

recipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum, *take  
back, recover; with reflexive, sē  
recipere, retreat*.

recitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *read aloud,  
recite*.

recreō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *revive, re-  
fresh*.

reddō, -dere, -didī, -ditum, *return,  
give back*.

reditiō, -ōnis, f., *return*.

redūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum,  
*bring or lead back*.

referō, referre, rettulī, relātum,  
*bring back; pedem referre, re-  
treat*.

rēgīna, -ae, f., *queen*.

regiō, -ōnis, f., *region, place*.

rēgius, -a, -um, *royal*.

rēgnum, -ī, n., *kingdom, throne*.

relinquō, -linquere, -liquī, -lictum,  
*leave*.

reliquus, -a, -um, *remaining, rest of*.

remigrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *move  
back, return*.

rēm̄us, -ī, m., *oar*.

repellō, repellere, reppulī, repulsum,  
*drive back, repulse*.

repudiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *reject*.

rēs, rei, f., *thing, fact, matter; rēs  
pública, rei públicae, f., common-  
wealth*.

resistō, -sistere, -stitī, *resist, with-  
stand*.

retineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentum  
*keep back*.

revertō, -vertere, -vertī, -versum  
(also deponent, revertor, revertī,  
reversus sum), *return*.

rēx, rēgis, m., *king*.

Rhēnus, -ī, m., *the river Rhine*.

ripa, -ae, f., *bank*.

rōbur, -oris, n., *oak; vigor*.

rōbustus, -a, -um, *strong, sturdy*.

rogō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *ask*.

Rōma, -ae, f., *Rome*.

Rōmānus, -a, -um, *Roman*. As  
noun, Rōmānus, -ī, m., *a Roman*.

rōs, rōris, m., *dew*.

rosa, -ae, f., *rose*.

ruīna, -ae, f., *ruin*.

rūs, rūris, n., *the country*.

## S.

sacer, -cra, -crum, *sacred, holy*.

sacerdōs, -dōtis, m. and f., *priest,  
priestess*.

saepe, *often*.

saevus, -a, -um, *fierce, savage*.

sagitta, -ae, f., *arrow*.

saltō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *dance*.

salūs, -ūtis, f., *safety, safeguard.*  
 sãnō, -ãre, -ãvī, -ãtum, *heal, cure.*  
 sapientia, -ae, f., *wisdom.*  
 satis, *enough, sufficiently.*  
 saxum, -ī, n., *rock.*  
 scelus, sceleris, n., *crime.*  
 scēptrum, -ī, n., *staff, sceptre.*  
 sciō, scīre, scīvī, scītum, *know.*  
 scribo, scribere, scripsī, scriptum,  
*write.*  
 scūtum, ī, n., *shield.*  
 secundus, -a, -um, *prosperous,*  
*favorable.*  
 sed, *but.*  
 sēdecim, *sixteen.*  
 sēdēs, -is, f., *seat, abode.*  
 sella, -ae, f., *seat.*  
 sēmentis, -is, f., *sowing, seeding.*  
 semper, *always.*  
 sempiternus, -a, -um, *everlasting.*  
 senātus, -ūs, m., *senate.*  
 senex, -is, m., *old man.*  
 sententia, -ae, f., *opinion.*  
 sēparō, -ãre, -ãvī, -ãtum, *separate.*  
 Sēquana, -ae, m., *the river Seine.*  
 Sēquanus, -ī, m., *a Sequanian.*  
 sequor, sequī, secūtus sum, *follow.*  
 servātus, -a, -um (part. of servō),  
*saved, rescued.*  
 servītus, -ūtis, f., *slavery.*  
 servō, -ãre, -ãvī, -ãtum, *save, pre-*  
*serve.*  
 servus, -i, m., *slave.*  
 sevērus, -a, -um, *stern, strict.*  
 sic, *so, thus, in such a way.*  
 significō, -ãre, -ãvī, -ãtum, *show,*  
*set forth.*  
 signum, -ī, n., *signal, standard.*  
 signa īferre, *advance (to an*  
*attack).*  
 silva, -ae, f., *wood, forest.*

similis, -e, *like.*  
 simplex, -plicis, *simple.*  
 sine, prep. with abl., *without.*  
 singulī, -ae, -a, *one at a time, sepa-*  
*rate.*  
 sinister, -tra, -trum, *left; as noun,*  
*sinistra, -ae, f., the left hand.*  
 situs, -a, -um, *situated.*  
 socius, ī, m., *ally.*  
 sōl, sōlis, m., *sun.*  
 sōlus, -a, -um, *alone, only.*  
 soror, sorōris, f., *sister.*  
 spectō, -ãre, -ãvī, -ãtum, *behold.*  
 spēs, speī, f., *hope.*  
 splendidus, -a, -um, *shining, bril-*  
*liant.*  
 splendor, -ōris, m., *splendor, mag-*  
*nificence.*  
 (spōns, spontis), f. (only found in  
 abl. sing., sponte), *of one's own*  
*accord; by oneself, alone.*  
 statim, *immediately.*  
 statua, -ae, f., *statue.*  
 stella, -ae, f., *star.*  
 sterilis, -e, *barren, unfruitful.*  
 sterilitās, -tātis, f., *barrenness.*  
 stilus, -ī, m., *style, a pointed in-*  
*strument for writing on wax.*  
 strēnuus, -a, -um, *active, busy.*  
 studium, *eagerness, fondness.*  
 sub, prep. with acc., *under, to the*  
*foot of; and with the abl.,*  
*under.*  
 subeō, -īre, -iī, -itum, *undergo, en-*  
*duce.*  
 subitō, *suddenly.*  
 subsidium, -ī, n., *reinforcements.*  
 suī, *of himself, herself, itself, them-*  
*selves.*  
 sum, esse, fuī, futūrus, *be.*  
 summus, see superior.

**superātus**, -a, -um (part. of *superō*),  
*conquered*.  
**superior**, -ius, *higher, former*; sup.  
**suprēmus** and **summus**, -a, -um,  
*highest, top of*. When applied to  
persons, **summus** often means  
*great*.  
**superō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *conquer,*  
*overcome, surpass; pass over,*  
*rise above*.  
**suppliciter**, *like a petitioner, sup-*  
*pliantly*.  
**sustentō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *sup-*  
*port*.  
**sustineō**, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentum,  
*withstand*.  
**suus**, -a, -um, *his, her, hers, its,*  
*their, theirs*.

## T.

**tābula**, -ae, f., *tablet*.  
**Tacitus**, -ī, m., *Tacitus*, a Roman  
historian.  
**tālis**, -e, *such*.  
**tam**, *so*.  
**tamen**, *nevertheless*.  
**tantus**, -a, -um, *so great*.  
**taurus**, -ī, m., *bull, ox*.  
**tēlum**, -ī, n., *weapon, missile*.  
**tempestās**, -tātis, f., *storm, tempest*.  
**templum**, -ī, n., *temple*.  
**tempus**, *temporis*, n., *time, season*.  
**teneō**, *tenēre*, tenuī, *tentum*, *hold*.  
**tener**, -era, -erum, *soft, delicate,*  
*tender*.  
**tentōrium**, -ī, n., *tent*.  
**terra**, -ae, f., *earth, country, land*;  
in pl., sometimes = *the world*.  
**terribilis**, -e, *terrible*.

**tertius**, -a, -um, *third*.  
**Teutonī**, -ōrum, m. pl., *Teutons*,  
the name of a Germanic tribe.  
**timeō**, -ēre, -uī, *fear*.  
**timidus**, -a, -um, *timid*.  
**timor**, -ōris, m., *fear, be afraid (of)*.  
**tolerō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *bear, en-*  
*duce*.  
**tollō**, *tollere*, sustulī, *sublātum*,  
*raise, remove*.  
**tōtus**, -a, -um, *whole*.  
**trādō**, -dere, -didī, -ditum, *hand*  
*over*.  
**trādūcō**, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum,  
*lead across*.  
**trāns**, prep. with acc., *across*.  
**trānseō**, -īre, -iī, -itum, *cross*.  
**tripūs**, -odis, m., *tripod*.  
**trīstis**, -e, *sad, gloomy*.  
**tū**, *tui*, *thou, you (sing.)*.  
**tum**, *then*.  
**turris**, -is, f., *tower*.  
**tūtēla**, -ae, f., *protection*.  
**tūtus**, -a, -um, *protected, safe*.  
**tuus**, -a, -um, *thy, thine, your,*  
*yours (sing.)*.

## U.

**ubi**, *where, in what place*.  
**ūllus**, -a, -um, *any*.  
**ūlterior**, -ius, *farther*; superlative,  
**ūltimus**, -a, -um, *farthest*.  
**umquam**, *ever*.  
**unda**, -ae, f., *wave*.  
**unde**, *whence, from what place*.  
**undique**, *from all sides, on all sides*.  
**ūnus**, -a, -um, *one, only*.  
**urbs**, *urbis*, f., *city*.  
**ursa**, -ae, f., *bear*.

ūsus, -ūs, m., *use, advantage.*  
 ut, *that, in order that, so that; as.*  
 uter, -tra, -trum, *which (of two).*  
 utinam, *O that! would that! if only!*  
 ūtor, ūtī, ūsus sum, with abl., *use.*  
 uxor, -ōris, f., *wife.*

## V.

vadum, -ī, n., *ford.*  
 validus, -a, -um, *strong, powerful.*  
 vāllum, -ī, n., *rampart.*  
 vapor, -ōris, m., *exhalation, vapor.*  
 vāstō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *lay waste.*  
 vehemēns, -entis, *violent.*  
 vehementer, *violently, impetuously.*  
 vēlum, -ī, n., *sail.*  
 vēnātiō, -ōnis, f., *hunt, hunting expedition.*  
 veniō, venīre, vēnī, ventum, *come.*  
 ventus, -ī, m., *wind.*  
 verbum, -ī, n., *word.*  
 vereor, -ērī, -itus sum, *fear, reverence.*  
 Vergilius, -ī, m., *Vergil.*  
 vester, -tra, -trum, *your, yours (plur.).*  
 vestimentum, -ī, n., *garment.*  
 vetō, vetāre, vetuī, vetitum, *forbid.*  
 via, -ae, f., *way, road.*

victima, -ae, f., *sacrifice, victim.*  
 victor, -ōris, m., *victor.*  
 victōria, -ae, f., *victory; also Victoria (the goddess of victory).*  
 vīcus, -ī, m., *village.*  
 videō, vidēre, vidī, vīsum, *see.*  
 vincō, vincere, vīcī, victum, *conquer, subdue.*  
 vinculum, -ī, n., *chain, bond; ex vinculis, in chains.*  
 vīnum, -ī, n., *wine.*  
 vir, virī, m., *man.*  
 virtūs, -tūtis, f., *courage.*  
 vīs, (vīs), f., *force, violence, power; in pl., vīrēs, strength.*  
 vīta, -ae, f., *life.*  
 vitō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *avoid, escape.*  
 vituperō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *blame, scold.*  
 vīvus, -a, -um, *living.*  
 vix, *scarcely, with difficulty.*  
 volō, velle, voluī, *be willing, wish.*  
 voluntārius, -a, -um, *voluntary.*  
 voluntās, -tātis, f., *will.*  
 vōtum, -ī, n., *vow, prayer.*  
 vōx, vōcis, f., *word, voice.*  
 vulnerātus, -a, -um (part. of vulnerō), *wounded.*  
 vulnerō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *wound.*  
 vulnus, vulneris, n., *wound.*



## ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY.

The principal parts of verbs can be found by refer. nce to the Latin-English Vocabulary preceding this.

### A.

about, *dē*, prep. with abl.  
 accident, *casus*, -ūs, m.  
 accordingly, *itaque*.  
 across, *trāns*, prep. with acc.  
 active, *ācer*, *āceris*, *ācre*.  
 advance, *prōgredior*, 3; advance to  
 an attack, *sīgna īnferre*.  
 advantage, *ūsus*, -ūs, m.  
 advice, *cōnsilium*, -ī, n.  
 advise, *moneō*, 2.  
 aid, *auxilium*, -ī, n.  
 alarm, *perterreō*, 2.  
 all, *omnis*, -e.  
 ally, *socius*, -ī, m.  
 alone, *sōlus*, -a, -um.  
 also, *quoque*; and also, *atque*.  
 altar, *āra*, -ae, f.  
 always, *semper*.  
 ancestors, *māiōrēs*, -um, m. pl.  
 and, *et*, *atque*, -que (postpositive);  
 and also, *atque*; and not, *neque*.  
 animal, *animal*, -ālis, n.  
 announce, *nūntiō*, 1.  
 another, *alius*, -a, -ud.  
 any, *ūllus*, -a, -um.  
 approach (verb), *appropinquō*, 1.  
 approach (noun), *aditus*, -ūs, m.  
 arm, *armō*, 1.  
 arms, *arma*, -ōrum, n. pl.

army, *exercitus*, -ūs, m.; army on  
 the march, *āgmen*, -minis, n.  
 arrival, *adventus*, -ūs, m.  
 arrive at, *pervenio*, 4, with *ad* and  
 acc., *ad* being omitted with  
*domus*, *rūs*, names of towns  
 and of small islands.  
 ask, *rogō*, 1; *petō*, 3; *postulō*, 1;  
*quaerō*, 3.  
 assure, *cōnfīrmō*, 1.  
 at, *in*, prep. with abl.  
 Athens, *Athēnae*, -ārum, f. pl.  
 attack (verb), *oppugnō*, 1; *im-*  
*petum facere in*, with acc.  
 attack (noun), *impetus*, -ūs, m.  
 attempt, *cōnātus*, -ūs, m.  
 avoid, *fugiō*, 3.  
 await, *expectō*, 1.

### B.

bad, *malus*, -a, -um.  
 bank, *rīpa*, -ae, f.  
 baggage, *impedimenta*, -ōrum, n. pl.  
 battle, *proelium*, -ī, n.; *pūgna*, -ae, f.  
 be, *sum*, irr.  
 be able, *possum*, irr.  
 be at hand, *adsum*, irr.  
 be in command of, *praesum*, irr.  
 be present, *adsum*, irr.

be unwilling, *nōlō*, irr.  
 be willing, *volō*, irr.  
 beautiful, *pulcher*, *-chra*, *-crrum*.  
 because, *quod*.  
 become, *fīō*, irr.  
 become accustomed, *cōnsuēscō*, 3.  
 before (of both place and time),  
*ante*, prep. with acc.; (of place  
 only often with the idea of de-  
 fence), *prō*, prep. with abl.; (= in  
 the presence of), *apud*, prep.  
 with acc.  
 beg, *petō*, 3.  
 begin, *incipiō*, 3; in perfect tenses,  
 generally *coepī*, defective.  
 believe, *crēdō*, 3.  
 besiege, *oppugnō*, 1.  
 best (adj.), *optimus*, *-a*, *-um*; (adv.),  
*optimē*.  
 better (adj.), *melior*, *-ius*; (adv.),  
*melius*.  
 between, *inter*, prep. with acc.  
 bloodshed, *caedēs*, *-is*, f.  
 body, *corpus*, *corporis*, n.  
 bold, *audāx*, *-ācis*.  
 book, *liber*, *-brī*, m.  
 both . . . and, *et . . . et*.  
 bottom of, *īnfimus*, *-a*, *-um*.  
 boy, *puer*, *puerī*, m.  
 brave, *fortis*, *-e*.  
 bravely, see § 305.  
 break camp, *castra movēre*.  
 bring away, *dēferō*, irr.  
 bring back, *referō*, irr.; *redūcō*, 3.  
 bring on, *īnferō*, irr.  
 bring to, *adferō*, irr.  
 bring to pass, *efficiō*, 3.  
 broad, *lātus*, *-a*, *-um*.  
 brother, *frāter*, *frātris*, m.  
 bridge, *pōns*, *pontis*, m.  
 building, *aedificiūm*, *-ī*, n.

but, *autem* (postpositive), *sed*.  
 by, *ā*, *ab*, prep. with abl., or the  
 abl. alone.

## C.

Caesar, *Caesar*, *-aris*, m.  
 call, *appellō*, 1.  
 call together, *convocō*, 1.  
 camp, *castra*, *-ōrum*, n. pl.  
 can, *possum*, irr.  
 capture, *capīō*, 3.  
 carefully, *diligenter*.  
 Carthage, *Carthāgō*, *-ginis*, f.  
 Catiline, *Catīlina*, *-ae*, m.  
 cavalry, *equitātus*, *-ūs*, m.; the plural  
 of *eques*, *-itis*, m., horseman; (as  
 adj.), *equester*, *-tris*, *-tre*.  
 certain (= sure), *certus*, *-a*, *-um*;  
 (= a certain), *quīdam*, *quaedam*,  
*quiddam*, and adj. *quoddam*.  
 certainly, see § 305.  
 character, *nātūra*, *-ae*, f.  
 chief, *prīnceps*, *-cipis*, m.  
 children, *puerī*, *-ōrum*, m. pl.; (of  
 free parents), *liberī*, *-ōrum*, m. pl.  
 choose, *dēligō*, 3.  
 Cicero, *Cicerō*, *-ōnis*, m.  
 citizen, *cīvis*, *-is*, m.  
 city, *urbs*, *urbis*, f.  
 client, *cliēns*, *-entis*, m.  
 cohort, *cohors*, *-hortis*, f.  
 come, *veniō*, 4.  
 come together, *conveniō*, 4.  
 command, *imperō*, 1; *iubeō*, 2.  
 common, *commūnis*, *-e*.  
 commons, *plēbs*, *plēbis*, f.  
 commonwealth, *rēs pūblica*, *reī*  
*pūblicae*, f.  
 compel, *cōgō*, 3.

complain, *queror*, 3.  
 complete, *cōficiō*, 3.  
 conference, *colloquium*, -i, n.  
 confidence, *fidēs*, -eī, f.  
 conquer, *superō*, 1, *vīcō*, 3.  
 Corinth, *Corīnthus*, -ī, f.  
 consul, *cōsul*, -ulis, m.  
 council, *concilium*, -ī, n.  
 counsel, *cōnsilium*, -ī, n.  
 country (as distinguished from the city), *rūs*, *rūris*, n.; (geographic division), *terra*, -ae, f.; (native land), *patria*, -ae, f.  
 courage, *virtūs*, -ūtis, f.  
 crime, *scelus*, -eris, n.  
 cross, *trānsēō*, 4, irr.  
 crush, *opprimō*, 3.  
 Cures, *Curēs*, -ium, m. pl.  
 custom, *mōs*, *mōris*, m.  
 cut off, *interclūdō*, 3.

## D.

danger, *perīculum*, -ī, n.  
 dare, *audeō*, 2, semi-deponent.  
 daughter, *filia*, -ae, f.  
 day, *dies*, -eī, m. and f.  
 daybreak, at, *prīma lūce*, abl. f.  
 death, *mors*, *mortis*, f.  
 decide, *cōstituō*, 3.  
 deep, *altus*, -a, -um.  
 defend, *dēfendō*, 3.  
 defender, *dēfēnsor*, -ōris, m.  
 delay, *moror*, 1.  
 demand, *postulō*, 1.  
 departure, *prōfēctiō*, -ōnis, f.  
 deprive, *prīvō*, 1.  
 desist, *dēsistō*, 3.  
 despair of, *dēspērō*, 1.  
 destroy, *dēlēō*, 2.

determine, *cōstituō*, 3.  
 dew, *rōs*, *rōris*, m.  
 die, *morior*, irr.  
 difficult, *dīffīcilis*, -e.  
 direction, *pars*, *partis*, f.  
 disaster, *calamitās*, -tātis, f.  
 ditch, *fossa*, -ac, f.  
 do, *faciō*, 3.  
 down from, *dē*, prep. with abl.  
 draw up, *īnstruō*, 3.  
 dwell, *īcolō*, 3; *habitō*, 1.

## E.

each, *quisque*, *quaeque*, *quidque*, and adj. *quodque*.  
 easily, *facile*.  
 easy, *facilis*, -e.  
 embassy, *lēgatiō*, -ōnis, f.  
 empire, *īmpērium*, -ī, n.  
 encourage, *cohortor*, 1.  
 end of, *extrēmus*, -a, -um.  
 enemy (personal), *īnīmīcus*, -ī, m.; (public), *hostis*, -is, m. (generally in pl.).  
 enjoy, *fruor*, 3.  
 enough, *satis*.  
 equestrian, *equester*, -tris, -tre.  
 ever, *ūquam*.  
 every, *omnis*, -e; *quisque*, *quaeque*, *quidque*, and adj. *quodque*.  
 exchange, *īter sē dare*.  
 eye, *oculus*, -ī, m.

## F.

fact, *rēs*, *reī*, f.  
 fall, *cadō*, 3.  
 famous, *clārus*, -a, -um.

far (adv.), *longē*; **far and wide**, *lātē*.  
**farther**, *ūlterior*, *-ius*; (adv.), *longi-*  
*us*; **farthest**, *ūltimus*, *-a*, *-um*;  
 (adv.), *longissimē*.  
**father**, *pater*, *patris*, m.  
**favor**, *beneficium*, *-ī*, n.  
**fear** (verb); *timeō*, 2.  
**fear** (noun), *metus*, *-ūs*, m.; *timor*,  
*-ōris*, m.  
**few**, *paucī*, *-ae*, *-a*.  
**field**, *ager*, *agrī*, m.  
**flee**, *fugiō*, 3.  
**fleet**, *classis*, *-is*, f.  
**flight**, *fuga*, *-ae*, f.; **put to flight**, *in*  
*fugam dare*.  
**flower**, *flōs*, *flōris*, m.  
**fight**, *pūgnō*, 1.  
**fill**, **fill up**, *compleō*, 2.  
**find**, *inveniō*, 4.  
**first**, *prīmus*, *-a*, *-um*.  
**follow**, *sequor*, 3.  
**foot**, *pēs*, *pedis*, m.  
**footsoldier**, *pedes*, *-ditis*, m.  
**for** (prep.), meaning "in behalf of,"  
*prō*, prep. with abl., or the dative  
 case alone; to denote aim or  
 purpose, *ad*, prep. with acc.; to  
 denote direction, *ad* or *in* with  
 acc.  
**for** (conj.), *enim* (postpositive),  
*nam*.  
**forbid**, *retō*, 1, irr.  
**force**, *rīs*, (*rīs*), f.  
**forced march**, *māgnum iter*, n.  
**forces**, *cōpiāe*, *-ārum*, f. pl.  
**forest**, *silva*, *-ae*, f.  
**former**, *prior*, *prius*: **the former**,  
*ille*, *-a*, *-ud*.  
**fortification**, *mūnitiō*, *-ōnis*, f.  
**fortify**, *mūniō*, 4.  
**found**, *condō*, 3.

**four**, *quattuor*.

**free** (adj.), *liber*, *-era*, *-erum*.

**free** (verb), *liberō*, 1.

**freedom**, *libertās*, *-tātis*, f.

**frequent**, *crēber*, *-bra*, *-brum*.

**friend**, *amīcus*, *-ī*, m.

**friendly**, *amīcus*, *-a*, *-um*.

**friendship**, *amīcitiā*, *-ae*, f.

**from**, *ā*, *ab*; *ē*, *ex*; *dē*, preps. with  
 abl.

## G.

**Gaul** (the country), *Gallia*, *-ae*, f.;

(a Gaul), *Gallus*, *-ī*, m.

**gain possession of**, *potior*, 4.

**Gallic**, *Gallicus*, *-a*, *-um*.

**garrison**, *praesidium*, *-ī*, n.

**gate**, *porta*, *-ae*, f.

**gather**, *cōnferō*, irr.

**general** (noun), *imperātor*, *-ōris*, m.

**general** (adj.), *commūnis*, *-e*.

**German**, *Germānus*, *-a*, *-um*.

**Germany**, *Germāniā*, *-ae*, f.

**get possession of**, *potior*, 4.

**girl**, *puella*, *-ae*, f.

**give**, *dō*, 1, irr.

**go**, *eō*, irr.

**go out**, *exeō*, irr.

**go to**, *adeō*, irr.

**god**, *deus*, *-ī*, m.

**goddess**, *dea*, *-ae*, f.

**good**, *bonus*, *-a*, *-um*.

**grain**, *frūmentum*, *-ī*, n.

**great**, *māgnus*, *-a*, *-um*; (of persons)

often *summus*, *-a*, *-um*.

**great number**, *multitūdō*, *-dinis*, f.

**greater**, *māior*, *-ius*.

**greatness**, *māgnitūdō*, *-dinis*, f.

**guide**, *dux*, *ducis*, m.

## H.

half way up, *in* with *medius*, -a, -um in the abl.

halt, *cōnsistō*, 3.

hasten, *contendō*, 3

have, *habēō*, 2.

he, *is*, *ēius*.

head, *caput*, *capitis*, n.

habit, *cōnsuētūdō*, -*diuis*, f.

hand, *manus*, -*ūs*, f.

hand over, *trādō*, 3.

happen, *accidō*, 3; *fiō*, irr.

hear, *audiō*, 4.

heavily, see § 305.

heavy, *gravis*, -e.

height, *altitūdō*, -*dinis*, f.

help (verb), *adsum*, irr.

help (noun), *auxilium*, -*ī*, n.

Helvetian, *Helvētius*, -*ī*, m.

hem in, *contineō*, 2.

hence, *hinc*.

her, hers, *suus*, -a, -um; *ēius*.

here, *hīc*; (= hither) *hūc*.

hesitate, *dubitō*, 1.

high, *altus*, -a, -um.

higher, *altior*, -*ius*; *superior*, -*ius*.

highest, *altissimus*, -a, -um; *summus*, -a, -um.

hill, *collis*, -*is*, m.

hinder, *impediō*, 4.

hindrance, *impedimentum*, -*ī*, n.

his, *suus*, -a, -um; *ēius*.

hither, *hūc*.

hold, *teneō*, 2; *habēō*, 2.

hold back, *prohibeō*, 2.

home, *domus*, -*ūs*, f.

hope, *spēs*, *speī*, f.

horn, *cornū*, -*ūs*, n.

horse, *equus*, *equī*, m.

horseman, *eques*, -*equitis*, m.

hostage, *obses*, *obsidis*, m.

hostile, *inimicus*, -a, -um.

how (with adjs. and advs.), *quam*.

how long, *quam diū*.

how many, *quot*.

huge, *ingēns*, -*gentis*.

## I.

I, *ego*; *mōi*.

illustrious, *clārus*, -a, -um.

immediately, *statim*.

impetuously, see § 305.

in, *in*, prep. with abl.

in front of, *ante*, prep. with acc.; (with the idea of defence), *prō*, prep. with abl.

in order to, *ut*, with subjunctive.

in return for, *prō*, prep. with abl.

in such a way, *sic*.

in the presence of, *apud*, prep. with acc.

infantry, *peditātus*, -*ūs*, m., also the pl. of *pedes*, *peditis*, m., footsoldier.

inform, *certiōrem facere*; *doccō*, 2.

influence, *auctōritās*, -*tātis*, f.

injure, *noccō*, 2.

inquire, *quaerō*, 3.

it, *is*, *ea*, *id*.

Italy, *Italia*, -*ae*, f.

its, *suus*, -a, -um; *ēius*.

## J.

javelin, *pīlum*, -*ī*, n.

join, *committō*, 3.

journey, *iter*, *itineris*, n.

Jupiter, *Iuppiter*, *Iovis*, m.

## K.

keep back (of defence), *prohibeō*, 2;  
(of restraint), *retineō*, 2.  
keen, *acer*, *acris*, *acre*.  
kill, *interficiō*, 3.  
kindness, *beneficium*, -ī, n.  
king, *rēx*, *rēgis*, m.  
kingdom, *rēgnum*, -ī, n.  
knight, *eques*, -itis, m.  
know, *sciō*, 4; not know, *nesciō*, 4.

## L.

lack (verb), *careō*, 2.  
lack (noun), *inopia*, -ae, f.  
language, *lingua*, -ae, f.  
large, *māgnus*, -a, -um.  
last, *postrēmus*, -a, -um.  
Latin, *Latīnus*, -a, -um.  
latter, (*posterior*, -ius); the latter,  
*hīc*, *haec*, *hōc*.  
law, *lēx*, *lēgis*, f.  
lay waste, *vāstō*, 1.  
lead, *dūcō*, 3.  
lead across, *trādūcō*, 3.  
lead away, *dēdūcō*, 3.  
lead back, *redūcō*, 3.  
lead from, *dēdūcō*, 3.  
lead out, *ēdūcō*, 3.  
leader, *dux*, *ducis*, m.  
leadership, *prīncipātus*, -ūs, m.  
learn (a lesson), *dīscō*, 3; (a fact),  
*cōgnōscō*, 3.  
least (adj.), *minimus*, -a, -um;  
(adv.), *minimē*.  
leave, *relinquō*, 3.  
leave off, *intermittō*, 3.  
left, *sinīster*, -tra, -trum.  
legion, *legiō*, -ōnis, f.

length, *longitūdō*, -dinis, f.  
less (adj.), *minor*, -us; (adv.),  
*minus*.  
letter, *litterae*, -arum, f. pl.  
liberty, *libertās*, -tātis, f.  
lieutenant, *lēgātus*, -ī, m.  
light, *lūx*, *lūcis*, f.  
like, *similis*, -e.  
line of battle, *aciēs*, -eī, f.  
little, *parvus*, -a, -um; a little  
(with comparatives), *paulō*.  
live (dwell), *habitō*, 1.  
living, *vīvus*, -a, -um.  
long (of time), *dīū*; (of space),  
*longus*, -a, -um.  
lose, *amittō*, 3.  
low, *humilis*, -e.  
lower, *īnferior*, -ius; lowest, *īn-*  
*fīmus* and *īmus*, -a, -um.

## M.

make, *faciō*, irr.  
man, *vir*, *virī*, m.; *homō*, *hominis*,  
m. and f.  
manage, *gerō*, 3.  
manner, *modus*, -ī, m.  
many, *multī*, -ae, -a.  
march (verb), *iter facere*.  
march (noun), *iter*, *itineris*, n.  
marsh, *palūs*, -ūdis, f.  
matter, *rēs*, *rei*, f.  
meditate, *cōgitō*, 1.  
meet, *conveniō*, 4.  
meeting, *concilium*, -ī, n.  
message, }  
messenger, } *nūntius*, -ī, m.  
mile, *mīlle passūs*, m., pl. *mīlia*  
*passuum*.

**military command**, *imperium*, -ī, n.  
**mind**, *animus*, -ī, m.  
**mine**, *meus*, -a, -um.  
**mischief**, *iniūria*, -ae, f.  
**misfortune**, *casus*, -ūs, m.  
**missile**, *tēlum*, -ī, n.  
**money**, *pecūnia*, -ae, f.  
**more** (noun), *plūs*, *plūris*, n.;  
 (adj.), *plūrēs*, *plūra*; (adv.),  
*magis*.  
**most** (adj.), *plūrimus*, -a, -um;  
 (adv.), *māximē*.  
**mother**, *māter*, *mātris*, f.  
**mound**, *agger*, *aggeris*, m.  
**mountain**, *mōns*, *montis*, m.  
**move**, *moveō*, 2.  
**much** (adj.), *multus*, -a, -um;  
 (adv.), *multum*; (with compar-  
 atives), *multō*.  
**multitude**, *multitūdō*, -dinis, f.  
**my**, *meus*, -a, -um.

## N.

**name**, *nōmen*, -inis, n.  
**narrow**, *angustus*, -a, -um.  
**native land**, *patria*, -ae, f.  
**near**, *ad*, *apud*, *prope*, preps. with  
 acc.  
**nearer**, *propior*, -ius; **nearest**, *proxi-  
 mus*, -a, -um.  
**neither**, *neuter*, -tra, -trum; **neither**  
 . . . **nor**, *neque* . . . *neque*; *nec* . . .  
*nec*.  
**never**, *numquam*.  
**nevertheless**, *tamen*.  
**new**, *novus*, -a, -um.  
**next**, *proximus*, -a, -um.  
**night**, *nox*, *noctis*, f.; **by night**,  
*noctū*.

**no**, *nūllus*, -a, -um.  
**no one**, *nēmō*, (*nēmīnis*), m. For  
 gen. and abl. sing., use *nūllius*  
 and *nūllō* respectively.  
**not**, *nōn*.  
**not know**, *nesciō*, 4.  
**not wish**, *nōlō*, irr.  
**notice**, *animadvertō*, 3.  
**nothing**, *nihil*, indeclinable.  
**nor**, *neque*, *nec*.  
**now**, *iam*, *nunc*.  
**number**, *numerus*, -ī, m.

## O.

**obey**, *pāreō*, 2.  
**often**, *saepe*.  
**old man**, *senex*, *senis*, m.  
**older**, *māior* *nātū*.  
**on**, *in*, prep. with abl.  
**on all sides**, *undique*.  
**on the following day**, *postrīdiē eius*  
*diēi*.  
**one**, *ūnus*, -a, -um.  
**only**, *sōlus*, -a, -um.  
**opinion**, *sententia*, -ae, f.  
**order** (verb), *iubeō*, 2.  
**order** (noun), *ōrdō*, -dinis, m.  
**other**, *alius*, -a, -um; **the other** (of  
 two), *alter*, -tera, -terum; **the**  
**other** (of several), *reliquus*, -a,  
 -um, and (*cēterus*), -a, -um.  
**ought**, *dēbeō*, 2.  
**our**, *ours*, *noster*, -tra, -trum.  
**out of**, *ē* or *ex*, prep. with abl.  
**outer**, *exterior*, -ius; **outmost**, *extrē-  
 mus*, -a, -um.  
**overcome**, *superō*, 1.  
**owe**, *dēbeō*, 2.

## P.

- pace, *passus*, -ūs, m.  
 part, *pars*, *partis*, f.  
 peace, *pāx*, *pācis*, f.  
 peril, *perīculum*, -ī, n.  
 persuade, *persuādeō*, 2.  
 people (nation), *populus*, -ī, m.;  
 (men), *hominēs*, -um, m. pl.  
 pitch, *pōnō*, 3.  
 place (noun), *locus*, -ī, m.  
 place (verb), *collocō*, 1; *pōnō*, 3.  
 place in command, *praeficiō*, 3.  
 plain, *plānitīēs*, -ēī, f.  
 plan, *cōnsilium*, -ī, n.  
 please, *placeō*, 3.  
 pledge, *fidēs*, -ēī, f.  
 poet, *poēta*, -ae, m.  
 power, *potestās*, -tātis, f.  
 powerful, *potēns*, -entis.  
 praise (verb), *laudō*, 1.  
 praise (noun), *laus*, *laudis*, f.  
 prefer, *mālō*, irr.  
 prepare, prepare for, *parō*, 1.  
 preserve, *servō*, 1.  
 prisoner, *captīvus*, -ī, m.  
 promise, *polliceor*, 2.  
 protect, *dēfendō*, 3.  
 protection, *praesidium*, -ī, n.; *fidēs*,  
 -ēī, f.  
 province, *prōvincia*, -ae, f.  
 pursue, *īnsequor*, 3.  
 put to flight, *īn fugam dare*.

## R.

- raise, *tollō*, 3.  
 rampart, *vāllum*, -ī, n.  
 rank, *ordō*, -dīnis, m.  
 reach, *pervenīō*, 4, with *ad* and *acc.*

Omit *ad* with *domus*, *rūs*, names  
 of towns and of small islands.

- receive, *accipiō*, 3.  
 redoubt, *castellum*, -ī, n.  
 region, *regiō*, -ōnis, f.  
 reinforcements, *subsidiūm*, -ī, n.  
 remain, *maneō*, 2.  
 remaining, *reliquus*, -a, -um.  
 remove, *tollō*, 3.  
 report, *adferō* and *dēferō*, irr.  
 reputation, *opīniō*, -ōnis, f.  
 request, *quaerō*, 3.  
 resist, *resistō*, 3.  
 restrain, *contineō*, 2.  
 retreat, *sē recipere*; *pedem referre*.  
 return (go or come back), *revertō*  
 and *revertor*, 3; (give back)  
*reddō*, 3.  
 reward, *praemium*, -ī, n.  
 Rhine, *Rhēnus*, -ī, m.  
 right (adj.), *dexter*, -tra, -trum, and  
 -tera, -terum.  
 right (noun), *iūs*, *iūris*, n.  
 river, *flūmen*, -minis, n.  
 rob, *dēspoliō*, 1.  
 Roman, *Rōmānus*, -a, -um.  
 Rome, *Rōma*, -ae, f.  
 rout, *pellō*, 3.

## S.

- safeguard, }  
 safety, } *salūs*, -ūtis, f.  
 same, *īdem*, *eadem*, *idem*.  
 save, *servō*, 1.  
 say, *dīcō*, 3.  
 scarcely, *vix*.  
 scout, *explōrātor*, -ōris, m.  
 sea, *mare*, -is, n.  
 see, *videō*, 2.



- seek, *petō*, 3.  
 seize, *occupō*, 1.  
 self, *ipse*, -a, -um; *suī*.  
 senate, *senātus*, -ūs, m.  
 send, *mittō*, 3; send away, *dimitto*, 3.  
 service, *mūnus*, -eris, n.  
 set on fire, *incendō*, 3.  
 set out, *proficīscor*, 3.  
 several, *complūrēs*, -a and -ia.  
 severe, *gravis*, -e.  
 severely, *see* § 305.  
 sharp, *ācer*, *ācris*, *ācre*.  
 sharply, *see* § 305.  
 she, *ea*; *eius*.  
 shield, *scūtum*, -ī, n.  
 ship, *nāvis*, -is, f.  
 short, *brevis*, -e.  
 shout, *clāmor*, -ōris, m.  
 show, *ostendō*, 3; *doceō*, 2.  
 side, *latus*, *lateris*, n.  
 signal, *signum*, -ī, n.  
 sister, *soror*, *sorōris*, f.  
 size, *māgnitūdō*, -dinis, f.  
 slaughter, *caedēs*, -is, f.  
 slave, *servus*, -ī, m.  
 slavery, *servitūs*, -tūtis, f.  
 slay, *interficiō*, 3.  
 slender, *gracilis*, -e.  
 small, *parvus*, -a, -um.  
 smaller, *minor*, *minus*.  
 so, *tam*, *ita*.  
 so great, *tantus*, -a, -um.  
 soldier, *mīles*, -itis, m.  
 some, *aliquis*; *quīdam*; *nonnullī*.  
 someone, *aliquis*; *quīdam*.  
 son, *filius*, -ī, m.  
 soon, *mox*.  
 sortie, *ēruptiō*, -ōnis, f.  
 sovereignty, *imperium*, -ī, n.  
 speech, *ōrātiō*, -ōnis, f.  
 spur, *calcar*, -āris, n.  
 standard, *signum*, -ī, n.  
 state, *civitās*, -tātis, f.  
 station, *cōstituō*, 3.  
 stay, *maneō*, 2.  
 strength, *virēs*, -ium, f. pl.  
 strip, *nūdō*, 1.  
 subdue, *vincō*, 3.  
 such, *tālis*, -e.  
 suffer, *perferō*, irr.; (with disaster),  
*accipiō*, 3.  
 sufficiently, *satis*.  
 suitable, *idōneus*, -a, -um.  
 summer, *aestās*, -tātis, f.  
 sun, *sōl*, *sōlis*, m.  
 supplies, *commeātus*, -tūs, m.  
 supply, *cōpia*, -ae, f.  
 suppose, *crēdō*, 3.  
 surround, *circumveniō*, 4.  
 swift, *celer*, *celeris*, *celere*.  
 swiftness, *celeritās*, -tātis, f.  
 sword, *gladius*, -ī, m.

## T.

- take, *capio*, 3; (by storm), *expugnō*,  
 1.  
 teach, *doceō*, 2.  
 tell, *dīcō*, 3.  
 tenth, *decimus*, -a, -um.  
 terms, *conditiōnēs*, -um, f. pl.  
 terrify, *perterreō*, 2.  
 territory or territories, *finēs*, -ium,  
 m. pl.  
 than, *quam*.  
 thank, return thanks, *grātiās agere*.  
 that (dem. pron.), *is*, *ea*, *id*; *ille*,  
 -a, -ud; (rel. pron.), *quī*, *quae*,  
*quod*.  
 that (conj.), *ut*; that . . . not, *nē*.  
 that of yours, *iste*, *ista*, *istud*.

the great, the well known, *ille, illa, illud*, following the word with which it agrees.

their, *suus, -a, -um*; *cōrum, eārum*.

then, *tum*.

thence, *inde*.

there (in that place), *ibi*; (to that place), *eō*.

therefore, *itaque*.

thing, *rēs, reī*, f.

think, *putō*, 1.

think about, *cōgitō*, 1.

this, *hīc, haec, hōc*.

thither, *eō*.

through, *per*, prep. with acc.

throw, *iaciō*, 3; *coniciō*, 3.

time, *tempus, temporis*, n.

tired, *dēfessus, -a, -um*.

to, *in* or *ad*, preps. with acc.; to the foot of, *sub*, prep. with acc.

to-day, *hodiē*.

toil, *labor, -ōris*, m.

to-morrow, *crās*.

top of, *summus, -a, -um*.

tower, *turris, -is*, f.

town, *oppidum, -ī*, n.

tribe, *gēns, gentis*, f.

troops, *cōpīae, -ārum*, f. pl.

trusty, *certus, -a, -um*.

try, *cōnor*, 1.

## U.

understand, *intelligō*, 3.

unfavorable, *inīquus, -a, -um*.

unlike, *dissimilis, -e*.

urge, *hortor*, 1.

use (verb), *ūtor*, 3.

use (noun), *ūsus, -ūs*, m.

## V.

venture, *audeō*, 2.

Vergil, *Vergilius, -ī*, m.

violence, *vīs, (vīs)*, f.

voice, *vōx, vōcis*, f.

## W.

wage, *gerō*, 3.

wall, *mūrus, -ī*, m.

war, *bellum, -ī*, n.

water, *aqua, -ae*, f.

way, *via, -ae*, f.

weapon, *tēlum, -ī*, n.

wearied, *dēfessus, -a, -um*.

weep, *fleō*, 2.

well, *bene*.

what (rel.), *quī, quae, quod*; (interr.), *quis, quid*.

whence, *unde*.

where (= in what place), *ubi*; (= to what place), *quō*.

whether, *num, -ne*.

which (rel.), *quī, quae, quod*; (interr.) *quis, quid*; which of

two, *uter, -tra, -trum*.

whither, *quō*.

who (rel.), *quī, quae, quod*; (interr.), *quis, quid*.

whole, *tōtus, -a, -um*.

why, *cūr*.

wide, *lātus, -a, -um*.

widely, *lātē*.

wing (of an army), *cornū, -ūs*, n.

winter, *hiems, hiemis*, f.

winter-quarters, *hīberna, -ōrum*, n. pl.

wish, *volō*, irr.

with, *cum*, prep. with abl., or abl. alone.

with difficulty, *aegrē, vix*.  
 withdraw, *discēdō, 3*.  
 without, *sine*, prep. with abl.  
 withstand, *sustineō, 2*.  
 woman, *fēmina, -ae, f.*  
 wonderful, *mīrābilis, -e*.  
 word, *vōx, vōcis, f.*  
 work, *opus, operis, n.*  
 would rather, *mālō, irr.*  
 would that, *utinam*.  
 wound, *vulnus, vulneris, n.*  
 write, *scrībō, 3*.

## Y.

year, *annus, -ī, m.*  
 yesterday, *herī*.  
 you, (sing.) *tū, tuī*; (pl.) *vōs, vestrī*  
 and *vestrum*.  
 younger, *minor nātū*.  
 young man, youth, *adulēscēns,*  
*-entis, m.*  
 your, yours, (sing.) *tuus, -a, -um*;  
 (pl.) *vester, -tra, -trum*.



# INDEX.

The numbers refer to sections.

- Ablative absolute, 438; participle omitted in, 443; pres. part. in, 441; accompaniment, 53, 57; agent and means, 57, 148, 151; comparison, 199, 201; degree of difference, 218, 220; English equivalents of, 49; manner, 134, 137; means or instrument, 53, 57; place where, 53, 57; with prepositions, 53; quality, 503; separation, 509; time when, 53, 57; with *utor*, etc., 488.
- Accent, 11.
- Accusative, double, 500; direct object, 24; end of motion, 143.
- Ad*, use, 140.
- Adiuvō*, 484.
- Adjectives, agreement, 33; comparison, 193-199; denoting a part, 212; first and second declensions, 29; irregular, 263; in *-lis*, comparison of, 203; third declension, 188; use of endings, 28.
- Adverbs, defined, 303; comparison, 306; formation, 304; irregular, 308; of place, 493.
- Agent, abl. of, 148, 151; dative, 456, 462.
- Agreement, attributive, 82; predicate, 70; verb with subject, 63; pronouns, 225, 240, 244.
- Aliquis*, 248.
- Alius*, 263, 267, 268, 271.
- Alphabet, 1.
- Alter*, 263, 267, 268, 271.
- Antepenult, 10.
- Apposition, 82, 87, 89.
- Attributive agreement, 82.
- Base, 21.
- Case, 15.
- Case-endings, 16.
- Celer*, declined, 189.
- Clauses, to distinguish, 523.
- Commands, 395; in third person, 463; negative, 464.
- Comparative, formation, 194.
- Comparison, abl. of, 199, 201; defective, 211; degrees of, 193; *-er*, comparison of adjectives in, 197; irregular, 205; adjectives in *-lis*, 203; by *magis* and *māximē*, 216; by *minus* and *minimē*, 217.
- Complementary infinitive, 373; distinguished from purpose clause, 417.
- Conjugations, 65.
- Conjunctions, 498.

- Consonants, 2, 8.
- Copula, 70.
- Cum*, conjunction, uses, 490; meaning, 491.
- Cum*, preposition, caution about, 54.
- Dative of agent, 456, 462; English equivalent for, 43; indirect object, 47; possessor, 507; with prepositional compounds, 484, 487; with special verbs, 483, 487; service (purpose), 505.
- Dea*, 78.
- Declension, defined, 74.
- Declensions, 17.
- Dependent clauses, 345.
- Degree of difference, ablative of, 218, 220.
- Dēlectō*, 484.
- Demonstrative pronouns, 228, 231.
- Deus*, declined, 320.
- Diphthongs, 6.
- Domus*, 317.
- Duo*, declined, 288.
- Duration and extent, 283, 286.
- Ego*, 222.
- Eō*, 391.
- End of motion, 143.
- er*, Comparison of adjs. in, 197.
- er*, nouns of decl. II, 76; decl. III, 120.
- Fearing, subjunctive after verbs of, 480.
- Ferō*, 384, 386.
- Fifth Declension, 281.
- Filia*, 78.
- Fīō*, 376.
- Fourth Declension, 274, 276.
- From*, how expressed, 133.
- Future, meaning and formation, 89; passive, 155.
- Future participle, 448, 450.
- Future perfect, meaning and formation, 127; passive, 177.
- Gender, 18; rules for third declension, 326, 327.
- Genitive, English equivalents, 36; general rule, 40; quality, 503; of noms. in -*ius*, 78.
- Gerund, 422.
- Gerundive, 425.
- Hic*, declined, 228; special uses, 233.
- Hiems*, 123.
- Idem*, 260.
- Ille*, declined, 231; special uses, 233.
- Imperative, 395, 396; irregular verbs, 398; translation, 400; use, 401.
- Imperfect tense, meaning and formation in the indicative, 83; subjunctive, 353, 357; passive, 153; *sum*, 85; tense sign, 83.
- In*, use, 139, 140.
- Indefinite pronouns, 248.
- Indirect discourse, 405, 413.
- Indirect object, 47.
- Indirect questions, 361, 365; tense rule, 369; contrasted with indirect statements, 419.
- Infinitive, complementary, 373;

- distinguished from purpose clause, 417; formation, 403; tense, 409; uses, 404, 405; verbs taking, 337.
- Instrument, abl. of, 53, 57.
- Intensive pronoun, 251, 254.
- Interrogative pronouns, 245.
- iō*, verbs in, 181.
- Ipsē*, 251, 254.
- Is*, 222.
- Iste*, 259.
- i*-stems, 164, 184, 186; mixed, 184; neuters, 186.
- Iter*, 323.
- Iubō*, 484.
- Iuppiter*, declined, 325.
- ius*, gen. and voc. of words in, 78.
- Letters, sounds of, 2-4, 6, 8.
- Liquid stems, 119.
- Locative, 311.
- Long vowels, 3, 12.
- magis* and *māximē*, comparison by, 216.
- Mālō*, 372.
- Manner, abl. of, 134, 137.
- mare*, 186.
- Means, abl. of, 53, 57, 148.
- Mille*, declension and use, 288.
- minus* and *minimē*, comparison by, 217.
- Mixed *i*-stems, 184.
- Nasal stems, 123.
- ne*, 25.
- Negō*, use, 414.
- Neuter*, 263.
- Neuters, third declension, 159, 160.
- Nōlō*, 372.
- Nonne*, 26.
- Nūllus*, 263.
- Num*, 388.
- Numerals, 288-301.
- Object, direct, 24; indirect, 47.
- Optative subjunctive, 466.
- Order, Latin, 511.
- Paradigm, defined, 64.
- Part, adjectives denoting, 212.
- Participle, defined, 427; formation of present, 428; present p. of *cō*, 434; use of present, 430; agreement, 432; perfect, 436; future, 448, 450; formation of perfect passive, 169; translation, 445.
- Passive, 144; present, 146; imperfect, 153; future, 155; perfect, 168; pluperfect, 176; future perfect, 177; person-endings, 145.
- Penult, 10.
- Perfect tense, meaning, 106; stem, 107; endings in the indicative, 108; passive, 168; perfect passive participle, 169.
- Periphrastic conjugations, meaning, 449; first periphrastic, 450, 452; second periphrastic, 454, 457, 460.
- Personal pronouns, 222, 223.
- Person-endings of the present, 60; of the passive, 145.
- Petō*, 501.
- Place, abl. of, 53, 57; adverbs of, 493; various expressions of, 312, 315.

- Pluperfect, meaning and formation. 114; passive, 176.
- Plūs*, declined, 206; cases with. 207.
- Possessive of the third person, 235.
- Possessive pronouns, 234-235.
- Possessor, dat. of, 507.
- Possum*, 332, 334, 336, 343.
- Postulō*, 501.
- Predicate agreement, 70, 73.
- Prepositions, 131; with the abl., 132.
- Present, person-endings, 60; endings of present tense, active, 65; passive, 146; stem, 105.
- Principal clauses, 345.
- Principal parts, 41, 170.
- Prohibitions, 464.
- Pronouns, agreement of, 225; demonstrative, 228, 231; indefinite, 248; intensive, 251, 254; interrogative, 245; personal, 222, 223; possessive, 234-235; reflexive, 253, 254; relative, 238-240, 244.
- Pronunciation, 1-12.
- Purpose, dat. of, 505; various expressions of, 474; in English, 351; substantive clauses of, 477.
- Quærō*, 501.
- Quality, abl. and gen. of, 503.
- Quantity, rules of, 12.
- Questions, direct, 25, 26, 388; indirect, 361, 365.
- Quī*, 238.
- Quīdam*, 248.
- Quis*, 245.
- Quisque*, 248.
- Reflexive pronoun, 253, 254.
- Relative pronoun, 238; translation, 239, 517; use, 240, 244.
- Scenæ*, 321.
- Sentences, compound and complex, 513; long, 514; broken, 519.
- Separation, abl. of, 509.
- Sequence of tenses, 496.
- Service, dat. of, 505.
- Short vowels, 3, 12.
- Sōlus*, 263.
- Stem in third declension, 98; how to know in nouns, 103.
- Stem-vowel, 65.
- Subject, 24; in English and Latin, 14; omitted, 34.
- Subjunctive, 340; formation of present, 341; present of *sum* and *possum*, 343; meaning, 345; hortatory, 346, 350; purpose, 347, 350; imperfect, 353; of *sum* and *possum*, 357; tense rules, 355, 368, 369, 496; perfect and pluperfect, 366; result, 378-381; in wishes, 466; after verbs of fearing, 480.
- Subordinate clauses, 495-498.
- Substantive clauses of purpose, 477.
- Suī*, 253, 254; in indirect discourse, 415.
- Sub*, use, 139, 140.
- Sum*, 69, 70, 85, 94, 343.
- Superlative, formation, 196.



- Supine, defined, 469; accusative, 470; ablative, 472.
- Suus*, use, 235.
- Syllables, division into, 10; long and short, 3, 12.
- Tense, defined, 83.
- Tenses, classification, 495; sequence, 496.
- Than*, how expressed, 199.
- That*, how expressed, 242.
- Third conjugation, verbs in *-iō*, 181.
- Third declension, classes of nouns, 99; consonant stems, 99; mute stems, 100; liquid stems, 119; stems in *-tr-*, 120; *-r-*stems with nominatives in *-s*, 120; nasal stems, 123; neuters, general rule, 159; case endings and stem, 160; *i*-stems, 164; mixed *i*-stems, 184; *i*-stems, neuters, 186; gender rules, 326, 327.
- Time, abl. of, 53, 57.
- Tōtus*, 263.
- tr-* stems in third declension, 120.
- Trēs*, declined, 288.
- Tū*, 222.
- Ūllus*, 263.
- Ultima*, 10.
- Ūnus*, 263.
- Uter*, 263.
- Verb, agreement, 63; endings of, 60; stem, 65.
- Vetō*, 484.
- Vīs*, declined, 319.
- Vocative, 59; nouns in *-us* and *-ius*, 78.
- Vir*, declined, 76.
- Volō*, 372.
- Vowels, sounds of, 4; long and short, 3, 12.
- Wishes, 466.

Handwritten text at the top of the page, possibly a name or title, written in cursive.









BOSTON UNIVERSITY



1 1719 02753 7408

